Health Informatics

Alfred Winter · Elske Ammenwerth
Reinhold Haux · Michael Marschollek
Bianca Steiner · Franziska Jahn

Health Information Systems

Technological and Management Perspectives

Third Edition

OPEN ACCESS

Springer

Health Informatics

This series is directed to health care professionals leading the transformation of health care by using information and knowledge. For over 20 years, Health Informatics has offered a broad range of titles: some address specific professions such as nursing, medicine, and health administration; others cover special areas of practice such as trauma and radiology; still other books in the series focus on interdisciplinary issues, such as the computer based patient record, electronic health records, and networked health care systems. Editors and authors, eminent experts in their fields, offer their accounts of innovations in health informatics. Increasingly, these accounts go beyond hardware and software to address the role of information in influencing the transformation of health care delivery systems around the world. The series also increasingly focuses on the users of the information and systems: the organizational, behavioral, and societal changes that accompany the diffusion of information technology in health services environments.

Developments in health care delivery are constant; in recent years, bioinformatics has emerged as a new field in health informatics to support emerging and ongoing developments in molecular biology. At the same time, further evolution of the field of health informatics is reflected in the introduction of concepts at the macro or health systems delivery level with major national initiatives related to electronic health records (EHR), data standards, and public health informatics.

These changes will continue to shape health services in the twenty-first century. By making full and creative use of the technology to tame data and to transform information, Health Informatics will foster the development and use of new knowledge in health care.

Alfred Winter • Elske Ammenwerth
Reinhold Haux • Michael Marschollek
Bianca Steiner • Franziska Jahn

Health Information Systems

Technological and Management Perspectives

Third Edition

Springer

Alfred Winter
Institute of Medical Informatics,
Statistics and Epidemiology
Leipzig University
Leipzig, Sachsen, Germany

Elske Ammenwerth
Institute of Medical Informatics
UMIT TIROL - Private University for
Health Sciences and Health Technology
Hall in Tirol, Austria

Reinhold Haux
Peter L. Reichertz Institute for Medical
Informatics of TU Braunschweig
and Hannover Medical School
TU Braunschweig
Braunschweig, Niedersachsen, Germany

Michael Marschollek
Peter L. Reichertz Institute for Medical
Informatics of TU Braunschweig
and Hannover Medical School
Hannover Medical School
Hannover, Niedersachsen, Germany

Bianca Steiner
German Foundation for the Chronically Ill
Berlin, Germany

Franziska Jahn
Institute of Medical Informatics,
Statistics and Epidemiology
Leipzig University
Leipzig, Sachsen, Germany

ISSN 1431-1917 ISSN 2197-3741 (electronic)
Health Informatics
ISBN 978-3-031-12309-2 ISBN 978-3-031-12310-8 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8

Leipzig University, Hanover Medical School, TU Braunschweig and UMIT Tirol

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface to the Third Edition

This third edition contains significant changes to the book's first edition in 2004 and also to its second edition in 2011. Of course, there has been progress in the methodology and technology of processing and storing data, information, and knowledge, having an impact on technologies of health information systems and on their management. In addition to this progress, there was an important trend from primarily institution-centered views on information systems, with hospital information systems as the major instance, to patient-centered views on health information systems. When also including prevention as a relevant part of health care, this even leads to person-centered views with the respective requirements.

Having this in mind, the structure of this third edition needed to be changed. We first had to introduce life situations and their context concerning health and health care in order to understand the various demands on health information systems (Chap. 1). Then, as in previous editions, basic concepts are introduced (Chap. 2). The three main chapters of this book deal with technology perspectives (Chap. 3) and management perspectives (Chap. 4) of health information systems as well as with how to assess their quality (Chap. 5). A new chapter had to be added on information systems for specific health care and research settings (Chap. 6). Although hospitals and hospital information systems remain highly relevant instances of health care facilities and health information systems, this chapter also includes various other health care facilities as well as medical research institutions. Last but not least, health care settings in personal environments such as a person's home or workplace are considered as well as perspectives concerning transinstitutional health information systems of states and regions. New to this edition are solutions to the exercises. As in previous editions, we included a glossary (in the first and second edition called a thesaurus), listing all relevant terms introduced and used in this book. Both the solutions to the exercises and the glossary are part of the back matter of the book.

We cordially want to thank everyone who helped us to write this third edition. It is impossible for us to list even the most important persons here, be they users or managers of such information systems, collaborators in projects on health information systems, or decision-makers in health care settings, from politics and from

governmental institutions. We would like to express our special thanks to all of our colleagues who contributed to this book and to the colleagues in our working groups and institutes. Thanks as well to the people who contributed to the photos in the book. Not least, we want to thank the students and teachers who use this textbook, in particular those students and teachers who participated in our international Frank-van Swieten Lectures on strategic management in health information systems. Both the students and the teachers kept asking critical questions and drew our attention to incomplete and indistinct arguments.

Finally, we want to note that there was again a change of authors. M.M. and B.S. joined the team of authors. Birgit Brigl and Nils Hellrung asked to step down as their new and demanding responsibilities made it difficult for them to continue.

Leipzig, Germany — Alfred Winter
Hall in Tirol, Austria — Elske Ammenwerth
Braunschweig, Germany — Reinhold Haux
Hannover, Germany — Michael Marschollek
Berlin, Germany — Bianca Steiner
Leipzig, Germany — Franziska Jahn

About the Book

How medicine and health care must, should, may, can, and want to act and, accordingly, what health information systems must, should, may, can, and want to support and enable

For medicine, especially for health care, its self-reflective character seems to be of particular importance to me: incorporated into our socio-cultural space, it must always consider in which image of humanity, in which range of cultural values between health and illness, between "normality" and "abnormality," it

- must act: This concerns the question of urgency for patients.
- should act: This concerns practical aspects for patient care and medical self-conception.
- may act: This concerns individual, socio-ethical, moral, and legal dimensions.
- can act: This concerns medical competence and institutionalized dimensions of health care systems. And, finally,
- wants to act: This concerns the commitment of the people involved—from health care professionals (such as physicians and nurses) to informal caregivers and to the patients themselves—taking into account their "involvements."

With these modalities of action, medicine is not only committed to the present status but also to the prognosis (of current diseases and developments of medicine and society).

Professor Dr. med. Klaus Gahl

From a correspondence with Dr. Gahl in April 2020 (translated from German).

Contents

About the Authors

Alfred Winter is a professor of medical informatics at the Institute of Medical Informatics, Statistics and Epidemiology at Leipzig University, Germany. For many years, he was responsible for the strategic management of the information system at Leipzig University Medical Center and led numerous projects in tactical information management.

He studied computer science at RWTH Aachen University in Aachen, Germany, and received his Ph.D. and a license for lecturing (German "Habilitation") for medical informatics from the Faculty of Theoretical Medicine at the University of Heidelberg.

Dr. Winter's research focuses on methods and modeling tools for the management of health information systems and on the integration of information systems for patient care and research. He teaches architectures and management of health information systems in a medical informatics master's course at Leipzig University and as part of the international Frank-van Swieten Lectures on strategic information management. He has been a member of the board of the German Society for Medical Informatics, Biometry and Epidemiology (GMDS) since 2005 and was its president in 2020 and 2021. At the European level, he has been a member of the board and secretary of the European Federation of Medical Informatics (EFMI) since 2014. He is also a member of the editorial board of several international journals and was editor of the German journal *GMS Medical Informatics, Biometry and Epidemiology (MIBE)* from 2010 to 2020. He is an elected member of the International Academy of Health Sciences Informatics.

Elske Ammenwerth is a professor of health informatics and head of the Institute of Medical Informatics at the Private University for Health Sciences, Medical Informatics and Technology (UMIT TIROL) in Hall in Tirol, Austria.

She studied medical informatics at the University of Heidelberg/University of Applied Sciences Heilbronn, Germany, and received her Ph.D. from the Medical Faculty of the University of Heidelberg.

Her current research fields comprise health information systems, evidence-based health informatics, and patient-centered health information systems. She has authored or coauthored more than 400 scientific papers.

Dr. Ammenwerth is the Austrian representative at the European Federation for Medical Informatics (EFMI) and at the International Medical Informatics Association (IMIA). She is an elected member of the International Academy of Health Sciences Informatics.

Reinhold Haux Reinhold Haux is a professor of medical informatics at the Peter L. Reichertz Institute for Medical Informatics of TU Braunschweig and Hannover Medical School, Germany. From 2007 to 2017 he served as executive director of this institute.

He studied medical informatics at the University of Heidelberg/University of Applied Sciences Heilbronn, Germany, where he graduated with an M.Sc. degree (German "Diplom") in 1978. He received a Ph.D. from the Faculty for Theoretical Medicine at the University of Ulm in 1983 and a postdoctoral lecture qualification (German "Habilitation") for medical informatics and statistics from the Medical Faculty of RWTH Aachen University in 1987.

Dr. Haux's current research fields are health-enabling technologies, health information systems and management, medical data management, and synergy and intelligence: extended interaction of living and non-living entities. The international Frank-van Swieten Lectures on strategic information management in health information systems have been part of his teaching activities since their start in 2001. He has been chairperson or member of information management boards at various hospitals in Germany and Austria.

For the term from 2007 to 2010, he was president of the International Medical Informatics Association (IMIA), an NGO of the World Health Organization. From 2001 to 2015 he was editor of the journal *Methods of Information in Medicine*. He coedited the *IMIA Yearbook of Medical Informatics* from 2001 to 2007.

Dr. Haux is an elected member of the Braunschweig Scientific Society and of the International Academy of Health Sciences Informatics, where he served as president from 2018 to 2020.

Michael Marschollek is a professor of medical informatics and executive director of the Peter L. Reichertz Institute for Medical Informatics of TU Braunschweig and Hannover Medical School, Germany. He studied medicine at Hannover Medical School and computer science at TU Braunschweig, both in Germany, and received an M.D. and a doctoral degree in engineering.

His current research fields include wearable sensors and clinical applications of health-enabling technologies, secondary use of clinical data, data mining in medicine, technologies for semantic modeling of clinical data, and sensor-based activity analysis. He is an elected member of the International Academy of Health Sciences Informatics and of the Braunschweig Scientific Society. Dr. Marschollek teaches medical informatics for medical students and biomedical data science in a master's program for physicians and life sciences students at Hannover Medical School.

Bianca Steiner Bianca Steiner is a research associate/project manager at the German Foundation for the Chronically Ill in Berlin, Germany. She works on various projects focusing on innovations in health care and manages a nationwide quality assurance measure for the quality documentation of recording vital parameters through implanted devices.

She studied medical informatics at TU Braunschweig, Germany. Between 2015 and 2021, she worked as a research associate at the Peter L. Reichertz Institute for Medical Information of TU Braunschweig and Hannover Medical School, focusing on intersectoral care processes and health-enabling technologies in the field of rehabilitation. In 2021, she received her Ph.D. from the Carl-Friedrich-Gauß-Faculty at TU Braunschweig for her work on increasing therapy adherence in rehabilitation through gamification.

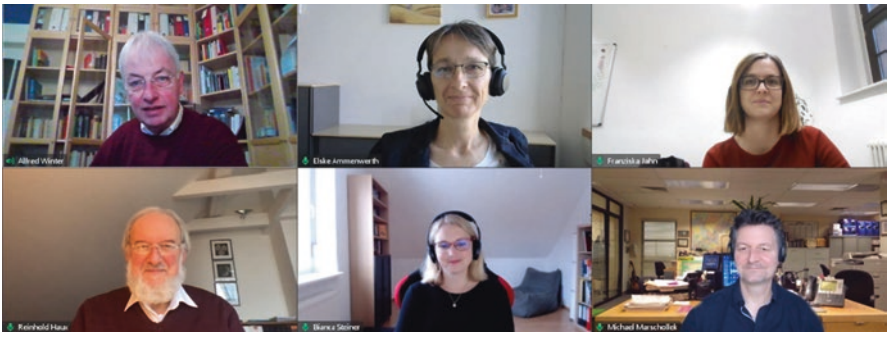
Dr. Steiner taught medical informatics students at TU Braunschweig from 2016 to 2021 and since 2019 has also taught information management students at the Hochschule Hannover—University of Applied Sciences and Arts.

Franziska Jahn Franziska Jahn has been a research associate at the Institute for Medical Informatics, Statistics and Epidemiology at Leipzig University, Germany, since 2008.

She studied computer science with medical informatics as main subject at Leipzig University. Her research focuses on hospital information system architectures and their management. In recent years, she has led projects concerned with ontologies for information management in health care and benchmarking of hospital information systems.

Dr. Jahn teaches medical informatics students and medical students at Leipzig University. Since 2021, she has also been a lecturer in the Medical Data Science master's program at RWTH Aachen University.

Since 2015, she has been cochair of the Methods and Tools for the Management of Hospital Information Systems working group of the German Association of Medical Informatics, Biometry and Epidemiology (GMDS).



The Authors

Abbreviations

$3LGM^2$	Three-Layer Graph-Based Metamodel
5G	Fifth-Generation Mobile Networks
ADL	Archetype Definition Language
ADT	Admission, Discharge, and Transfer
API	Application Programming Interface
AQL	Archetype Query Language
ARIS	Architecture of Integrated Information Systems
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
BPMN	Business Process Modeling and Notation
CAD	Computer-Aided Design
CCOW	Clinical Context Object Workgroup
CDA	Clinical Document Architecture
CDISC	Clinical Data Interchange Standards Consortium
CDS	Clinical Decision Support
CDSS	Clinical Decision Support System
CFO	Chief Financial Officer
CIN	Case Identification Number
CIO	Chief Information Officer
CIS	Clinical Information System
CMIO	Chief Medical Information Officer
CNIO	Chief Nursing Information Officer
COBIT	Control Objectives for Information and Related Technology
CPOE	Computerized Provider Order Entry System
CSV	Comma-Separated Values
CVIS	Cardiovascular Information System
DAS	Document Archiving System
DIC	Data Integration Center
DICOM	Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine
DiGA	Digital Health Application
DNS	Domain Name System
DRG	Diagnosis-Related Groups

DWS	Data Warehouse System
ECDS	European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control
ECG	Electrocardiogram
EDC	Electronic Data Capture
EEML	Extended Enterprise Modeling Language
EHR	Electronic Health Record
EHRS	Electronic Health Record System
EJH	Ernst Jokl Hospital
EPC	Event-Driven Process Chain
EPR	Electronic Patient Record
ERM	Entity-Relationship Model
ERPS	Enterprise Resource Planning System
ETL	Extract, Transform, Load
EVN	Event Description (HL7 segment)
FDA	U.S. Food and Drug Administration
FHIR	Fast Health care Interoperability Resources
GDPR	European General Data Protection Regulation
GP	General Practitioner
GPU	Graphics Processing Unit
HDS	Health Data Storage
HIS	Health Information System
HL7	Health Level 7
HL7 CDA	Health Level 7 Clinical Document Architecture
HL7 V2	Health Level 7 Version 2
HL7 V3	Health Level 7 Version 3
ICD	International Classification of Diseases
ICESCR	International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights
ICF	International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health
ICHI	International Classification of Health Interventions
ICNP	International Classification of Nursing Practice
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
ICU	Intensive Care Unit
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IHE	Integrating the Health care Enterprise
IHE XDS	Integrating the Health care Enterprise Cross-Enterprise Document Sharing
IP	Intellectual Property
ISACA	Information Systems Audit and Control Association
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
IT	Information Technology
ITI	IT Infrastructure Framework (IHE Domain)
ITIL	Information Technology Infrastructure Library
ITSM	Information Technology Service Management
JPEG	Joint Photographic Experts Group
KPI	Key Performance Indicator

LIS	Laboratory Information System
LOINC	Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes
MCnc	Mass Concentration
MDMS	Medical Documentation and Management System
mHealth apps	Mobile Health Applications
MI-I	German Medical Informatics Initiative
MPEG	Moving Pictures Expert Group
MPI	Master Patient Index
MSH	Message Header (HL7 segment)
MW	Megawatt
NANDA	North American Nursing Diagnosis Association
NHS	National Health Service
NIC	Nursing Intervention Classification
NLP	Natural Language Processing
NMDS	Nursing Management and Documentation System
NOC	Nursing Outcome Classification
OAIS	Open Archival Information System
ODM	Operational Data Model
OID	Object Identifier
OMS	Operation Management System
ONC	Office of the National Coordinator for Health Information Technology
openEHR	open Electronic Health Record
OR	Operating Room
PACS	Picture Archiving and Communication System
PC	Personal Computer
PDF	Portable Document Format
PDMS	Patient Data Management System
PH	Ploetzberg Hospital
PID	Patient Identification (HL7 segment)
PIN	Patient Identification Number
PV1	Patient Visit Information (HL7 segment)
Qn	Numerical Quantitative
RCT	Randomized Controlled Trial
RIM	Reference Information Model (HL7)
RIS	Radiology Information System
SAN	Storage Area Network
SDTM	Study Data Tabulation Model
SLA	Service-Level Agreement
SMITH	Smart Medical Information Technology for Health care
SNIK	Semantic Network of Information Management in Hospitals
SNOMED	Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine
SNOMED CT	Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine Clinical Terms
SOA	Service-Oriented Architecture
SOP	Standardized Operating Procedure

TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol
tHIS	Transinstitutional Health Information System
TIFF	Tagged Image File Format
TOGAF	The Open Group Architecture Framework
UML	Unified Modeling Language
URI	Uniform Resource Identifier
VNA	Vendor-Neutral Archive
WHO	World Health Organization
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network
XML	Extensible Markup Language

List of Figures

List of Tables

Chapter 1
Introduction

1.1 Motivation and Objective of the Book

Which technologies are appropriate for building *health information systems*? How can they be managed? How to assess their *quality*? The objective of this book is to provide answers to these questions.

Health is one of the key components of our lives. And good health care is an important prerequisite for good health. Well-built and well-managed health information systems constitute an essential part of providing good health care. Health care is delivered for people by people. Health care starts when people are born (even earlier) and ends when people pass away. Sometimes, the relative share of health care in our lives appears negligible, for example, when we are in good health, living our "normal daily lives." Sometimes, the relative share of health care is intensive, for example, for persons suffering from a severe acute disease and as inpatients in hospitals. Sometimes, it is in between, for example, for persons with chronic diseases needing medication or other therapeutic measures on a regular basis.

The authors of this book have been involved in managing health information systems for many years, some of us for decades. Managing *information systems* also includes building and assessing components of such *systems*, as will be explained later. We do this mainly in research and education, but always with close links to practice. We also advise health care facilities as well as governments and other authorities. During all these years, we have seen information systems that contribute well to the diagnosis and therapy of patients by providing good support to *health care professionals* as well as to the patients themselves. We have also seen information systems that produce an unnecessary workload for physicians and nurses or fail to appropriately deliver *information* that would have been relevant for good decisions.

We, the authors of this book, believe that managing health information systems in the current era of digitization must be approached differently than in the past. In particular, in order to provide answers to the questions raised at the beginning, we

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8_1

need an understanding of how information systems in the context of health and health care relate to the various *life situations*.

This is why this introductory chapter is on such life situations and on the (sometimes contradicting) stakeholder requirements. *Stakeholders* in this context include the patients themselves as well as health care professionals and, for example, management staff in health care facilities and governmental bodies.

We are convinced that being aware of these life situations, of the stakeholder requirements, and of the basic concepts and terms introduced in Chap. 2 is of great importance. These two chapters will give you, the reader, a better understanding of the following chapters of this book: Chap. 3 on technology perspectives, Chap. 4 on management perspectives, and Chap. 5 on quality. These more generic chapters will be rounded out by Chap. 6 on specific health information systems for certain life situations and *health care settings* such as, for example, *hospital information systems* and information systems in personal environments.

After reading this chapter, you should be able to

- recognize the relevance of health information systems,
- understand the motivation and objectives of why this book was written,
- view life situations in the context of health, health care, and health care settings, and
- explain the various stakeholders' requirements of health information systems in this context.

1.2 Life Situations

As mentioned before, health care starts when people are born (even earlier) and ends when people pass away. Sometimes, the relative share of health care in our lives is small, sometimes it becomes higher. This section provides an overview of some typical life situations.

Health care organization and health-related processes can vary from country to country; however, these life situations seem ubiquitous. We focus on life situations related to health care. This view may be limited, as life is much more, but it is useful for our topic of health information systems.

1.2.1 Prevention

The World Health Organization's constitution defines health as a state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being [1]. Living in good health is by no means a given; it must be achieved or preserved by respective measures. In health care, many of these measures can be subsumed under the term "prevention" or, more precisely, primary *prevention*. In addition to primary *prevention* (prevention of diseases), the terms secondary *prevention* (early detection and timely treatment of diseases) and tertiary *prevention* (reduction of negative implications of long term, usually chronic

diseases) are well established and used. *Prevention* mostly takes place in our normal daily lives, for example, at the locations where we live and work. Tertiary *prevention* may also coincide with rehabilitation.

1.2.2 Wellness

Wellness is a term related to *prevention*, as it also focuses on living in good health. In the context of wellness, the term "fitness" can also be found. Wellness and fitness activities usually take place in our normal daily lives and at the locations where we live and work. Sometimes, wellness activities are done at wellness centers (e.g., hotels that are specialized in this field). Sometimes, fitness activities are done at sports centers and recreational parks.

1.2.3 Emergencies

Emergency situations such as acute heart attacks or severe traffic accidents are completely different life situations. Persons suffering such emergency situations frequently require immediate assistance. As patients, they are usually brought to the emergency units of hospitals, where they are diagnosed and treated by health care professionals.

1.2.4 Acute Diseases

Persons suffering from acute diseases also step out of their normal daily lives, at least to some extent. With respect to these diseases, these persons have become patients. Depending on the kind and severity of such an acute disease, patients may, among other things, be treated as outpatients in medical offices or as inpatients in hospitals. For outpatients, diagnosis and therapy may take place within these offices or at the locations where the patients live. If diagnosis and therapy are performed at a distance, these activities are usually subsumed under terms "telehealth" and "telemedicine."

1.2.5 Chronic Diseases

The life situations of patients suffering from chronic diseases can be more or less viewed similarly to those described for patients with acute diseases. In chronic situations, long-term treatment and long-term care is needed, and health care monitoring becomes more important here. If this monitoring is done at a distance, these activities are usually also subsumed under the term "telemonitoring."

1.2.6 Care

Life situations primarily related to care but not necessarily related to treating diseases are often characterized by physical and mental functional deficits of the affected persons that could lead to frailty, for example. These are often, but not exclusively, senior citizens at an advanced age. Care may be provided at these persons' private homes, at homes for the elderly, at nursing homes, or, for palliative care, at hospices.

1.2.7 Rehabilitation

In particular after treatment episodes for inpatients, rehabilitation episodes may sometimes follow in order to cure or alleviate diseases. As already mentioned, these rehabilitation activities can often be subsumed under tertiary *prevention*. Rehabilitation may take place at inpatient units or may be supported by outpatient rehabilitation centers. With acute and chronic diseases, this can be done within such centers, or perhaps at a distance through telerehabilitation activities.

1.2.8 Research for Life

Another life situation must be mentioned here that to some extent differs from the ones described above, as it is also of considerable importance for health information systems: the life situation of persons in the context of biomedical research. Patients, or even healthy persons, may participate in research activities. For example, patients may be asked to participate in randomized clinical trials. Or, as another example, *data* on patients may be stored in disease registers to better understand diseases and their diagnosis and therapy in order to improve treatment for future patients.

1.3 Stakeholders' Requirements

As mentioned in the introduction, health care is delivered for people by people. Also mentioned was that stakeholder in this context refers to the patients themselves, as well as health care professionals, the management staff of health care facilities, or

even governments. This section lists some of the essential requirements that important stakeholders have regarding health information systems.

Being aware of these stakeholders and their requirements of health information systems is important for adequately managing health information systems. We will list here major stakeholders, either introduced as persons or as bodies. This is not an exhaustive list. The requirements listed here for these stakeholders are important requirements with respect to health information systems. These lists will highlight some important requirements, but by no means all of them.

1.3.1 Requirements of Patients

The patients' objectives are usually to receive good and affordable health care, to be informed and empowered regarding all decisions related to health care and, if possible, to receive this care without having to change their normal daily lives too much, with social participation and dignity as important properties.

Requirements that patients have of health information systems are, mostly, (1) to be informed (e.g., about appointments with their physicians at medical offices, about diseases, about possible diagnostic and therapeutic strategies and their risks, or about positive or negative aspects of medication), (2) to be able to communicate with health care professionals and their facilities (e.g., asking for an appointment, asking for advice), and (3) to be able to provide data or to report (e.g., on unexpected events that may be important to know in the context of their diseases), and (4) to feel sufficiently informed and involved when decisions about their individual health care are being taken.

Patients also want to be informed about the qualification and reputation of their health care professionals and of their health care facilities. When receiving direct advice on health care matters, for example, through the internet or via health apps, they also want to know about the quality of the care.

Regardless of the persons and facilities providing the care, patients expect all caregivers to have access to all necessary data in their health record (provided the patients give their permission). They also expect data privacy and data confidentiality to be safeguarded.

Finally, patients expect health information systems to support not only themselves but—perhaps even more importantly—to also support their health care professionals and sometimes their informal caregivers and that this support is comprehensive, trustful, and lean.

Fig. 1.1 Health information systems constitute an essential part of providing good health care. Decisions are made during a ward round in pediatric intensive care. (Courtesy of Karin Kaiser/MHH)

1.3.2 Requirements of Health care Professionals

Health care professionals usually are physicians and nurses but may also be pharmacists, physiotherapists, and midwives, just to mention a few. Their objective is to provide good health care for their patients.

Requirements that health care professionals have of health information systems include that these systems support them in doing their work efficiently and in good quality. This often involves providing easy and comprehensive access to information in order to make good decisions, with organizational support and with reduced documentation efforts while maintaining good documentation quality (Fig. 1.1).

Having access to all the patient data relevant for adequate diagnostic and therapeutic decisions, for example, is of great importance. If relevant data are missing or if data are difficult and time-consuming to obtain, this would risk reducing the quality of care and could increase costs.

Additional requirements include being able to efficiently record and communicate decisions at the time and place where they were made, receiving decision support, and having access to knowledge on diseases and on how to treat them.

1.3.3 Requirements of Informal Caregivers

Informal caregivers are often spouses or close relatives of the patients. Although they are usually not trained health care professionals, their contribution to caring for patients can be of enormous importance for the quality of health care.

Requirements that informal caregivers have of health information systems primarily include being informed of the treatment provided by health care professionals, having access to the patients' health records (provided the patients give their permission), having the opportunity to communicate with health care professionals, and recording observations.

1.3.4 Requirements of Researchers in Biomedicine

Many researchers in biomedicine need patient data for their research. Provided that patients give their permission or that this is allowed by law, the researchers' objective is to access and use these data for their research. This can be routine data recorded during *patient care* at one or several health care facilities.

Sometimes these data can be aggregated, anonymized data. Biomedical research related to patient data is often conducted as part of studies, for example, clinical trials or observational studies, with a study plan, elaborated before collecting data, and approved by ethics committees.

Requirements that researchers in biomedicine have of health information systems include being supported in doing their work efficiently and in good quality, for example, to be able to access, store, and analyze such data with reasonable effort and with the potential of attaining good outcomes for medical progress.

1.3.5 Requirements of Management Staff

Persons involved in managing health care facilities have certain responsibilities related to running their facilities efficiently and in good quality with regard to their facilities' objective of providing health care. For this purpose, these persons must document procedures for reimbursement and to ensure the availability of data for *controlling*, this with respect to the sometimes-various levels of health care management.

Requirements that management staff have of health information systems include being supported in doing their work efficiently and in good quality. This often involves having timely access to controlling data and being able to efficiently use analytics tools in the context of data warehousing.

1.3.6 Requirements of Insurance Companies

At this point, we will shift our view from persons to facilities. Health care insurance companies want to spend the money obtained from their members to provide these members with good and efficient health care when needed. This can involve providing timely payment to health care facilities and *controlling* whether payments have been adequate. This may also comprise informing their members on health care matters and exploring and promoting new, improved health care processes.

Requirements that insurance companies have of health information systems include being able to carry out these tasks efficiently and in good quality. Insurance companies want to be able to verify whether payments that were made were actually used for "their" members and that these members were actually insured at the time of treatment.

1.3.7 Requirements of Governmental Bodies

Governmental bodies with tasks related to health care often involve ministries or departments of health. The objectives of such governmental bodies are to provide a legal framework for the health care of the people living in a certain state or region. Sometimes, they are involved in the practice of health care themselves.

Requirements that governmental bodies have of health information systems are that these *information systems* support good health care for the people of their state or region with reasonable costs and that the *information systems* provide data and *key performance indicators (KPI)* about the health status of people in the region or nation.

1.3.8 Requirements of Sponsors

Health care, health care facilities, and the people providing health care need to be financed. Financers of health care and of health care facilities will here be called sponsors. Sponsors may be states using taxes paid by their citizens or insurance companies using the premiums paid by their members. Sponsors (private companies, cities, states, etc.) can also own health care facilities such as hospitals.

Sponsors usually expect their facilities or *services* to efficiently provide health care that is competitive to facilities delivering related health care and

which is financially sound. For non-profit sponsors, this can mean running a *health care facility* without financial deficits. For commercially oriented sponsors, this can mean that health care facilities should work with a profit for the sponsors' stakeholders.

Requirements that sponsors have of health information systems are that these information systems support the objectives mentioned above for the respective health care facilities and that they provide the data needed for controlling investment costs and running expenses.

1.3.9 Requirements of Vendors

Vendors in this context are companies that offer hardware and software or consulting services for information systems of health care facilities. Vendors may also offer tools or services (on *prevention* and wellness) directly for healthy persons as well as for patients and their informal caregivers (e.g., through the internet and via health apps) and their settings.

The objective of vendors is to sell such tools or services and to be competitive within their respective markets. In addition to providing good products and services, customer retention can also play an important role.

Here requirements of health information systems are rather indirect, as vendors are not users of such systems themselves.

1.3.10 Requirements of Housing Companies

In the new era of digitization, the personal home environment can also play a significant role in supporting health care. This is particularly true for persons living at home who receive health care as outpatients, for example, with chronic diseases or as senior citizens with age-related deficits. Housing companies offering the opportunity to use sensor and actor infrastructures within the homes for health care purposes could be more competitive in their market.

Requirements that housing companies have of health information systems are that these information systems support the objectives mentioned above for the respective health care facilities and that they provide opportunities to receive and send data from and to health care facilities and to residents' apps.

1.3.11 Coinciding and Contradicting Requirements between Stakeholders

The requirements of the different stakeholders are sometimes similar and therefore coincide. Other times, however, they tend to conflict and may even become contradictory. Being well-aware that requirements of different stakeholders may sometimes vary and may even contradict is helpful when managing health information systems.

The patient-centered objectives on care of governmental bodies, for example, may to some extent contradict the institution-centered objectives of health care facilities and their professionals working in health care and management. The objectives of health care professionals within a health care facility will tend to focus on providing the best health care possible, while managers at the same facility will have a focus on cost efficiency and obtaining well-documented data for reimbursement and *controlling*. Sometimes, these contradicting requirements may even exist within the same person, for example, within a family physician at a small medical office who is responsible for both health care and management.

1.4 Example

The following example will be used in many parts of this book. Although the situations described here are realistic, all persons in this example are fictitious and do not exist.

The Russos live in a flat in a small town on the edge of the commuter belt of a large city. Mrs. Russo, a former optometrist, is 68 years old and—following a fall in the bathroom last year with a fracture of a leg and some complications—suffers from lasting limitations of her movement capacity, affecting her ability to perform some of her activities of daily living (e.g., taking a shower, shopping, meeting with friends). She was also diagnosed with a mild case of depression along with an anxiety disorder. Mr. Russo, a former software consultant, is 72 and, following a myocardial infarction 15 years ago, was diagnosed with heart failure 3 years ago. The Russos' general practitioner (GP), Dr. Andersson, has furthermore diagnosed him with hypercholesterolemia (elevated blood cholesterol) and diabetes and has put him on medication with several drugs. Dr. Andersson also advised Mr. Russo to take up mild physical activity and lose some of his excess weight, but—following a brief episode of motivation and a Nordic walking course—he has found it impossible to follow her advice and sustain regular physical activity, in part because he increasingly needs to help his wife in performing her daily activities.

One morning, Mr. Russo wakes up early in the morning from severe shortness of breath. Although he has experienced this symptom before in a milder form, he immediately senses that something is wrong and calls his GP. Dr. Andersson comes for a home visit and finds him in bed with low blood pressure, elevated heart rate, and pulmonary edema. She diagnoses him with an exacerbation of heart failure, strongly advises him to be admitted to Ploetzberg Hospital university medical center, and subsequently calls an ambulance. The paramedics arrive and perform a resting 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG), and the emergency physician puts Mr. Russo on oxygen. After arrival at Ploetzberg Hospital, Mr. Russo is admitted to the cardiology ward and treated with drugs. Blood samples are taken and an echocardiography is performed. His condition improves over a week, but an intracardiac catheter examination (coronary angiography) shows a severe stenosis of a main coronary artery, which is treated immediately. Two weeks later, Mr. Russo is discharged from the hospital and, following a brief stay at home, begins rehabilitation at the Kreikebohm Rehabilitation Centre. Meanwhile, Mrs. Russo's children have organized a home nursing service for her that comes twice a day to support her while her husband is away, along with a domestic help to assist her with the housework.

Dr. Andersson receives discharge letters from both Ploetzberg Hospital as well as the Kreikebohm Rehabilitation Centre. She adapts his medication according to the cardiologists' advice. Along with his wife, Mr. Russo enrolls in a support program arranged by his health insurance company where he uses an app on his mobile phone to enter data on his physical and mental well-being and his weight. Furthermore, he receives an activity tracker that also measures his heart rate. Among other things, Dr. Andersson uses this data to manage the course of his disease and for adapting her treatment. Researchers from Ploetzberg Hospital ask Mr. Russo whether he would participate in a scientific study to investigate the effect of close-knit home monitoring on rehospitalization in patients with heart failure, to which he agrees. He can observe his monitoring data on his smartphone.

1.5 Exercises

1.5.1 Life Situations

Consider a recent health-related situation you were involved in. Which life situation (Sect. 1.2) does it correspond to and what was your role in this life situation (Sect. 1.3)? List some of the requirements you had in this role and in this life situation.

1.5.2 Requirements of Various Stakeholders

Consider the requirements of various stakeholders when it comes to health information systems supporting various life situations. Can you imagine situations where the requirements of two stakeholder groups differ or even contradict each other? What does this imply when building health information systems?

Reference

1. World Health Organization (WHO) Constitution. (1946, July 22). https://www.who.int/about/governance/constitution. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.

Chapter 2
Basic Concepts and Terms

2.1 Introduction

Health informatics specialists usually deal with ambiguous terms based in computer science, medicine, health sciences, business informatics, and related disciplines. In practice, ambiguous terms lead to difficulties and errors in communication.

One major objective of this textbook is to provide the reader with a clear *terminology*, i.e., a system of concepts and related terms, for health information systems and their management. Such a terminology helps health informatics students, practitioners, and scientists in specifying, describing, and communicating their objectives, tasks, and working results (Fig. 2.1).

This chapter introduces the terminology for health information systems and their management as used in this book. For describing information system architectures for health, we introduce the three-layer graph-based metamodel. It links the logical and physical tools that are used in health information systems to health care functions, which describe the tasks to be performed in certain health care settings, for example, patient admission or execution of diagnostic procedures in a hospital.

To support the learning of the terminology provided in this textbook, some of the authors have developed an ontology called SNIK (semantic network of information management in hospitals) that contains the most important concepts and terms of this book together with their relations to each other.[1] In addition, the ontology links our terminology to other terminologies from business informatics and management of information systems. This gives the reader a holistic view of the management of information systems in health and its overlap with other disciplines.

After reading this chapter, you should be able to

- explain the difference between data, information, and knowledge,
- define (health) information systems and their components,

[1] https://www.snik.eu.

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8_2

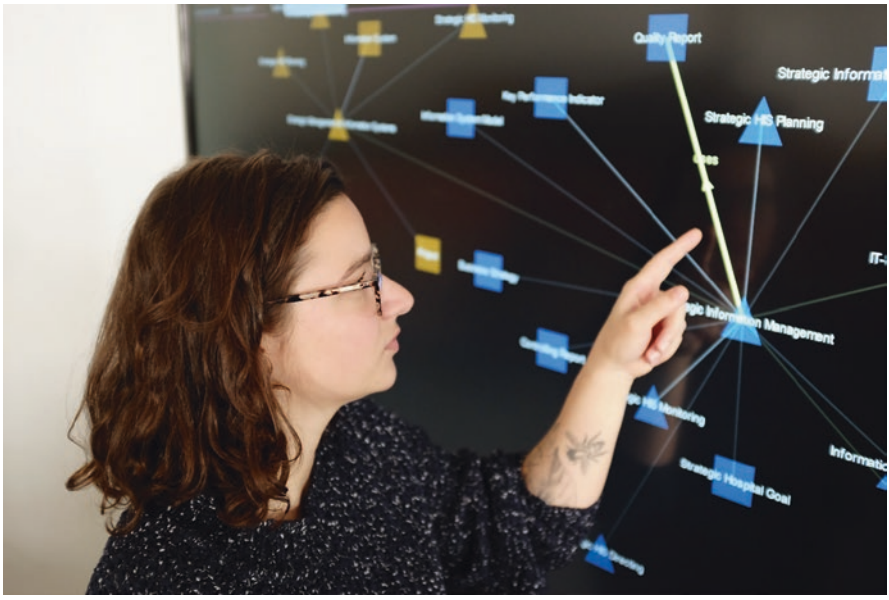


Fig. 2.1 Health information systems constitute an essential part of providing good health care. Agreeing on concepts and terms is the precondition for professionally managing information systems

- define management of information systems, and
- describe and model health information systems with the help of the three-layer graph-based metamodel.

Please note that the terms highlighted in italics are terms from the glossary or represent functions or application system types (Sects. 3.3 and 3.4).

2.2 Data, Information, and Knowledge

There are several definitions of *data*, *information*, and *knowledge*. In this chapter, we introduce pragmatic definitions which help to distinguish the three concepts from each other.

Assume a physician at Ploetzberg Hospital finds a note on her desk that says "Russo", "8.5", and "++". These characters and numbers written on the note are data.

> *Data* are characters, discrete numbers, or continuous signals to be processed in information systems.

Metadata is data about data. Metadata provides information about one or more aspects of data such as the purpose of the data, author and time of creation, used standards, or file size.

Data cannot be interpreted by a person without knowledge about the documentation context. To be reinterpretable, there must be an agreement on how data represent information.

After the physician found the note saying "Russo", "8.5", and "++", she meets a nurse who tells her that the note documents the fasting blood sugar level of the patient Jakub Russo. Now the physician can interpret the note. "Jakub Russo has a fasting blood sugar level of 8.5 mmol/L" is health-related information about the patient Jakub Russo.

There is no unique definition of information. Depending on the point of view, the definition may deal with a syntactic aspect (the structure), a semantic aspect (the meaning), or a pragmatic aspect (the intention or goal of information). We want to define information as follows:

Information is a context-specific fact about entities such as events, things, persons, processes, ideas, or concepts. Information is represented by data.

What does the symbol "++" on the note mean? The physician can interpret this data because she has knowledge about blood sugar levels. She knows that fasting blood sugar levels below 5.5 mmol/L are normal, from 5.6 to 6.9 mmol/L are an indicator for prediabetes, and above 7.0 are an indicator of diabetes.

Knowledge is general information about concepts in a certain (scientific or professional) domain (e.g., knowledge about diseases or therapeutic methods) at a certain time.

Knowledge as general information contrasts with specific information about particular individuals of the domain (e.g., information about a patient). This means that, due to the physician's general knowledge about diabetes symptoms, she can conclude that Jakub Russo suffers from diabetes, which, in turn, is information about Jakub Russo.

Although a paper note saying "Russo", "8.5", and "++", and its subsequent interpretation, is not an example of systematic data, information, and knowledge

processing in health care, it may be helpful to understand the difference between data, information, and knowledge.

However, in the context of health information systems and beyond, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish between the processing of data and information. Does an *application system* for patient administration process data or information during *patient admission*? Do physicians process data or information when they make a diagnosis? Throughout this book, we use the terms "data," "information," and "knowledge" as precisely as possible and want to emphasize the differences between them. Therefore, the reader should be aware that we have given careful thought to the use of terms containing "data," "information," and "knowledge."

2.3 Health care Settings

In accordance with the World Health Organization (WHO) [1], we regard settings as places, social contexts, or facilities where people actively use and shape the environment and thus create or solve problems. In these settings, life situations take place. Within these life situations, creating and solving problems requires and causes complex *information processing*.

If people actively use and shape the environment and thus create or solve problems in settings related to health care, we call these settings *health care settings*. Cities, villages, private homes, medical offices, hospitals, health care regions, *health care facilities*, and *health care networks* are all health care settings. And again, solving problems related to health care is essentially characterized by intensive information processing.

2.4 Systems and Subsystems

Before considering the details of information systems, let us first define the concept of a system.

> A *system* is a set of persons, things, events, and their relationships forming an integrated whole.

We distinguish between natural systems and artificial (human-made) systems. For example, the nervous system is a typical natural system, consisting of neurons and their relationships. An artificial system is, for example, a hospital, consisting of staff, patients, relatives, and their interactions. If a (human-made) system consists of both human and technical components, it can be called a *socio-technical system*.

A system can be divided into *subsystems* that comprise a subset of the components and the relationships between them. For example, the sympathetic nervous system is a subsystem of the nervous system. A subsystem of a hospital is, for example, a ward with its staff and patients. Subsystems themselves are again systems.

For professionals, however, the term "system" is often not specific enough and needs to be refined in order to avoid misunderstandings ("If you don't know what it is, call it a system.").

2.5 Information Systems

Focusing on processing, storing, and providing data, information, and knowledge in settings leads to the term "information system."

> An *information system* is defined as that socio-technical subsystem of a setting which comprises all data, information, and knowledge processing as well as the associated human or technical actors in their respective data, information, and knowledge processing roles.

As stated above, if a (human-made) system consists of both human and technical components, it can be called a *socio-technical system*. But what does "socio-technical" mean when looking at the information system of a given setting? "Socio" refers to the people involved in data and information processing (e.g., health care professionals, patients, medical or health informaticians), whereas "technical" refers to tools such as computers, software, telephones, and paper-based patient records. Thus, when considering the information system of a setting, the people and tools in this setting are considered only in their role as information processors, carrying out specific actions following established rules. A physician carrying out *medical admissions* of patients in a hospital, for example, follows established rules for interviewing and examining the patients and documenting their answers in *medical documentation and management systems (MDMS)*.

An information system can be divided into subsystems called *sub-information systems*. For example, the information system of a setting can typically be split into two sub-information systems: the part where computer-based tools are used is called the computer-based sub-information system; the rest is called the non-computer-based sub-information system of the information system. Information systems of health care settings may also be divided by organizational structures (e.g., sub-information system of surgical departments or sub-information system of departments for internal medicine) or by professions (e.g., sub-information system of nursing and sub-information system of medical treatment).

2.6 Health Information Systems

Health information systems support health care professionals working in health care facilities as well as healthy or sick persons in their different life situations. The life situations as introduced in Sect. 1.2 are linked to various health care settings, such as health care facilities, where *prevention*, *patient care*, or rehabilitation are carried out. Such situations are also linked to the personal home environment, where people care for their own health or for the health of their relatives and where they solve health-related problems.

Obviously, health care cannot be considered an isolated procedure taking place in one *health care facility* (e.g., one hospital or one medical office). Instead, health care is a patient-oriented process encompassing *prevention*, diagnosis, and therapy going beyond the facilities' boundaries and integrating the home environment. The patient-oriented care process thus takes place in networks of different actors. Such actors are, for example, hospitals, medical offices of general practitioners (GPs), pharmacies, rehabilitation centers, home care organizations, and even health insurance companies and governmental authorities. We call these networks health care networks. Health care networks can also be understood as health care settings.

With the definition of information systems in mind, a health information system can thus be easily defined:

> A *health information system (HIS)* is the socio-technical subsystem of a health-related setting which comprises all data, information, and knowledge processing as well as the associated human or technical actors in their respective data, information, and knowledge processing roles.

A health information system that uses computer-based data processing and communication tools is called a *computer-based health information system*. Please note that health information systems typically comprise both computer-based as well as non-computer-based sub-information systems.

If we refer to the information system of a certain health care facility, such as a hospital or a medical office, we can use the more specific terms "hospital information system" or "medical office information system," respectively. The information system of a health care network can be called a *transinstitutional health information system (tHIS)*.

As a consequence of this definition of a health information system, a health care setting has a health information system from the beginning of its existence. Therefore, the question is not whether a health care setting should be equipped with a health information system, but rather how its performance can be enhanced, for example, by systematically managing it or by introducing state-of-the-art tools.

We will describe health information systems in more detail later in this book, especially in Chaps. 3 and 6. In Chap. 3, we will discuss general characteristics of

health information systems. In Chap. 6, we will discuss special characteristics that arise for information systems in specific (health care) settings.

2.7 Information Logistics in Health Information Systems

The goal of a health information system is to sufficiently enable *patient care*, administration, and management. For some types of health care facilities, such as university medical centers, health information systems also have to enable research and teaching.

While managing health information systems, legal and other requirements must be taken into account. Legal requirements encompass, for example, data protection or reimbursement aspects. Other requirements may result from management decisions, such as building a common EHR in a transinstitutional information system.

To sufficiently enable *patient care*, administration, and management, health information systems must do the following:

- It must make information, primarily about patients, available. Current information should be provided on time, at the right location, to authorized staff, and in an appropriate and usable form. For this purpose, data must be correctly collected, stored, processed, and systematically documented in order to ensure that correct, pertinent, and up-to-date patient information can be supplied, for instance, to physicians or nurses, so that they can make the right decisions.
- It must make knowledge available, for example, about diseases, side effects, and interactions of medications, to support *decision-making* in diagnostics and therapy.
- It must make information available about the quality of *patient care* and the performance and cost situation within the health care setting.

We can summarize this under the term *information and knowledge logistics*.

> *Information and knowledge logistics* aims at making the right information and knowledge available at the right time, at the right place, to the right people, and in the right form so that these people can make the right decisions.

So what is meant by the "right place"? Persons responsible for information and knowledge logistics in health information systems must consider various areas of health care settings. Health care networks, for example, can consist of

- hospitals,
- medical offices,
- rehabilitation centers,
- nursing homes or ambulatory nursing organizations, and
- personal environments, especially patients' homes.

Who are the "right people" to be provided with the "right information and knowledge"? Obviously, the most important people in a health care setting are the patients and, in a certain respect, their informal caregivers such as spouses or other close relatives. The most important groups of people working in health care settings are physicians, nurses, midwives, pharmacists, administrative staff, technical staff, medical informaticians, or health information management staff and managers. Large facilities, such as university medical centers, are managed by a board of directors.

Within each of these stakeholder groups, different needs and demands on the health information system may exist, depending on the role, tasks, and responsibilities (Sect. 1.3). Ward physicians, for example, require different information than physicians working in service units or in a medical office. Patients sometimes need similar information as physicians but in a different form.

2.8 Functions, Processes, and Entity Types in Health care Settings

In this book, we want to clearly and unambiguously describe the systems needed to ensure information and knowledge logistics. To do this, we need clear concepts to describe the information and knowledge to be provided, the situation in which it is needed, and the people involved. For this reason, we introduce the concepts of *entity*, *entity type*, function, process, and *role* in this section.

Entities are excerpts of the real or conceivable world.

Think back to the "Russo example" from Sect. 1.4. After his stay in the hospital, Mr. Russo's GP Dr. Andersson receives discharge letters from both Ploetzberg Hospital and the Kreikebohm Rehabilitation Centre. The "patient Mr. Russo" and the "discharge letter for Mr. Russo from 2020-08-15" are examples of entities.

> An *entity type* is the set of virtual or physical entities that have certain properties in common (e.g., "discharge letter" or "patient").

Entity types form a "unit of thought" when talking about similar entities. Thus, both the discharge letter for Mr. Russo and a discharge letter for another patient, Mrs. Smith, belong to the same entity type "discharge letter" and share the same properties such as sending date, author, and recipient.

For the sake of simplicity, we sometimes take entity types as representatives of the covered entities and their data. If, during certain information-processing activities (e.g., admitting patients), data on entities (e.g., name of patients' hometown) is used and interpreted, we simply say that the entity type "patient" is used during *administrative admission* of a patient. In this sense, the entity type "discharge letter"

is updated during *medical discharge*. We will also simply say "data on entity type X" if we mean the data describing entities of entity type X (e.g., "data on entity type 'patient'" means data on patients).

An *information-processing function* is the class of similar activities which update or use entity types. Due to their similarity for all patients in a health care facility, the above-mentioned information-processing activities *administrative admission* and *medical discharge* can be considered information-processing functions.

> An *information-processing function* (short: *function*) is a directive in a health care setting on how to use data on entity types and how to update data on entity types. An information-processing function has no definitive beginning or end.

Functions are ongoing and continuous. They describe what is to be done, not how it is done. Functions describe which data on entity types are used to perform the function and which data on entity types are updated by the function.

Functions are performed by human or technical actors.

One can also understand functions as tasks of an actor. But not every task of an actor is an information- processing function. It is only an information-processing function if data on one entity type is used and, after processing this data, the data on another or on the same entity type is updated. For example, a clerk who performs the function *administrative admission* in a hospital needs to ensure that the patient's administrative data, i.e., the patient's name, contact data, insurance data, and personal identifiers, are up to date when the patient is admitted to the hospital. The entity type representing patients and their administrative patient data is simply called "patient." During *patient admission*, the clerk may

- search for (i.e., "use") the patient's administrative data among all instances of the entity type "patient" in the *patient administration system,*
- check (i.e., "use") the patient's administrative data which is already available if the patient has been treated in the hospital before,
- change (i.e., "update") parts of the patient's administrative data if, for example, the address or the insurance data has changed, and
- insert (i.e., "update") new patient administrative data if the patient is admitted to the hospital for the first time.

Thus, we can state that the function *patient admission* updates and uses the entity type "patient."

Functions are usually denoted by nouns or gerunds (i.e., words often ending with -ing or -ion), for example, care planning or *patient admission*.

Functions can be structured into a hierarchy of functions, where a function can be described in more detail by refined subfunctions. For example, *nursing admission* can be seen as a subfunction of *patient admission*. There are different opportunities of refining functions that are further described in Sect. 2.14.

An *activity* is an instantiation of a function. For example, "the physician admits the patient Mr. Russo" is an activity of the function *patient admission*. In contrast to functions, activities have a definite beginning and end.

To describe how a function is performed may require not only information about its subfunctions but also information about their chronological and logical sequence. This information is described by *business processes*.

Business processes describe the sequence of activities together with the conditions under which they are performed.

Business processes are usually denoted by verbs which can be followed by a noun (e.g., "admitting a patient," "planning care," or "writing a discharge letter").

Instances of a business process are composed of the individual activities; hence, they also have a definite beginning and end. While functions concentrate on the "what," business processes focus on the "how" of activities. Functions can be considered representatives of business processes. For example, there is the function *patient admission* and the business process *patient admission* in a hospital. The function *patient admission* is specified by the entity types used and the entity types updated when a patient is admitted. The corresponding business process describes the activities of *patient admission* in their chronological and logical sequence.

For both functions and processes, it is necessary to know who is responsible for them or who performs them. The concept of a role summarizes all the stakeholder groups and groups of people working in health care settings.

Roles describe the sum of expectations addressed to persons or groups of persons.

Roles can also be regarded as a surrogate for the set of functions to be performed by a person or group of persons together with the resulting duties and the rights needed to perform the functions.

Typical roles in health care settings are ward physician, head nurse, project manager, or *chief information officer* (CIO).

The term "information-processing function" presented in this section is related to the term *enterprise function* from business informatics. *Enterprise functions* mainly emphasize the contribution of activities to *business goals*, whereas functions, in the meaning presented here, emphasize the information- processing aspects of activities.

2.9 Application Systems, Services, and Physical Data Processing Systems in Health Information Systems

Whereas functions describe what is done, we now want to look at how information, knowledge, and data processing is done. We will thus take a closer look at tools for data, information, and knowledge processing, in particular *physical data processing systems* and *application component*s.

Physical data processing systems ensure the storage, manipulation, and communication of data.

Most people would intuitively call such systems the physically touchable hardware of an information system or physical tool. Physical data processing systems are able to receive, store, forward, or purposefully manipulate data. We denote receiving, storing, forwarding, and purposefully manipulating data as data processing.

Physical data processing systems can be human actors (such as the person delivering the mail), non-computer-based *physical tools* (such as forms for nursing documentation, paper-based patient records, filing cabinets, or telephones), or *computer systems* (such as terminals, servers, personal computers (PCs), or tablets). Computer systems can be physically connected via data wires, leading to physical networks.

A *physical data processing system* is a physical entity that is able to receive, store, forward, or purposefully manipulate data.

For the administration of physical data processing systems that are computer systems, it can be useful to abstract from single pieces of hardware and instead focus on the optimum use of available processing power, storage, or network capacity. For this reason, the technique of hardware virtualization has found its way into data processing centers in recent years. Virtualization software can help simulate the behavior of servers, storage, and networks. Virtual servers (or virtual machines), for example, simulate the functionalities of physical servers. To install different software products which require different operating systems, virtual servers that run on one physical server can be used. By contrast, in a server cluster, different servers could alternatively, depending on their capacity, run a certain application system. The server cluster, however, can be managed as one (virtual) server.

Virtualization techniques to simulate computer systems are widely used in professional health care settings. When using the term “physical data processing systems” in this book, we include their possible implementation as simulated computer systems, i.e., as simulated physical data processing systems such as virtual machines or server clusters.

A computer system is useless without software. Software can be considered as explicit rules for processing the data in a computer system.

An *application software product* is an acquired or self-developed piece of software that can be installed on a computer system.

By installing and customizing an application software product on a computer system and customizing it to the users' needs, application systems (computer-based application components) are created.

> An *application system* is the installation of a certain application software product on a certain computer system. It supports certain functions of a health care setting or communication between other application systems and can store and communicate data on certain entity types.

Application systems may be described by the functions they support and by the *features* they provide. *Features* are functionalities offered by the application software product of the application system which directly contribute to the fulfillment of one or more functions. The finer the granularity of a function, the greater is the probability that the function semantically corresponds to a feature offered by an application system.

We denote features by a short phrase consisting of at least one verb and one noun expressing the ability of the application software product.

For example, the application system *patient administration system* stands for the installed application software product to support the functions *patient admission* and *administrative discharge and billing* in a hospital. It may offer the features "generate a unique *patient identification number*" (PIN) and "provide catalog of diagnoses" in order to fulfill the functions *patient admission* and *administrative discharge and billing*. Other typical application systems are the *medical documentation and management system (MDMS)*, the *computerized provider order entry (CPOE) system*, and the *picture archiving and communication system (PACS)*. These and other application systems are discussed in more detail in Sect. 3.4. Application systems store data in database systems. Depending on the architecture style of a health information system, each of its application systems either has its own database system or uses the database system of another application system (Sect. 3.5).

Even in highly computerized health care settings, not every information-processing function is supported by an application system. Sometimes, the rules for processing data are not implemented as executable application software product but as organizational rules or working plans that describe how people use certain physical data processing systems. For example, the rules regarding how, by whom, and in which context given forms for nursing documentation have to be used in a certain hospital may be described verbally as text in a handbook of this hospital. In this example, the paper-based forms that are used represent physical data processing systems. We call sets of organizational rules for data processing which are

implemented by non-computer-based physical tools "non-computer-based application components." They are often also denoted as *paper-based application components*.

"Application component" is an abstract concept for both application systems and non-computer-based application components.

An *application component* is a set of implemented rules which control data processing of certain physical data processing systems. It supports certain functions of a health care setting or communication between application components.

For those dealing with the management of an information system, it is important to have an overview of the information system's application systems. However, users often do not know which application systems they are using. They are merely interested in certain features provided on a website or by an app on their smartphone. The actual application system providing these features may even be hidden from the users and invoked by another application system. We call these features that are provided by one application system for use by another application system and which are thus not immediately used by users "services." Using a service means invoking it.

A *service* is an encapsulated feature provided by application systems in order to be invoked by other application systems.

Details on the most relevant tools for data, information, and knowledge processing, i.e., application components, services, and physical data processing systems, in health care settings can be found in Sect. 3.4 and the following sections.

2.10 Electronic Health Records as a Part of Health Information Systems

The most important functions of health care settings are related to *prevention*, diagnostics, therapy, and rehabilitation. Obviously, data and documents that are relevant to medical decision-making both in diagnostics and in therapy need to be collected and presented in a record for the patient.

Until just a few years ago (and in some cases still in the present), many documents in the records have been paper-based documents, such as laboratory results or discharge summaries. The portion of documents created and stored in computer-based application systems has increased, however, in recent years and will continue

to increase further. It therefore seems natural to strive for a record that is used and updated by application systems and stored in database systems: *the electronic health record (EHR)*.

> The *electronic health record (EHR)* is the collection of a person's health data from different health care settings. It is stored by one or more application systems in a transinstitutional health information system (tHIS).

This means that the EHR for a person might be scattered physically across the database systems of multiple (discrete or interconnected) application systems at various health care facilities. Each of the database systems will hold and manage a partial EHR containing partial patient information or, to be more precise, containing data about patient-specific entity types. Each partial EHR is scoped according to the person's stays at the health care settings which will be discussed in Sect. 3.5.

EHRs provide relevant information about a person whenever and wherever it is needed during *patient care*. Furthermore, EHRs provide information that is relevant for administrative functions, such as *billing* and *quality management*.

> An *electronic patient record (EPR)* is the collection of a person's health data from one certain health care facility where the person is or has been a patient. They are stored by application systems designated for this purpose by the facility.

Some years ago, EPRs were the predominant form of electronic records in health care. Hence, potentially relevant information about the medical history of a patient that was recorded in one facility was missing or had to be recorded again in another facility. This led to quality and efficiency problems.

Although this situation can still be found in many facilities, efforts are being made today to organize EPRs as patient-centric, i.e., independent of boundaries of facilities, which will transform the multiple EPRs to one EHR for one person.

Different strategies can be found to achieve the vision of a complete and lifetime-spanning EHR that supports health care on the one hand but respects legal and ethical issues on the other. These are described further in Chap. 3.

In the international literature, the terms EHR and EPR are usually defined as presented here. In some countries, however, the use of these terms may differ. According to the German data privacy law, for example, health insurers are obliged to provide their insured persons with the so-called electronic patient record (EPR) which contains selected patient data from different facilities. This "EPR," in fact, corresponds more to our definition of an "EHR."

2.11 Architecture and Infrastructure of Health Information Systems

The *architecture* of an information system describes its fundamental organization, represented by its components, their relationships to each other and to the environment, and by the principles guiding its design and evolution [2].

The architecture of an information system can be described by functions, business processes, application components, services and physical data processing systems, and their mutual relationships.

There may be several architectural views of an information system, e.g., a functional view looking primarily at the functions or a process view looking primarily at the business processes. Architectures that are equivalent with regard to certain characteristics can be summarized in a certain *architectural style*.

The set of components of the information system and services, which are centrally coordinated and provided for use throughout the health care setting, is called the *infrastructure of an information system*. The infrastructure of an information system consists of physical data processing systems such as servers set up centrally in a data center as well as printers and scanners made available for all users at central locations. The infrastructure may also contain *logical tools* such as central application systems that have to be used by most of the users throughout the health care setting. Moreover, the service desk providing support for all users in the health care setting is also part of the infrastructure. Components and services that are dedicated only to a specific department are not considered to be part of the infrastructure [3].

2.12 Management of Information Systems

Information systems need systematic management. In general, management comprises all leadership activities that determine the goals, structures, and behaviors of a setting. Management as a task includes *planning*, *directing*, and *monitoring* a specific object. Within a setting, management can focus on different aspects and objects of the setting. In companies, for example, a distinction is made between management of finances and management of personnel. Accordingly, there is the management of a setting's information system.

Management of information systems (short: information management) means

- planning the information system and its architecture,
- directing its construction and the further development of its architecture and its operation on the basis of these plans, and
- monitoring compliance of its development and operation with the plan specifications.

The goal of managing information systems is systematic information processing that supports information and knowledge logistics and therefore contributes to the setting's strategic goals (such as efficient *patient care* and high satisfaction of patients and staff in a health care setting). *Management of information systems* therefore directly contributes to the setting's success and the ability to compete.

Management of information systems encompasses the management of all components of the information system—the management of functions, processes, and entity types, of application components and services, and of physical data processing systems.

Management of information systems is discussed in detail in Chap. 4.

2.13 Modeling Information Systems

Modeling health information systems is an important precondition for their management: What we cannot describe, we usually cannot manage adequately. But what is a model?

A *model* is a description of what the modeler believes to be relevant about a system.

In the sciences, models commonly represent simplified depictions of reality or excerpts of it. Models are adapted to answer certain questions or to solve certain tasks. Models should be appropriate for the respective questions or tasks. This means that a model is only "good" when it is able to answer such a question or solve such a task. For example, a model that only comprises the patients (and not the nurses) of a ward cannot be used for nurse staffing and shift planning. Since we are dealing with *management of information systems*, this means that models should present a simplified but appropriate view of a health information system in order to support *management of information systems*.

Examples of respective questions that can be answered by specific information system models could be:

- Which functions are supported by computer-based logical and physical tools?
- Which tools for data, information, and knowledge processing are used in a nursing home?
- What information is needed if a patient is to be admitted to a rehabilitation hospital? What information can be provided afterwards?
- Which functions of a hospital are affected in the event that a specific server breaks down?
- How can the quality of information processing in a regional health care network be judged?

The better a model assists its users in answering a given question, the better the model is. Thus, the selection of the adequate model depends on the problems or questions to be answered or solved.

There exists a large number of different classes of models. Each class of models is determined by a certain metamodel. A metamodel can be understood as a language for constructing models of a certain class and a guideline for using the language.

A *metamodel* is a modeling framework which consists of

- modeling syntax and semantics (the available modeling concepts together with their meaning), i.e., the modeling language;
- the representation of the concepts (how the concepts are represented in a concrete model, for example, in a graphical way); and
- (sometimes) the modeling rules (e.g., the modeling steps), i.e., the guideline for applying the language.

Just as there are different views on health information systems, there also exist various metamodels. Typical types of metamodels are as follows:

1. Functional metamodels focus on functions (Sect. 2.8) that are supported in a health information system. They provide the means to describe dependencies between functions, for example, hierarchies of functions or information flows between them.
2. Technical metamodels are used to build models describing the tools for data, information, and knowledge processing (see, for example, application components, physical data processing systems, Sect. 2.9) used in a health care setting. They also help to describe data transmission or *communication links* between the tools. If the model comprises a graphical presentation of tools and their links, it also visualizes the architecture of a health information system. Examples of technical metamodels are technical network diagrams or application landscape diagrams.
3. Organizational metamodels help to describe the organizational structure of a health care setting. Organizational models typically consist of *organizational*

units or roles and their hierarchies. Examples of organizational metamodels are organizational charts (also called organigrams).
4. Data and information metamodels are used for building models of the structure of data and information processed and stored inside health information systems. Their concepts are typically entity types and their relationships. Examples of data metamodels are UML class diagrams (UML = Unified Modeling Language) or entity-relationship models (ERMs).
5. Business process metamodels focus on a dynamic view of information processing in health care settings. They provide concepts that describe the activities to be done, their chronological and logical order, the conditions under which they are performed, and often their links to roles, organizational units, entity types, and logical or physical tools for data and information processing. Examples of business process metamodels comprise UML activity diagrams, event-driven process chains (EPCs), Petri nets, or the business process modeling and notation (BPMN) language.
6. Information system metamodels (also: enterprise metamodels) combine different metamodels (i.e., functional, technical, organizational, data, or business process models) into an integrated, enterprise-wide view on information processing in a facility. Examples of information system metamodels comprise the *three-layer graph-based metamodel (3LGM²*, Sect. 2.13), The Open Group Architecture Framework (TOGAF), the Extended Enterprise Modeling Language (EEML), or the Architecture of Integrated Information Systems (ARIS).

Modeling of health information systems is based on the right selection of a metamodel. For health information system modeling, you should therefore consider the following steps:

1. Define the questions or tasks to be solved by the health information system model.
2. Select an adequate metamodel.
3. Gather the information needed for modeling.
4. Create and validate the model.
5. Analyze and interpret the model (answer your questions).
6. Evaluate if the right metamodel was chosen, i.e., if the model was adequate to answer the questions. If not, return to step 2.

Especially step 3 of gathering the information needed for modeling is often time- and cost-intensive.

Modeling patterns which can be customized to the specific situation to be modeled can reduce the modeling effort. We call these types of models *reference models*. According to the metamodel used, a reference model supports the construction of models of a certain class of systems and helps to deal with a certain class of questions or tasks concerning these systems.

A model is called a *reference model* for a certain class of systems and a certain class of questions or tasks dealing with these systems if it provides model patterns supporting

- the derivation of more specific models through modifications, limitations, or completions (generic reference models) or
- direct comparison of different models with the reference model concerning certain quality aspects of the modeled systems (e.g., completeness, styles of system's architecture) (non-generic reference models).

A specific model may be considered a variant of a generic reference model developed through specialization (modifications, limitations, or completions). This variant is an instance of the metamodel that also underlies the corresponding reference model. For example, a model of the processes in a hospital information system of a specific hospital may be derived from a general reference model on health information system processes. Both the specific model and the reference model used are instances of the same business process metamodel.

A reference model should be followed by a description of its usage, for example, how specific models can be derived from the reference model or how it can be used for the purpose of comparison.

Specific models can be compared with a reference model, and consequently models can also be compared with each other, judging their similarity or difference when describing certain aspects.

Reference models can be normative in the sense that they are broadly accepted and have practical relevance. Reference models are more likely to be accepted if they are not only reliable and well-tested but also recommended by a respected institution. For example, the initiative Integrating the Health care Enterprise (IHE) (Sect. 3.7.2.5) provides a comprehensive set of models describing how to use communication standards such as Health Level 7 (HL7) and Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) in typical health care settings. These models can be regarded as reference models. Many experts in the field use these reference models as norms or standards although they are explicitly not. These models apparently became normative because they are widely used especially in commercial invitations of tenders for software supporting radiology departments.

In the following section, we introduce the 3LGM^2 as an information system metamodel that integrates aspects of functional metamodels, technical metamodels, organizational metamodels, and data metamodels. For 3LGM^2, there are also reference models describing certain aspects of health information systems available (Sect. 3.11.1).

2.14 3LGM²: A Metamodel for Information System Architectures

The *three-layer graph-based metamodel (3LGM²)* is a metamodel for modeling (health) information systems. It aims to support the systematic management of health information systems and especially the structural quality assessment of information processing in health care settings. We will use this metamodel further on in this book (especially in Chaps. 3 and 6) and thus present it in detail here.

Typical questions to be answered with models derived from the 3LGM² metamodel are as follows:

- Which functions of a health care setting are supported?
- Which information is needed or updated when performing a function?
- Which application components are used and how do they communicate?
- Which physical data processing systems are used?
- Which functions are supported by which application component?
- Which application components are installed on which physical data processing systems?
- What is the overall architecture of the health information system?

3LGM² combines functional, technical, and organizational aspects with certain aspects of data and process metamodels. As the name indicates, the 3LGM² distinguishes three layers of information systems:

- domain layer,
- logical tool layer,
- physical tool layer.

The following sections provide a user-oriented description of the three layers, complemented by examples from health information systems.

2.14.1 Domain Layer

The *domain layer* of a 3LGM² model describes what kinds of activities in a health care setting are enabled by its information system and what kind of data is stored and processed. This layer is independent of the implemented physical and logical tools for data and information processing.

Information-processing activities at a certain time and place in an information system use certain data in order to create, update, or delete other data. For example, the clerk entering Mr. Russo's administrative data into the *patient administration system* when he arrives at the Kreikebohm Rehabilitation Centre creates or updates Mr. Russo's patient data. For the sake of simplicity, we will from here on subsume creating, updating, or deleting patient data under the term "updating."

In Sect. 2.8, we already introduced the important concepts for the domain layer, namely entities, entity types, and information-processing functions. Entities are excerpts of the real or conceivable world, such as "patient Mr. Russo," while an entity type (such as "patient") is a set of virtual or physical entities that have certain properties in common. An information-processing function (short: function) is a directive in a health care setting on how to use data on entity types and how to update data on entity types (such as *care planning* or *patient admission*). At the domain layer, we now use these concepts for health information system modeling to describe entity types, functions, and the relationships between functions and entity types performed in a health care setting.

Figure 2.2 shows an example. The function *administrative admission* updates the entity type "patient," which represents a patient's administrative data. This indicates that during the *administrative admission*, patient data such as name, birthdate, insurance data, and identification numbers are documented for the first time or updated. The entity type "patient" is used by the function *medical admission* which indicates that during a *medical admission*, the administrative data is available and can be used. *Medical admission*, in turn, updates the patient's "medical history." This indicates that information on the medical history is documented or updated during *medical admission*. Both the entity types "patient" and "medical history" are needed to create a medical care plan. Therefore, these two entity types are used by the function *medical care planning*. In 3LGM² models, functions are represented by rectangles and entity types are represented by ovals.

Functions and entity types can be structured hierarchically by "specialization" and "decomposition." When a function or an entity type is specialized, all its sub-elements are a refinement of the function or the entity type and independent of the respective super-element. For a function, this means that the activities regarding this function are performed differently in different contexts. The function "execution of

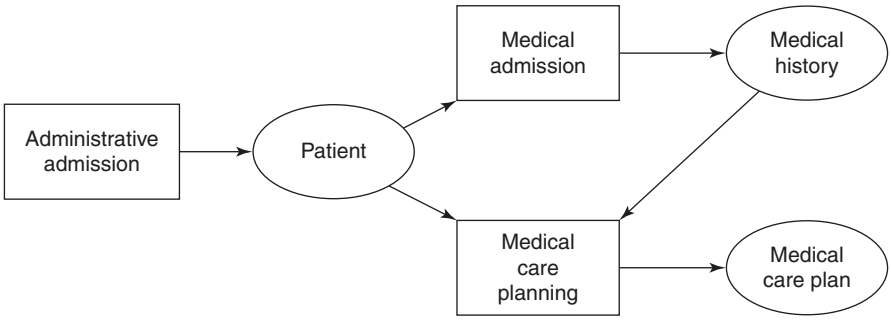


Fig. 2.2 3LGM²² representation of functions (represented by rectangles) and entity types (represented by ovals) at the domain layer of 3LGM²². An arrow pointing from a function to an entity type represents an updating access of an entity type. An arrow pointing from an entity type to a function represents a using access of an entity type

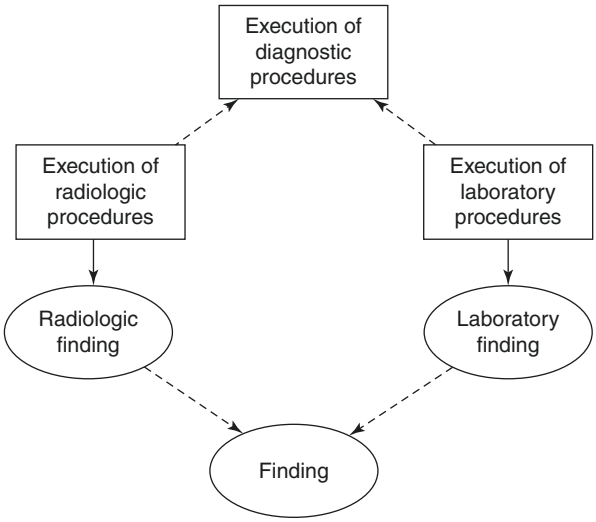


Fig. 2.3 3LGM² representation of a specialization of functions and entity types. "Execution of radiologic procedures" and "execution of laboratory procedures" are specializations of the function "execution of diagnostic procedures." "Radiologic finding" and "laboratory finding" are specializations of "finding"

diagnostic procedures," for example, has different specializations in different diagnostic departments. Similarly, an entity type can have different forms for slightly different purposes: A radiologic finding is different from a laboratory finding; but both are specializations of findings, which is the generalized term (Fig. 2.3).

By contrast, when a function or an entity type is decomposed, all its sub-elements form a proper subset of the function or the entity type. An activity regarding a function is only completed if all activities regarding all its decomposed subfunctions are completed. For example, the activities regarding *patient admission* are only completed if *appointment scheduling*, *patient identification*, *administrative admission*, *medical admission*, *nursing admission*, and *visitor and information services* have been performed (Fig. 2.4). Similarly, a decomposed entity type is only complete when all its subordinate entity types are available. The entity type "patient," for example, must contain a name, a PIN, the patient's address, and insurance data.

Both decomposition and specialization are represented by dashed arrows from sub-elements to super-elements in 3LGM². For modelers, it is important to differentiate between specialization and composition at the domain layer. To avoid misunderstandings, it might be useful to predefine the use of only one hierarchical relationship for functions or entity types in one model. If this is not possible, one should at least consider that an entity type or a function cannot be specialized and decomposed at the same time.

Using relationships and updating relationships between functions and entity types are inherited to their sub-elements, no matter whether the functions or entity types were decomposed or specialized. This means, for example, that the PIN, which is a sub-element of the entity type "patient," may be updated by the functions *patient identification*, *administrative admission*, etc. although the "update" relationship is only modeled between the super-ordinated entity type "patient" and the respective functions.

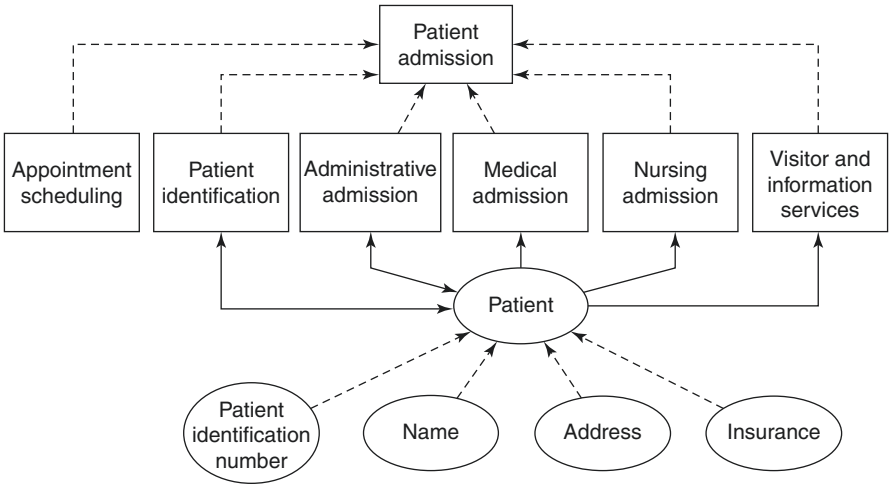


Fig. 2.4 3LGM² representation of a decompositions of the function *patient admission* and of the entity type "patient"

Functions are usually performed in certain parts of health care settings. The execution of radiologic procedures, for example, is performed in the radiology department of a hospital. We call those parts of health care settings "organizational units."

An *organizational unit* is a part of a facility which can be defined by responsibilities.

Organizational units such as a radiology department can be decomposed, but not specialized.

Functions, entity types and organizational units are part of a static view of a health care setting. For modeling the dynamic view of health care settings, business process models are more appropriate. Which entity types and which functions of an information system are modeled depends on the health care setting and on the modeling purpose. Reference models may offer recommendations on important entity types and functions for certain kinds of hospitals.

2.14.2 Logical Tool Layer

2.14.2.1 Application Systems

At the *logical tool layer*, application systems or, in a broader sense, application components are the center of interest. As defined in Sect. 2.9, an application system is the installation of a certain application software product on a certain computer

system. Application components as a more general concept are sets of implemented rules that control data processing of certain physical data processing systems. Application systems as well as non-computer-based application components support functions.

An application system cannot be bought in a shop but must be constructed by customizing a buyable application software product onsite. A *patient administration system*, for example, is implemented by an application software product offering features for *appointment scheduling*, *patient identification*, checking for readmitted patients, and *administrative admission*. Many application software products developed for health care facilities consist of different modules, and buyers can decide which of the modules of the application software product they purchase. Application software products for *enterprise resource planning systems (ERPS)*, for example, may offer modules for *human resource management*, *material management*, *financial accounting*, and *customer or patient administration* (Fig. 2.5).

Non-computer-based application components are controlled by rules which we can understand as working plans describing how people use non-computer-based data processing systems to support a given function. A working plan may be available in written form in a document (e.g., in an SOP—standardized operating procedure). In most cases, however, working plans are verbal agreements or are merely specified implicitly. A non-computer-based application component for patient data privacy forms, for example, may be controlled by a working plan that describes when and how to hand out paper-based data privacy forms to the patients and where and how to archive the signed document.

Application components of an information system are objects that are recognized and used by staff members in a facility. But nevertheless, they are not tangible in the same way as physical tools are. We therefore refer to application components also as *logical tools*. Consequently, we call the layer describing the application components the logical tool layer. This is in contrast to the tangible tools, which we refer to as physical.

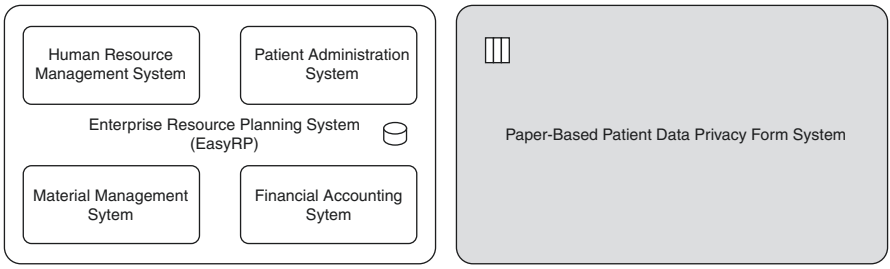


Fig. 2.5 3LGM² representation of the application system *enterprise resource planning system* which consists of four sub-application systems and a database system and of the paper-based "patient data privacy form system" as non-computer-based application component

At the logical tool layer, application components are responsible for supporting functions and for storing and communicating data on certain entity types. *Computer-based application components* usually store data in database systems which are controlled by database management systems. Non-computer-based application components use document collections for data storage.

Both application systems as well as non-computer-based application components are represented by rounded rectangles at the logical tool layer of a 3LGM² model. Visually they can be distinguished by different coloring and the different symbols for database systems (cylinders) and data collections (dashed rectangles, Fig. 2.5).

For communication between two application systems, we distinguish between the message-oriented and the service-oriented communication paradigm, which are explained in the following sections.

2.14.2.2 Message-Oriented Communication

For message-oriented communication, application systems use *communication interfaces*. A communication interface can either send or receive messages over communication links. A *patient administration system*, for example, may communicate with an *MDMS* by sending messages over communication interfaces and a communication link (Fig. 2.6). In this example, the message may comprise information on the admission of a patient and the related administrative patient data.

A *message* is a set of data on entities (e.g., administrative data on a given patient) that are arranged as a unit in order to be communicated between application systems. A message type describes a class of uniform messages and determines which data on which entity types is communicated by a message belonging to this message type. For example, the message type "patient administrative data" could describe how the administrative data on a patient (name, address, identification number, insurance data, etc.) must be arranged in a uniform way in order to be understood by both the *patient administration system* and the *MDMS*.

A message type can belong to a communication standard, i.e., a standard for *syntactic interoperability* (Sect. 3.7.1). There are several communication standards which describe how messages of a certain data format must be communicated between application systems. In medical informatics, Health Level 7 Version 2 (HL7 V2) and DICOM are well-known examples of such message-oriented

Fig. 2.6 3LGM² representation of a *patient administration system's* communication interface (represented by a circle) sending messages to a *medical documentation and management system's* communication interface over a communication link (represented by an arrow)

communication standards (Sects. 3.7.2.1 and 3.7.2.4). Application systems have to communicate by using their interfaces to ensure that functions can use and update entity types as described at the domain layer.

The concept of a message-oriented communication paradigm may also be used to model the communication between application systems and non-computer-based application components.

2.14.2.3 Service-Oriented Communication

The service-oriented communication paradigm assumes that application systems provide encapsulated features ("services") that can be used by other application systems. A *patient administration system*, for example, could offer a service "get patient" to other application systems within a health care facility. When invoking this service, an application system such as the *MDMS* can request and obtain the administrative patient data of a given patient from the *patient administration system*.

Application systems need "providing interfaces" to provide services to other application systems and "invoking interfaces" to invoke services provided by other application systems. In 3LGM^2 models, invoking interfaces are represented by circles and providing interfaces are represented by triangles (Fig. 2.7).

Services themselves are not graphically represented at the logical tool layer but can be assigned to interfaces. Services of a similar type can be summarized in 3LGM^{22} service classes.

A function can be either supported by one service or by a set of combined ("orchestrated") services. In health information systems, the *interoperability standards* HL7 FHIR (Fast Health care Interoperability Resources) and open Electronic Health Record (openEHR) support the implementation of *service-oriented architectures (SOA)*.

Communication with non-computer-based application components can take different forms and is therefore considered separately.

Communication of data between two non-computer-based application components is only possible through an active human intervention, for example, by carrying a paper document from one place to another.

In a similar way, human intervention is necessary for the communication between non-computer-based application components and application systems. Scanning a paper form for archiving or typing a discharge letter which is available as an audio recording are examples of communication from a non-computer-based application

Fig. 2.7 3LGM^{22} representation of a situation where the *patient administration system* provides a service "get patient" invoked by the *medical documentation and management system*

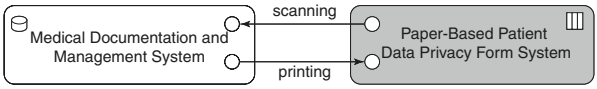


Fig. 2.8 Communication between an application system and a non-computer-based application component

component to an application system. Printing out a paper form available in the *MDMS* or storing radiological images on a memory device to be taken to another health facility by a patient are examples of communication from an application system to a non-computer-based application component. Figure 2.8 shows the 3LGM² representation of such "media breaks" between application systems and non-computer-based application components. The details of the communication should be modeled by messages (Sect. 2.14.2.2).

2.14.3 Physical Tool Layer

The *physical tool layer* describes physical data processing systems and their data transmission links among each other. As defined in Sect. 2.9, a physical data processing system is a physical entity that is able to receive, store, forward, or purposefully manipulate data.

For the computer-based part of information systems, servers, PCs, notebooks, tablets, switches, routers, smartphones, etc. are modeled at the physical tool layer. In addition, virtualized physical data processing systems are modeled at the physical tool layer because they behave like physical data processing systems to the outside world (Sect. 2.9).

For the non-computer-based part of information systems, human actors (such as persons delivering mail) and non-computer-based physical tools (such as printed forms, telephones, books, paper-based patient records, administrative stickers) are modeled at the physical tool layer.

Figure 2.9 shows a simple model of the physical tool layer. A virtualized server farm is represented by one physical data processing system. This "black box" is connected to a patient terminal, a PC and a tablet PC. The physician uses both a tablet PC and a telephone as physical computer-based or non-computer-based tools, respectively.

Depending on the modeling goals, health professionals, patients, or caregiving relatives can be modeled as physical data processing systems (as in Fig. 2.9) to highlight their information-processing role in the health information system. In most cases, this will not be necessary.

To specify the relationship between physical data processing systems and virtualized physical data processing systems in a 3LGM² model, a "virtualizes" relationship can be modeled. Figure 2.10 illustrates the 3LGM² representation of

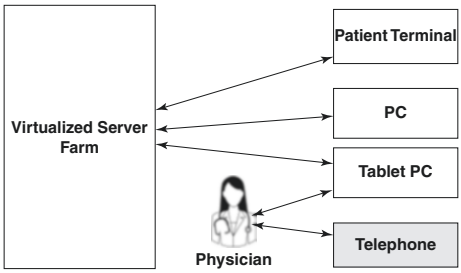


Fig. 2.9 3LGM² representation of physical data processing systems at the physical tool layer. The patient terminal, the PC and the tablet PC are connected with the virtualized server farm

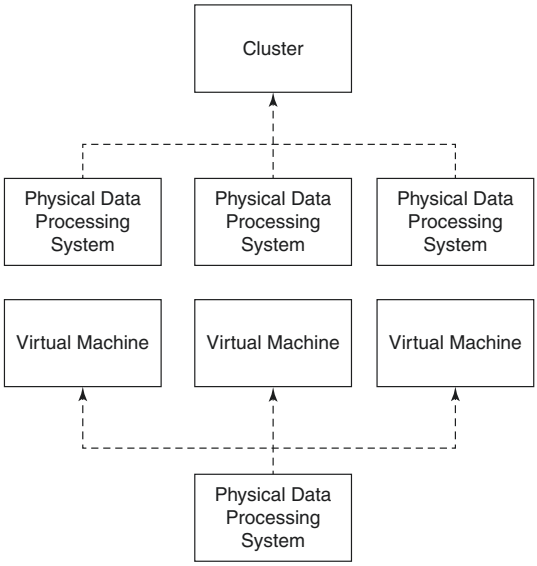


Fig. 2.10 3LGM² representation of a virtual machine. On the top, the concept of a cluster virtualizing several physical data processing systems is illustrated. At the bottom, there is one physical data processing system which is virtualized into several virtual machines

virtualization techniques. In a server cluster, physical data processing systems can run certain application systems alternatively. Virtual machines allow multiple operating systems or different instances of one operating system to run on one physical data processing system (compare Sect. 2.9).

Physical data processing systems such as a specific server or a specific PC can be assigned to a "tool class" (e.g., server, PC) and a location.

Physical data processing systems are physically connected via data transmission links (e.g., communication network, courier service) which can use different transmitting media. A transmitting medium is either signal-based (e.g., copper cable, optical fiber) or non-signal-based (e.g., sheet of paper, CD-ROM, USB flash drive).

Physical data processing systems can be refined by decomposition. A physical data processing system can be part of exactly one physical data processing

system. Thus, the lower part in Fig. 2.10 does not show a decomposition but a virtualization.

2.14.4 Inter-layer Relationships

A variety of dependencies, called inter-layer relationships, exist among concepts of the three layers of a 3LGM² model. Relationships exist between concepts of the domain layer and the logical tool layer and between concepts of the logical tool layer and the physical tool layer.

The following relationships between the domain layer and the logical tool layer can be modeled in 3LGM²:

- Functions (domain layer) can be supported by application components or, in SOA, by services which are both modeled at the logical tool layer.
- Entity types (domain layer) or, more exactly, their representation by a dataset or document collection, can be stored in an application component (logical tool layer).
- An application system storing an entity type can, in addition, be the primary application system of that entity type. This means that the application system contains the "original" data on that entity type. Data on that entity type that are stored in other application systems have to be considered copies of the "original" data. Consequently, only data in primary application systems can be updated directly by users; *data integrity* in the other application systems must be maintained by sending new copies of the original data to the other application systems (see Sects. 3.5 and 3.8.1 for an in-depth discussion of data integrity and *data integration*).
- In the message-oriented communication paradigm, entity types or, more exactly, their representation by a message can be communicated over communication interfaces and communication links.
- In the service-oriented communication paradigm, entity types are represented by parameters that are handled by services.

Between the logical tool layer and the physical tool layer, there are two types of relationships expressing that application components need certain physical data processing systems to work:

- One relationship between application components and physical data processing systems states that an application component needs physical data processing systems to be able to provide its features. For example, an application system needs to be installed on a server to make its features available.
- The second relationship between application components and physical data processing systems states that application components need a physical data processing system to store data on entity types.

2.14.5 First Steps of 3LGM² Modeling

2.14.5.1 Installation of the 3LGM² Tool

To start modeling, the current version of the full version of the 3LGM² tool can be downloaded from http://www.3lgm2.de. The Java-based tool runs on different platforms and can freely be used for non-commercial purposes.

2.14.5.2 Modeling the Domain Layer

The main elements of the domain layer are entity types and functions. When modeling a domain layer from scratch, the following rules should be observed:

- Each function should use and update at least one entity type.
- Very similar or even equivalent functions that are performed in different areas, different organizational units, or different health care facilities of a health care network should be modeled only once at the domain layer. The functions can be identified as similar by checking whether they use and update the same set of entity types.
- If an entity type is updated or used by a function that is decomposed or specialized, then all of the subfunctions also use or update the entity type. For clearer models, it can be helpful to assign entity types only to functions that are not further refined by subfunctions.
- Functions should be decomposed or specialized only to that level of detail needed to describe the support of the functions by single application components.
- "Documentation" may not be modeled as a function in 3LGM² because it is an inherent part of a function updating an entity type. If an entity type is updated by a function and this entity type's data are stored in an application component, we call this combination the "documentation of the entity type." However, sometimes it may improve the readability of a model to include the word "documentation" in a function's name.

Identifying appropriate functions and entity types for a specific health care setting is a non-trivial task. The most elaborate but also the most direct way to identify functions and entity types of a setting is to conduct interviews with the persons performing the functions. Preparing and conducting these interviews, function patterns, or reference models providing lists of typical functions and of relationships between the functions of a specific type of health care setting may be helpful. In Chap. 3, we develop patterns for functions that are performed in many health care settings. These patterns as well as a reference model for the domain layer of hospital information systems are available at http://www.3lgm2.de and can be used and refined for modeling a specific health information system.

2.14.5.3 Modeling the Logical Tool Layer

The logical tool layer describes the application components of a health care setting and the communication between these components. For modeling the logical tool layer, the following rules should be observed:

- Application systems are installations of application software products. For every installed instance of an application software product, there should be one application system in a 3LGM² model.
- Application software products in health care often consist of different modules for different functional areas (e.g., a module for operation planning and execution, a module for nursing). Thus, an application system may consist of sub-application systems (modeled by part-of relationships) according to the installed modules of an application software product.
- For message-based communication between two application systems, each application system should have at least one communication interface. The message type communicated over a communication link between two communication interfaces should be named according to the message type of the communication standard used. If the technical name of the message type is not known or the message type is proprietary, the name of the message type should describe the message type's content concisely, for example, by using the name of the entity type connected to the message.
- Depending on the modeling scope, the modeler may decide to model only application systems or to model a mix of application systems and non-computer-based application components.
- There are at least two strategies for modeling non-computer-based application components. (1) All non-computer-based information processing of the logical tool layer of a health care setting can be modeled with the help of one non-computer-based application component having several communication links to application systems of the setting. (2) For each application system where there is an intervention of a person necessary to enter data which are already documented at another medium, a non-computer-based application component describing this media break is modeled. Likewise, for each application system where intervention by a person is necessary to transfer data stored in the application system to another medium, a non-computer-based application component describing this media break is modeled.

To obtain a correct representation of a logical tool layer, it is in most cases not sufficient to interview health care professionals who work within the health information system. They often have too little insight into the technical details of the logical tool layer. Interviewing information management staff or analyzing the current documentation of the information system are the most promising methods for obtaining information about the logical tool layer of a health care setting.

2.14.5.4 Modeling the Physical Tool Layer

Physical data processing systems and their connections are modeled at the physical tool layer. This layer has the fewest modeling rules. Depending on the purpose, the modeler must decide whether to model single physical data processing systems such as servers and PCs or to provide a more abstract view, for example, by modeling the data processing center of one facility as one physical data processing system.

Information about the physical data processing systems and the network can be obtained from the staff of the information management department or the data processing center, respectively.

2.14.5.5 Modeling Inter-layer Relationships

Functions are to be connected with application components supporting them in a health information system. To establish this relationship between the domain layer and the logical tool layer, the organizational unit where the function is supported by the application component should be specified. This is especially important if a function is supported by one or more application components in a health care setting. Therefore, even if one of these application components fails, this function could still be performed, at least in selected organizational units. In this case, we have a functional redundancy which may be an indication for superfluous application components.

There are also desired functional redundancies. To update the application software product of an application system, it might be necessary to shut down an application system for a few hours. If this concerns an application system which is permanently in use, such as an *MDMS*, it can be helpful to have an evasive application system.

However, we must also be careful that supposed functional redundancy does not result from inaccurate modeling.

In a 3LGM^2 model, we specialize or decompose functions to that level of detail needed to describe the support of the functions by single application components. That means if we think of the hierarchy of functions in a 3LGM^2 model as a tree in graph theory, then each of the tree's "leaf functions" must completely be supported by one application component of the information system. We only assign application components to the "leaf functions" of the tree. For example, if we find that the function *medical and nursing care planning* needs joint support of two application components X and Y, we have to specialize or decompose the function in such a way that the resulting subfunctions are supported by X and Y, respectively. If X is used by clinicians and Y is used by nurses, a solution could be to decompose the function into *medical care planning* and *nursing care planning*.

Besides the relationship between functions and application systems, it is important not to forget to model the relationships between entity types of the domain layer and their representation forms at the logical tool layer (message types, parameters, dataset types).

Between the application systems at the logical tool layer and the physical data processing systems at the physical tool layer, the relationships have to be modeled—both for expressing the installation of an application component on a physical data processing systems and for the storage of data in such a system.

2.15 Example

For this example, we merge many of the small examples of Sect. 2.14 into one 3LGM² model showing a section of the information system of a fictional hospital. Figure 2.11 illustrates which logical and physical tools are used for the function *patient admission* in the hospital. Four subfunctions of *patient admission* (*appointment scheduling*, *patient identification* and checking for readmitted patients, *administrative admission*, and *visitor and information services*) are supported by the *patient administration system*, which is a part of the *ERPS*. *Medical admission* and *nursing admission* are supported by the *MDMS*. Obtaining consent for processing of patient-related data is supported by the non-computer-based application component for patient data privacy forms. This application component is based on paper forms which are scanned by a clerk (see physical tool layer) and then stored in the *MDMS*.

The *patient administration system*, which is the master application system (Sect. 3.9.1) for the entity type "patient," sends the administrative patient data as a message to the *MDMS*. The *MDMS* can thus store this information about the entity type "patient" in its own database; administrative patient data that is needed to support *medical admission* and *nursing admission* as functions therefore do not have to be reentered in the *MDMS*. The entity type "patient" is both stored in the database systems of the *ERPS* and the *MDMS* what is represented by dashed lines between the domain layer and the logical tool layer in Fig. 2.11.

Both the *patient administration system* and the *MDMS* are run on servers at a virtualized server farm (see relationships between logical and physical tool layer). The application systems can be accessed by different end devices (patient terminal, PC, tablet PC).

Note that Fig. 2.11 shows a model of the information system expressing what the modeler believed to be relevant about the information system. It therefore simplifies some aspects which might be relevant in other contexts.

Another visualization of relationships between 3LGM² model elements is the matrix view. Figure 2.12 shows connected functions (columns) and application components (lines) expressing that the functions are supported by certain application components. The *patient administration system* supports three different functions, the *MDMS* supports two functions, and one function is supported by the paper-based patient data privacy form system. The matrix view also helps to identify incomplete parts of models. In Fig. 2.12, we can see that there are no functions modeled that are supported by the *financial accounting system*, the *human resources management system*, and the *material management system*, which are parts of the *ERPS*.

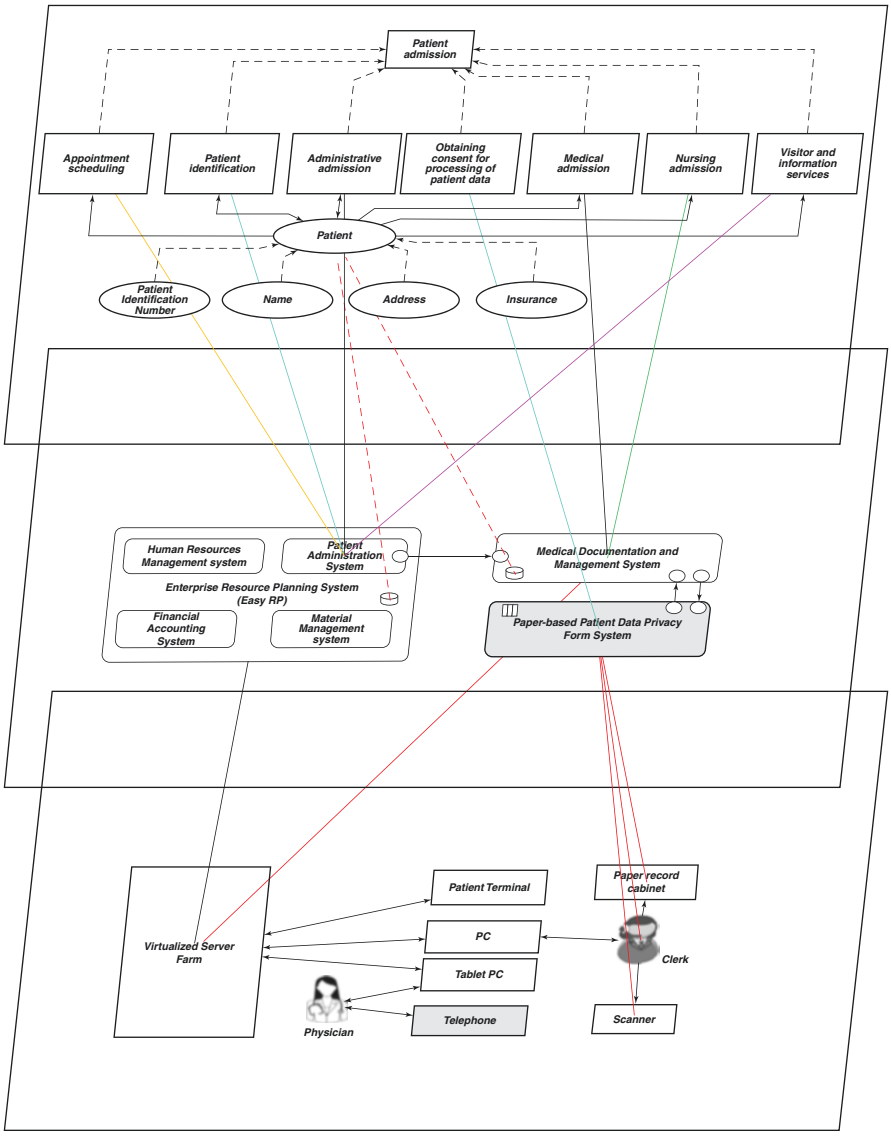


Fig. 2.11 3LGM^2 representation of domain layer, logical tool layer, and physical tool layer and their relationships of the function *patient admission* in a hospital

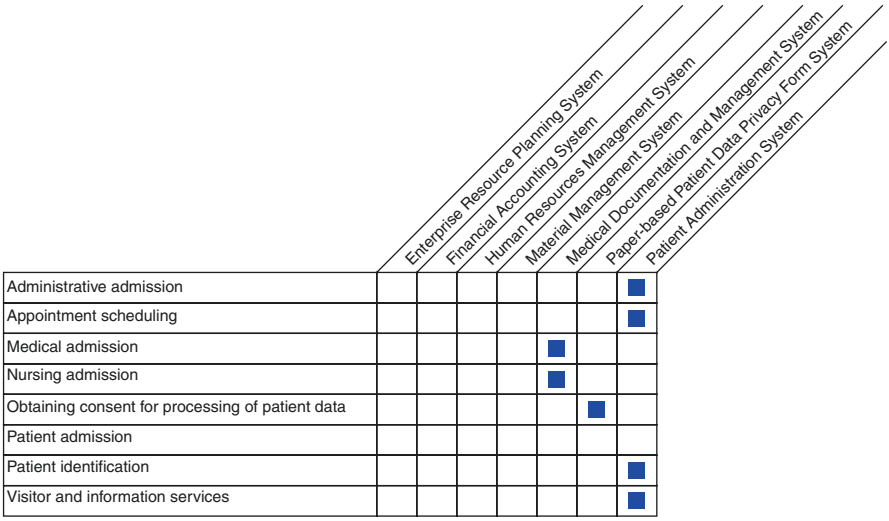


Fig. 2.12 The matrix visualizes the relations between functions and application components

The matrix view presented in Fig. 2.12 is an alternative representation of configuration lines between functions at the domain layer and application components at the logical tool layer (compare Fig. 2.11). Matrix views are also available for visualizing relations between other pairs of connected 3LGM^2 classes.

2.16 Exercises

2.16.1 Data, Information, and Knowledge

Imagine that a physician is given the following information about his patient, Mr. Russo: "Diagnosis: hypertension. Last blood pressure measurement: 160/100 mmHg." Use this example to discuss the difference between "data," "information," and "knowledge"!

2.16.2 Systems and Subsystems

Look up some information on the nervous system of the human body. Then try to identify subsystems of the nervous system. In the same way, can you also describe subsystems of the system "hospital"?

2.16.3 Information Logistics

Imagine a situation in which a physician speaks with Mr. Russo at the patient's bedside. The physician looks up Mr. Russo's recent blood pressure measurement and ongoing medication, decides to increase the level of one medication, and explains this to Mr. Russo. Use this example to discuss the meaning of "information and knowledge logistics." What in this example indicates the right information, the right place, the right people, the right form, and the right decision? What could happen if an information system does not support high-quality information and knowledge logistics?

2.16.4 3LGM² Metamodel

Look at the 3LGM²[22] example in Sect. 2.15. Use this example to explain the meaning of the following elements: functions, entity types, application systems, non-computer-based application components, physical data processing system, and inter-layer relationships.

2.16.5 Interpreting 3LGM² Models

Look at the 3LGM² sample model in Sect. 2.15 and try to answer the following questions.

(a) Find examples of specialization or decomposition at the domain layer in Fig. 2.11.
(b) What is the meaning of the arrows pointing from *patient identification* to "patient" and from "patient" to *medical admission* in Fig. 2.11?
(c) What entity type that is stored in the paper-based patient data privacy form system should be added at the domain layer in Fig. 2.11?
(d) Why is the function *patient admission* not connected with any application system in Fig. 2.11? (Hint: Look at the graphical representation of the domain layer in Fig. 2.11 and remember the modeling rules from Sect. 2.14.5.)
(e) Which physical data processing systems are needed for the function "obtaining patient consent for the processing of data"?

References

1. World Health Organization (WHO) Health Promotion Glossary. WHO/HPR/HEP/98.1. 1998. https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/WHO-HPR-HEP-98.1. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
2. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (2000). IEEE-Std 1471-2000: recommended practice for architectural description of software-intensive systems. http://standards.ieee.org. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
3. Weill P, Ross JW. IT Governance. How top performers manage IT decision rights for superior results. Harvard: Harvard Business School Press; 2004. p. 34ff.

Chapter 3
Technological Perspective: Architecture, Integration, and Standards

3.1 Introduction

From the previous chapter, we already know that a health information system is the socio-technical subsystem of a health care setting which comprises all data, information, and knowledge processing as well as the associated human and technical actors in their respective data, information, and knowledge processing roles. In this chapter, we first look at what these information systems look like, i.e., we take the technological perspective and examine the architecture of information systems. This perspective is then complemented by the management perspective in Chap. 4.

Section 2.11 taught us that health information systems are constructs built from a variety of components. We will go through the three layers of information systems: the domain layer, the logical tool layer, and the physical tool layer. For each layer, we will explain, step by step, the layer's components and how they are to be assembled and integrated to achieve what users experience as the health information system. Although we keep the non-computer-based part in mind, we will focus on the computer-based part.

In Sect. 3.2, we start at the domain layer and discuss the kind of data that must be processed in health care settings before, in Sect. 3.3, we present the functions interpreting or updating these data. From Sect. 3.4, we describe the tools for data, information, and knowledge processing to be used in health care settings. Starting at the logical tool layer and its application components, we explain how interoperable application components can be integrated, i.e., connected to work together seamlessly (Fig. 3.1) and how various approaches for integration lead to different architectural styles. At Sect. 3.10, we start describing tools at the physical tool layer. Again, we are dealing with integration. But we must be aware that at the physical tool layer, physical data processing systems and the challenges of integration are different from those at the logical tool layer.

In this chapter, we will explain the more generic technological concepts for health information systems which, in principle, are valid for most life situations and

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8_3

Fig. 3.1 Health information systems constitute an essential part of providing good health care. Decisions are made by an interdisciplinary tumor board. (Courtesy of Karin Kaiser/MHH)

health care settings. However, in certain situations and settings, there are specific challenges and requirements leading to specific architectures for the respective health information systems. In Chap. 6, we will therefore discuss how information systems for certain life situations and in certain settings actually take up these challenges and fulfill these requirements.

After reading this chapter, you should be able to

- differentiate the most important entity types which are processed in health care,
- explain important information-processing functions of health care settings,
- name and describe types of application systems used in health care settings,
- explain typical architectural styles of health information systems and describe them by differentiating concepts and relationships at the domain layer and the logical tool layer,
- explain the different types of integrity, interoperability, and integration at the logical and physical tool layer,
- select suitable technologies and tools for achieving integration, and
- describe the available standards for different aspects of interoperability and select suitable standards for achieving specific types of integrity, interoperability, and integration.

For you as a reader, achieving these learning objectives is the prerequisite for being able to construct health information systems that are appropriate to people's life situations and that meet the stakeholders' needs. However, you must be aware

that these information systems will only be useful to people if they are systematically managed from the start and if their quality is systematically monitored. We will take a closer look at these aspects later on in Chaps. 4 and 5.

Please note that the terms highlighted in italics are terms from the glossary or represent functions or application system types (Sects. 3.3 and 3.4).

3.2 Domain Layer: Data to be Processed and Provided

We will now look at data that represent information and knowledge in both the health care sector and biomedical research. We need to be aware that data is not only stored and processed in one particular information system, but that it often also needs to be provided to or shared with the information system of another facility or setting. For example, data from health care should be provided for research so that medical progress is possible. And data from research should be provided for use in health care to apply new knowledge. This mutual relationship is often described with the concept of the "learning health care system," in which data from everyday medical care is used to gain new insights in medical research and the research results are constantly fed back into practical care (translation) and medical education.

We can distinguish data according to different aspects:

- personal vs. non-personal data,
- standardized vs. non-standardized data,
- data on particular entity types (compare Sect. 2.8).

These distinctions are useful because

- personal data require special security measures and are subject to certain restrictions on their processing,
- non-standardized data are more common in the health care sector but much more difficult to process and to be used by machines than standardized data, and
- data on specific entity types require specific application systems and algorithms for processing.

After this section, you will understand what kinds of data are processed in and provided by most of the health care settings and in biomedical research.

3.2.1 Personal vs. Non-personal Data

According to the European General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) "... 'personal data' means any information relating to an identified or identifiable natural person" [1]. Data on health and illness are mostly created as personal data. For example, a 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG), data on physical/mental well-being and weight, the results of an echocardiography, or the activity data for a particular

person like Mr. Russo (Sect. 1.4) are personal data. Individuals' health data belong to the most sensitive personal data on humans.

By cumulating data, the relation to a single identifiable person can be reduced. Whether this really turns personal data into non-personal data, however, depends on the information represented. Look, for example, at the German city of Leipzig with around 500,000 inhabitants. Data describing that there are 50,000 people with elevated body temperature in Leipzig in December would certainly not be personal data. On the other hand, if there is a certain rare disease occurring only once among 1,000,000 people, and there is a record with data on a citizen of Leipzig suffering from this rare disease, then this is personal data, even if the data do not include a name, birthday, or other identifier. This is similarly true for human genetic data. Since the genetic code is individual for each person, such data must always be considered personal data.

Personal health data must only be accessible to those persons the individual has authorized before. A health information system must guarantee this requirement of personal data privacy. Likewise, the health information system must ensure data security and data safety of personal health data. While data security ensures availability, confidentiality, integrity, and protection from unauthorized access, data safety concerns protecting personal data against loss.

Personal data on certain persons may only be processed by other persons or facilities if the person expressly consents to having their data processed. If the data are to be processed for another purpose at a later time, the person must give their consent again. In medicine, for example, this means that health data collected from a patient during treatment at a particular health care facility may only be transferred to another health care or research facility with the patient's consent. Thus, Mr. Russo must also first give his explicit and informed consent for his data to be used in the scientific study to investigate the effect of close-knit home monitoring on rehospitalization in patients with heart failure. This also applies to pseudonymized health data, i.e., data in which the directly identifying data on the person, for example, the name or a patient number, have been replaced by a number that cannot be directly assigned to a person.

National legislation may allow for different levels of consent. For example, it may be a requirement that individuals must give permission for their data to be used individually for each research project. However, it may also be possible for individuals to give permission for the use of their data for a broader research topic or for research in general (often called "broad consent"). It is important, therefore, to know exactly what options are available in your country.

The handling of personal data in the European Union is comprehensively regulated by the GDPR [1].

Not only personal data but also the processing of non-personal data may be subject to restrictions. For example, if the data are research data obtained by a scientist in the course of experiments at great expense, then this scientist has intellectual property (IP) rights. Such data may only be used if this scientist agrees to its use.

3.2.2 Standardized vs. Non-standardized Data

When a physician, for example Mr. Russo's cardiologist, documents the medical treatment, the data used to describe the treatment, for example in the discharge letter, may be recorded as continuous narrative text without further structuring. We refer to such free text as non-standardized data. With free text, a situation can be described in detail and exactly using full linguistic expressiveness—if there is enough time. The disadvantage of such non-standardized data is, however, that the recorded data are hardly comparable, their completeness cannot be checked, and further processing, especially interpreting its semantics by a machine, is very difficult. However, there are promising approaches from artificial intelligence to use natural language processing (NLP) to tag free texts with terminologies (e.g., Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine Clinical Terms (SNOMED CT)) in such a way that further processing is possible. For example, the SNOMED CT code 414024009 may be used to tag the discharge letter describing Mr. Russo's coronary artery disorder. The other two problems, however, cannot be solved with this approach.

If, prior to documentation, the entity types for which data are to be recorded, the properties (attributes) of the objects of these entity types that are to be documented, and the exact value set of these attributes are defined, then we speak of a *standardized documentation* or of standardized data (example in Fig. 3.2). In the case of standardized documentation, it is easy to see—and to validate by a machine—whether all the desired data have been captured and the data from different sources can be easily compared. Further processing by machine is also well-prepared. To support standardized documentation, certain terminologies exist and can be used. Depending on the purpose of the documentation, these may be terminologies such as the SNOMED CT mentioned above or classifications such as the International

Shoulder pain and Disability Index (SPADI)

Pain scale

How severe is your pain?

Circle the number that best describes your pain where: 0 = no pain and 10 = the worst pain imaginable.

At its worst?	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
When lying on the involved side?	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Reaching for something on high shelf?	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Touching the back of your neck?	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Pushing with the involved arm?	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

Fig. 3.2 Excerpt from the English version of the Shoulder Pain and Disability Index; a standardized questionnaire for assessing shoulder function [2]

Classification of Diseases (ICD) or the nursing diagnosis classification of the North American Nursing Diagnosis Association (NANDA) International. NANDA may be used to assign the aforementioned case of Mr. Russo to the class 00146, for example, as Mr. Russo still suffers considerable anxiety from his heart problems. Thus, cases assigned to certain classes can be counted and statistically analyzed.

As standardized data, in contrast to free text data, have a certain structure, they are often also called structured data. Accordingly, free text is often referred to as unstructured data.

3.2.3 Entity Types

In health information systems, data on the following entity types are particularly important:

- entity types about individuals,
- entity types about patients' diseases and their treatment,
- entity types about organizing health care,
- entity types about knowledge.

In the previous two sections, we saw the difference between personal and non-personal data and between standardized and non-standardized data. Please note that a lot of data describing individuals are personal data. However, this is not always true. For example, diagnoses without reference to a specific person are non-personal. There are also differences in terms of standardization for data describing individuals. For example, findings can be standardized or non-standardized.

3.2.3.1 Entity Types About Individuals

The following entity types describe individuals. They are listed in alphabetical order.

Entity type	Description
Health care professional	Health care professionals are persons who treat, according to their specialization (e.g., nephrology or pediatrics), patients with certain leading diagnoses. Examples of health care professionals include physicians and nurses
Human resource	Human resources are persons working in health care facilities, i.e., health care professionals, nurses, administrative staff members, and IT staff members
Informal caregiver	Informal caregivers are persons who are not trained health care professionals but who care for a patient, for example, a relative or close friend
Patient	Patients are persons who are the subject of health care. Information about a patient includes the patient identification number (PIN) and—in transinstitutional information systems—the transinstitutional PIN
Person	Persons are individuals who are dealt with in a certain health information system. This includes individuals who are taking care of their own health in any way or who are subjects of health care at a health care facility. Persons may also be health care professionals, informal caregivers, or participants in clinical trials

In health information systems, it is crucial to be able to identify persons unambiguously in order to avoid mix-ups. Each person must be assigned a unique patient identification number (PIN). This PIN should be valid and unchangeable for a lifetime (i.e., the PIN should not be based on changeable personal attributes such as the name). The PIN is the main prerequisite for being able to merge all of a person's health-related information. Before a PIN can be assigned, the person must be correctly identified (3.3.2.1).

3.2.3.2 Entity Types About Patients' Diseases and Their Treatment

If persons are ill and are the subject of care, we call them patients. Certain data on findings and about diseases of the patients and their therapies is required for health care.

Entity type	Description
Diagnosis	Diagnoses are the identified cause or nature of patients' diseases or medical conditions
Discharge summary	Discharge summaries briefly summarize diagnoses, treatment, and recommendations from the discharging health care facility. The discharge summary is necessary for the receiving health care facilities in order to be able to provide further treatment
Finding	Findings summarize the results of diagnostic procedures for patients such as lab and X-ray examinations. Laboratory findings may consist of the measured values of clinical chemical parameters. But they may also contain complex genetic data from sequencing, also called "omics" data. Each type of data requires specialized software to present these data to medical personnel in such a way that they can interpret them well for diagnostic purposes
Health record	Health records are descriptions about a person's past and present health conditions, for example, disease history, systems review, social history, past medical history, family history, or medication. The health record is necessary for health care professionals in order to make informed clinical decisions
Image	Images are rasterized representations of macro- or microscopic entities or processes within biological systems, generated by using different modalities (e.g., computed tomography, histologic slices, X-ray images) and used for diagnosis, *prevention*, therapy, and rehabilitation
Informed consent	Informed consent is a patient's consent to the proposed treatment
Medical history	Medical histories comprise all information collected for a patient which is needed as a basis for *medical care planning*. The documented medical history is the result of medical history taking between the health care professional and the patient
Medical procedure	Medical procedures are procedures performed by physicians for patients, for example, X-ray examinations or operations
Nursing history	Nursing histories comprise all information collected for a patient which is needed as a basis for *nursing care planning*. The documented nursing history is the result of the admission interview between the nurse and the patient
Nursing procedure	Nursing procedures are procedures performed by nurses for patients, for example, taking blood or taking the temperature

Entity type	Description
Order	Orders are requests made by health care professionals for diagnostic, therapeutic, or drug services, for example, laboratory orders or radiological orders. Orders are directed to health care facilities and other health care professionals
Patient record	Health care facilities have records for their patients, collecting data and documents related to health care in this facility. This part of the patient's health record is called the patient record. Persons thus have multiple patient records if they have been a patient in more than one health care facility. Patient records are those parts of health records which are related to health care in a certain health care facility
Patient record archive	Entities of the entity type "patient record archive" describe how and where the patient record can be found
Procedure	Procedures are "activities performed in the provision of health care (includes medical history taking, physical examination, diagnostic and therapeutic interventions, training and education, and counseling)" [3]
Sample	Samples are specimens taken from a patient or another person, for example, a blood sample or a urine sample
Self-diagnosis	A self-diagnosis is a diagnosis made by an individual for his or her own condition rather than by a health care professional
Self-gathered symptoms	Self-gathered symptoms are signs or supposed signs of a disease that have been noticed during observation of one's own body

3.2.3.3 Entity Types About Managing Health Care

Health care takes place at different places. Further data is needed to organize this care.

Entity type	Description
Appointment	Appointments determine what persons have to be at a certain place at a given time. Examples are appointments for *patient admission*, examination, or surgery
Bed	In health care facilities with inpatient care (e.g., hospitals and rehabilitation centers), beds must be managed according to their occupation
Case	The cases mostly comprise a patient's stay in a hospital from *patient admission* to patient discharge or several outpatient treatments related to one disease. Information about a case includes the case identification number (CIN)
Cost unit	Cost units are organizational units of health care facilities responsible for bearing the costs or a part of the costs for the services to be provided for a patient
Drug	Drugs are substances administered to a certain patient for treatment, diagnosis, *prevention*, or rehabilitation
Food	A certain food must be provided according to different nutritional needs of patients, for example, normal diet and light diet food
Material	Materials such as medical strips, bandages, or needles are needed for *patient care*

Entity type	Description
Means of transport	Patients may have to be transported. Certain means of transport may be, for example, stretchers, ambulances, or flying ambulances
Medical device	Medical devices are technical or mechanical devices used for diagnostics and treatment. Software supporting diagnostics and treatment may also be considered medical devices. Medical devices are subject to strict legal regulations (medical device regulation (MDR))
Patient transport	Certain patient transports describe how and to what place a certain patient has been or must be transported
Transfer	Certain transfers describe the transfer of a certain patient, for example, by naming the referring physician or reasons for referring
Room	Rooms in the building of any health care setting (e.g., operating room, physician's office, waiting room, or bedroom in patient's home). Rooms have to be managed as a resource for *patient care*
Service	Health care facilities may provide non-medical services to their patients (e.g., internet access, transportation service)

3.2.3.4 Entity Types About Knowledge

It is not only information about patients that health care professionals need for care. Medical and nursing knowledge is also required.

Entity type	Description
Available medical and nursing knowledge	Available medical and nursing knowledge is medical and nursing knowledge that is available in a wide variety of knowledge sources and can basically be acquired. Some available medical and nursing knowledge is evidence-based knowledge that is confirmed, for example, through clinical trials. Other available knowledge is experiential knowledge from health care professionals or from patients
Classification	Classifications are sets of classes summarizing concepts not to be distinguished during analysis. In particular, there are classifications of diagnoses and classifications of procedures. A classification of diagnoses (e.g., ICD-11 or NANDA) consists of diagnosis classes. A classification of medical procedures (e.g., International Classification of Health Interventions (ICHI)) consists of procedure classes
Clinical pathway	Clinical pathways are evidence-based approaches describing which procedures are to be performed for a specific group of patients when and by whom
Clinical trial	A clinical trial is a research study testing a new treatment, medication, or medical device on patients. Results obtained in a trial may be used for care, and data recorded during care are necessary input for trials
Nomenclature	Nomenclatures (e.g., SNOMED CT) provide terms with codes that can be used to tag (or index) objects in medicine and health care. Objects may be, for example, cases, patients, or documents

Entity type	Description
Medical and nursing knowledge	Medical and nursing knowledge comprises knowledge of various medical and nursing specialties, for example, knowledge about diseases, symptoms, side effects, treatments, and health risks. Knowledge is stored in physicians' and nurses' heads as well as in various media such as books, journals, guidelines, webpages, or databases. A very important source of medical and nursing knowledge is MEDLINE, a bibliographic database of medical publications. It takes a lot of effort to select and acquire the knowledge that a person needs for a specific task from the amount of available knowledge. We therefore want to distinguish available and selected knowledge. Furthermore, it must be taken into account that some knowledge is not directly available, for example, in the form of books and journals, but only in the form of references to such sources
Acquired personal medical and nursing knowledge	Acquired personal medical and nursing knowledge is medical and nursing knowledge that has been selected and acquired by a person according to his or her own needs in order to make decisions regarding his or her own health or the health of others. Here, too, some knowledge is not directly available but only in the form of references to the sources of the knowledge

3.3 Domain Layer: Functions to Be Supported

In the last section, we introduced the data typical for health care settings and described data by entity types. Now we will explain where and in what contexts data on these entity types are processed in health care settings. As explained in Sect. 2.8, we use information-processing functions—or short: functions—to group classes of information-processing activities.

You will remember that functions use input data on certain entity types. The used data is updated, which often results in data on other entity types. In this section, we will present a selection of functions typical for health care settings and will explain which entity types are used and which are updated. However, we will not (yet) consider how they are typically supported by different data, information, and knowledge processing tools. This will be done in Sect. 3.4 and the following sections.

In this section, you will learn about the most important functions to be performed by patients, informal caregivers, health care professionals, and management and administrative staff in health care settings. You will also learn about data that are used or updated by these functions.

To illustrate which entity types a particular function uses and which it updates, we will use diagrams corresponding to those we also used in Sect. 2.14.1. Please read there again what the symbols mean.

3.3.1 Functions to Be Performed by Patients and Informal Caregivers

In Sect. 1.2, we looked at the life situations in which people have to deal with health. Initially, such life situations take place in the home setting and require specific action by the individuals and patients concerned. Thus, in our example from Sect. 1.4, Mrs. And Mr. Russo have to cope with their lives despite Mrs. Russo having broken her leg in the bathroom and Mr. Russo having a heart condition. To do so, they must contact with their general practitioner (GP) and with specialists to obtain various information. Their daughters must also participate in the care of their parents. In this context, the daughters are called informal caregivers, just like other relatives or friends who participate in the care of the Russos. In Sects. 1.3.1 and 1.3.3, we had already noted what patients and informal caregivers are particularly concerned about in this context.

In this section, we will now describe the information-processing tasks that patients and informal caregivers have to perform and what entity types are needed. Even though we introduced the term "function" in Sect. 2.8 in the context of health care professionals, it is very well-suited to also describe the information-processing tasks of non-professionals. The corresponding functions include but are not limited to (Fig. 3.4):

- *medical knowledge management,*
- *self-diagnostics,*
- *self-treatment,*
- *arrange appointments,*
- *physician's orders filling,*
- *prevention.*

3.3.1.1 Medical Knowledge Management by Non-professionals

Patients and informal caregivers need medical and nursing knowledge, for example, about specific health conditions and their treatment, about diseases, symptoms, side effects, and about healthy lifestyles and health risks. *Medical knowledge management* by non-professionals as an information-processing function includes gathering such knowledge by consulting health care professionals as well as peers such as fellow patients, relatives, and friends (Fig. 3.3). The corresponding knowledge is gathered in the form of brochures, information material on various media, or references to corresponding sources and media. Patients and informal caregivers select units of knowledge and references to knowledge which they consider helpful.

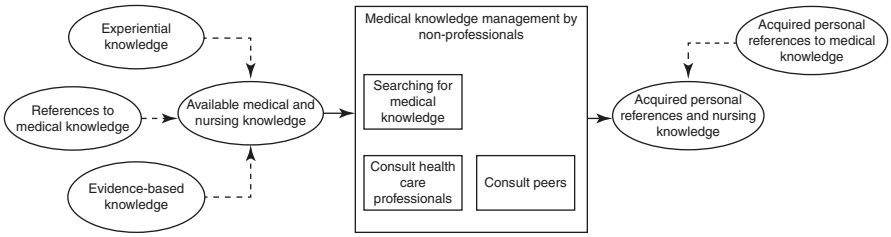


Fig. 3.3 *Medical knowledge management* by non-professionals (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

As a result of *medical knowledge management*, patients and informal caregivers will have selected personal knowledge at hand–or in their mind. They must then organize this knowledge according to its perceived importance and relevance.

3.3.1.2 Self-Diagnostics

Individuals who feel ill or who are living a health-conscious lifestyle will carefully monitor and assess their own health conditions or the conditions of household members. By using the resulting self-gathered symptoms and acquired personal medical and nursing knowledge, they may try to identify their disease. This function, *self-diagnostics*, results in a self-diagnosis, which later may lead to *self-treatment*. This is illustrated in Fig. 3.4.

For monitoring, individuals may use health diaries and personal digital devices, for example, smartphone applications that may provide automatic monitoring of symptoms and conditions.

3.3.1.3 Self-Treatment

Self-treatment usually means treating one's own disease without direct medical supervision or intervention and relies on selected personal knowledge. We use this term here to indicate patient actions to treat their disease by themselves, for example, at home. Such *self-treatment* may be based on self-diagnoses or on diagnoses resulting from the execution of diagnostic procedures by health care professionals and filling the respective orders.

Self-treatment includes physical exercise, managing prescribed medication and self-medication, and using digital health applications (DiGAs) to support mental health, for example.

Self-treatment may also include *prevention*, which is better than cure. Many diseases result from unhealthy lifestyles and behavior. A change in behavior can therefore both prevent and, in many cases, make a significant contribution to curing

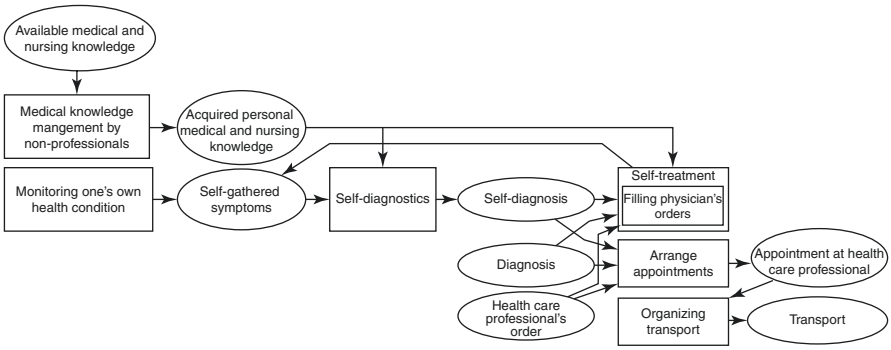


Fig. 3.4 Summary of functions to be performed by patients and informal caregivers (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

diseases. *Prevention* through healthy behavior is an important contribution to one's own health, which can be done very well in one's own responsibility, especially in the home environment. *Prevention* includes using guidelines, reporting outcomes in diaries, and organizing appointments for training and advice as well as for transport to or from a health care facility providing support.

3.3.1.4 Arrange Appointments

Either because of a self-made diagnosis or on the basis of a physician's diagnosis and order, it may become necessary to visit a certain health care facility. This could be, for example, an initial consultation with the family physician, a referral to the radiologist for a radiological examination, or a visit to a physiotherapist. In any case, it is usually necessary to arrange an appointment beforehand. This can be very demanding for the patient if several facilities have to be contacted in order to obtain a timely appointment. Patients may use phones, physicians' websites, or even specialized apps for this function.

3.3.1.5 Filling Physician's Orders

A visit to a physician usually involves the physician recommending that the patient take certain measures. For example, they may propose that the patient see a specialist, receive a specific physiotherapeutic treatment, take a set of medicines in a specific order, or take preventive measures by changing unhealthy behavior. It is often a challenge for the patient to both remember these orders and organize their implementation. Compliance with the measures prescribed or recommended by a physician or therapist is referred to as adherence.

3.3.2 Functions to Be Performed by Health care Professionals and Other Staff in Health care Facilities

3.3.2.1 Patient Care

Patient care in a facility begins with the patients' admission and ends with their discharge and any necessary transfer to another facility. During the patients' stay at the facility, decisions must be made about the diagnostics and therapy to be executed, and appropriate procedures must be ordered. The data generated during treatment must be coded so that it can be further processed.

Patient Admission

The prerequisite for the treatment of a sick person by a health care professional in a health care facility is the admission of the person to that facility. *Patient admission* (short: admission) aims at recording and distributing the patient demographic and insurance data as well as data on the medical and nursing history (Sect. 3.2.3.2). In addition, each patient must be identified correctly and a unique patient and *case identification number* (CIN) must be assigned.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 2.4 in Sect. 2.14.1):

Appointment Scheduling

The health care facility must schedule an appointment for the patient's visit. Appointments must also be made in connection with *order entry* for diagnostic services in a radiology department, for example.

In addition, unplanned *patient admissions* must be possible (e.g., in case of emergencies).

Patient Identification

Before health care professionals treat a patient, they must be sure exactly who the person they are treating is. Patients will normally identify themselves or with the assistance of relatives through a health insurance card or identity card. Based on such documents, the health care professional or administrative staff of the respective health care facility assigns a unique PIN to the patient. A new PIN is assigned only if the patient is in the facility for the first time. If patients have already been in the facility, they must be identified as recurrent, and previously documented information must be made available (such as previous diagnoses and therapies). Hospitals, in particular, must be able to distinguish a patient's different cases or hospital stays. Therefore, in addition to the PIN, a *case identification number (CIN)* is usually assigned as part of *administrative admission*.

Merging all health-related data and documents of a particular patient can only succeed if all health care professionals and all health care facilities caring for the patient use the same PIN. If each facility assigns its own PIN to a patient, a tool is needed to map the different PINs of one patient to each other. Such an application system is called a *master patient index (MPI)* and will be discussed in Sect. 3.4.1. Some countries provide a single unique PIN for every citizen, for example, on the health insurance card.

Patient identification as a function therefore interprets the entity type "patient" by considering, for example, their name, birthday, and data from the ID card and updates the same entity type by updating the PIN.

Administrative Admission

Administrative admission starts following *patient identification*. It creates the so-called case, being the aggregation of several contacts clustered according to specific clinical and/or organizational purposes of the facility. In case of inpatient treatment, a case summarizes the stay at the facility from *patient admission* until discharge. Each case is uniquely identified by its CIN. Important administrative data, such as insurance data or details about booked services, patient's relatives, admitting physician, and transfer diagnoses, must be recorded. The patient is assigned to a certain area, for example, a ward and a bed. Some of the administrative data must be available to other functions through the help of certain organizational media (such as adhesive labels and smart cards). Administrative data form the backbone of information processing in a health care facility. In case of changes, patient data must be maintained and communicated. If the referring physician, for example, the GP, has communicated relevant information (e.g., previous laboratory findings), this information must be sent to the responsible physician in the admitting facility. In hospitals, *administrative admission* is usually done either in a central patient admission area by administrative staff or directly on the ward (e.g., during emergencies or on the weekend) by health care professionals. In medical offices, there is usually a reception desk where this function is performed.

Even in emergencies, *patient admission* is necessary. At the very least, *patient identification* must be performed in order to assign a proper PIN and CIN. In emergencies, a short version of *administrative admission* may be applicable. If the patient is unconscious and does not have an identity card, a dummy name may be recorded to provide PIN and CIN. If using PIN and CIN properly, there will be no problem to replace the dummy name by the correct name later on.

Medical Admission

At the first contact with the patient, the physician will carry out the *medical admission*. This typically comprises recording the patients' medical history (disease history, systems review, social history, past medical history, family history, medication). Some of this information may be collected from documents of the referring physician which are taken to the facility by the patients themselves.

As a result of *medical admission*, the admission diagnosis must be stated and coded using the mandatory classification, for example, ICD-11.

The medical history must be made available for other functions by including it with the patient's health record. However, some facilities only have access to patient-related documents and data that originated from the same facility, i.e., the facility's patient record.

Nursing Admission

Especially in the case of inpatient treatment in a hospital, nursing home, or rehabilitation center, the nurse in charge will proceed with the *nursing admission* at the ward. This typically comprises introducing the patient to the ward and recording the nursing history. Administrative data and the reason for hospitalization are already at the nurse's disposal. The nursing history contains information about the current diagnosis and therapy, orientation, communication ability, social contacts, nutrition, mobility, personal hygiene, and vital signs. Computer-based or department-specific, (semi-) standardized data entry forms may be available to collect the data. The collected data must be made available for the whole stay by including it in the patient's health record.

Visitor and Information Service

In any health care facility that provides inpatient care, administration must have a good overview of the recent bed occupation, i.e., about the patients' stay at the hospital. This is, for example, important for the clerks at the information desk, who must be able to inform relatives and visitors correctly, as well as for some general administration statistics.

Decision-Making, Planning, and Organization of Patient Treatment

The treatment of the patient requires the execution of a variety of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. Health care professionals must decide with the patient which procedures to execute based on available data and knowledge. Then these procedures must be carefully planned and initiated. This process is repeated each time new information and knowledge is available.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.5):

Decision-Making and Patient Information

Health care professionals must decide on the next steps to take, for example, certain diagnostic or therapeutic procedures. Depending on the complexity of a diagnostic or therapeutic decision, they should be able to consult internal or external experts

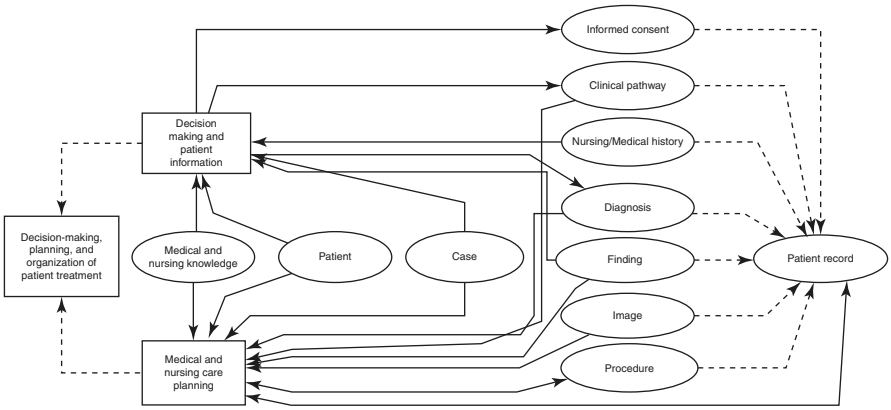


Fig. 3.5 Function *decision-making, planning, and organization of patient treatment*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

(e.g., in specialized hospitals) to obtain a second opinion. In this context, (tele)conferences may help. Health care professionals must be able to access all relevant patient data specific to a situation in addition to general medical and nursing knowledge (e.g., guidelines, recent study results and standards). Medication prescription may be supported by providing knowledge about adverse drug events. Decisions about clinical procedures must be documented. Patients must be involved in the decision-making process, the consequences of the planned diagnostic or therapeutic procedures should be explained, and their informed consent must be documented. Decision-making is a permanent function that is triggered by new information about the patient and the availability of new knowledge.

Medical and Nursing Care Planning

The next steps must be planned in detail. For each medical procedure (such as a radiological examination, an operation, or a chemotherapeutic treatment) as well as for each nursing procedure, the type, extent, duration, and responsible person and facility have to be determined. In nursing, care planning is documented in nursing care plans containing nursing problems, nursing goals, and planned nursing procedures. If necessary, other health care professionals are ordered to execute the planned procedures (e.g., a physician's medical bandaging orders to be executed by a nurse or home care service at the patients' home).

Care planning in cancer treatment is often performed by tumor board reviews. This means that a number of physicians who are experts in different specialties (disciplines) review and discuss the patient's medical condition and treatment options.

Order Entry

Diagnostic and therapeutic procedures must often be ordered at specialized service units (e.g., laboratory, radiology, or pathology). These units may be an internal part of the health care facility of the treating health care professional or may be an external institution. The units execute the ordered procedures and communicate the findings or results back to the ordering facility. In order to avoid mix-ups, all units and facilities involved must use the same PIN. This is especially challenging when the service units do not belong to the same facility.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.6):

Preparation of an Order

If the order is to examine the patient's tissue or fluid samples, the specimen must be unambiguously assigned to a patient and then submitted (e.g., blood sample). Depending on the available service spectrum offered by a service unit, which may be presented in the form of service catalogs, the health care professional selects the appropriate service on an order entry form. Patient identification data (name, PIN) are documented together with relevant information such as recent diagnoses, relevant questions, service ordered (e.g., lab test), and other comments (e.g., on special risks).

If a medication is ordered by a physician and computer-based tools for *order entry* are used, computerized decision support systems could alert the physician, for example, in case of medication errors when a medication is ordered to which the patient is allergic.

The order may only be initiated by authorized persons. The order must be transmitted quickly and correctly to the service unit or to the person who is to execute the

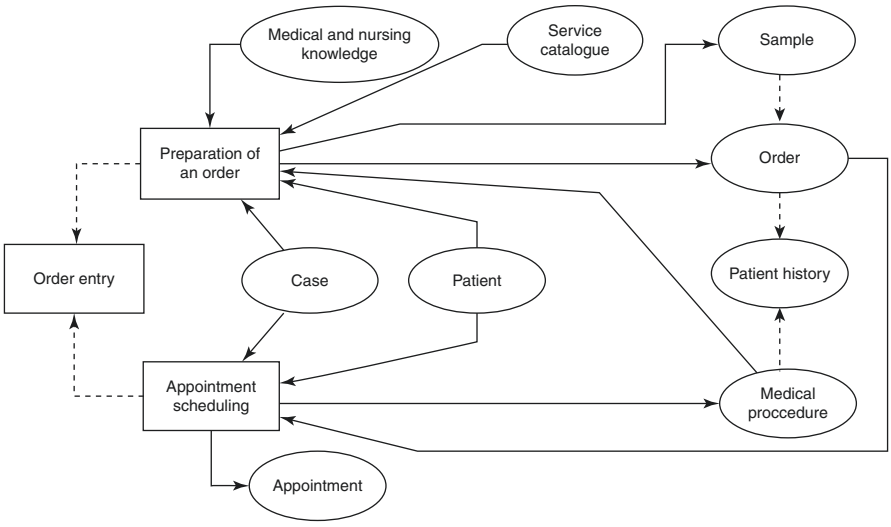


Fig. 3.6 Function "order entry," its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

order. If a specimen is transferred, it must be guaranteed that the order and the specimen can be linked to each other at the service unit. It should be possible for the ordering health care professional to modify orders that have already been transferred, if necessary.

Appointment Scheduling

The patient's appointments must be scheduled (e.g., in radiological units) depending on the type of order. During scheduling, the demands of all parties (e.g., ordering physician, service unit, patient, transport unit, public transport) must be fairly balanced. This can be particularly challenging in the context of outpatient care if, for example, a suitable radiologist must first be found near the patient's place of residence and possible examination dates must be determined. It can also be complicated to have the patient transported to the radiologist. Depending on the health care system, patients may have to handle these tasks themselves and it becomes their function (Sect. 3.3.1).

Execution of Diagnostic, Therapeutic, and Nursing Procedures

The planned diagnostic, therapeutic, or nursing procedures (such as operations, radiotherapy, radiological examinations, medication) must be executed. Adequate tools and resources (e.g., staff, room, equipment) for the execution of the necessary procedures have to be available. This must be managed according to the special needs of the respective facility and health care setting (Chap. 6).

It is important that changes in care planning that may be due to new findings are promptly communicated to all involved units, facilities, and persons, enabling them to adapt to the new situation. All clinically relevant patient data (such as vital signs, orders, results, decisions) must be recorded as completely, correctly, and quickly as necessary. This supports the coordination of patient treatment among all persons and facilities involved and provides the legal justification for the actions taken. In inpatient care, a lot of these data may be recorded, for example, on the ward. In outpatient care, however, with the health care professionals caring for the patient at home, much of the data must also be collected and documented at the patient's home.

As far as possible and whenever sensible, data and metadata should be recorded and represented in a standardized manner (compare 3.2.2) to allow for seamless care across providers, for data aggregation and statistics, for computerized decision support, and for data retrieval. It is important that data can be linked by PIN and CIN even when data originate from different areas (such as ward, service unit, outpatient unit, home). The health care professionals and their facility must usually fulfill a lot of different legal reporting (such as for epidemiological registers) and documentation requirements. The items to be documented depend partly on the documenting unit and the documenting health care professional group (such as documentation by physicians or nurses, in outpatient units, in operation rooms, or in patients' homes). Clinical information should also be available for other functions such as *financial accounting*, *controlling*, or *quality management*.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.7):

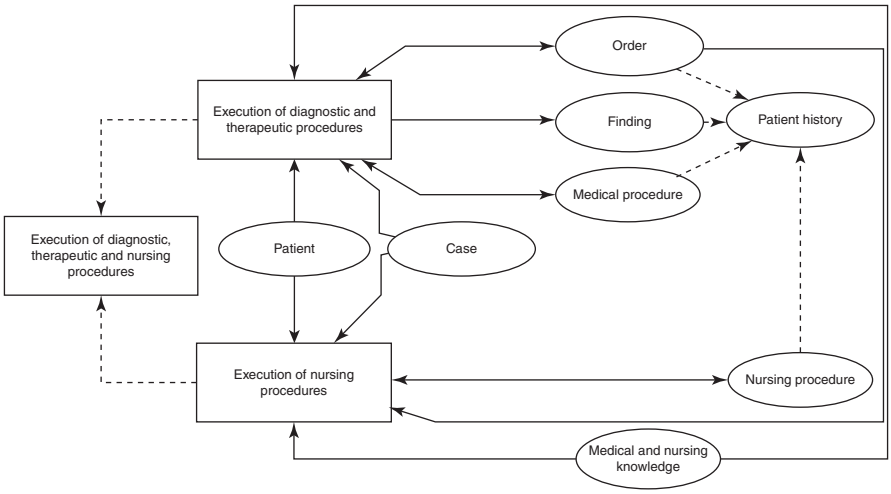


Fig. 3.7 Function *execution of diagnostic, therapeutic, and nursing procedures*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

Execution of Diagnostic and Therapeutic Procedures

The planned diagnostic and therapeutic procedures must be executed. All procedures must be documented. Findings and reports must be transmitted (as quickly as necessary) back to the ordering unit and presented to the responsible health care professional. They must be unambiguously assigned to the correct patient. The responsible physician should be informed about new results, and critical findings should be highlighted.

The function *execution of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures* can be specialized to:

- *execution of operations,*
- *execution of intensive care,*
- *execution of irradiation,*
- *execution of chemotherapy,*
- *execution of radiological examinations,*
- *execution of lab examinations,*
- *execution of prophylaxis and medication.*

Execution of Nursing Procedures

The planned nursing procedures (concerning medication, excretion, decubitus, hair and nail care, skin care, wound treatment, body washing, oral and dental care, nutrition and liquid balance, thrombosis) are executed. All *patient care*

procedures, their impact on the patient's health status, and changes to the care plan must be documented. The responsible physician must be informed of any facts relevant to the therapy.

Coding of Diagnoses and Procedures

The health care facility must be able to document and code all stated diagnoses and all executed medical procedures in a correct, complete, quick, and patient-oriented way. These data form the basis for billing, for reports, and for research. Diagnoses and medical procedures are also used for *controlling*. In addition, legal requirements stipulate that some of the data must be documented and communicated. This data is also important for medical research.

Diagnoses and medical procedures are recorded and coded in a standardized way (e.g., using the ICD11 for diagnoses codes [4]) and then processed. Diagnoses and medical procedures are at least partly derivable from clinical documentation. To support their documentation, adequate coding catalogs must be offered and maintained. Tools are needed that help health care professionals to quickly find the correct codes for the diagnoses and medical procedures.

The function *coding of diagnoses and procedures*, its decomposition in subfunctions, and the entity types to be interpreted and updated are summarized in Fig. 3.8.

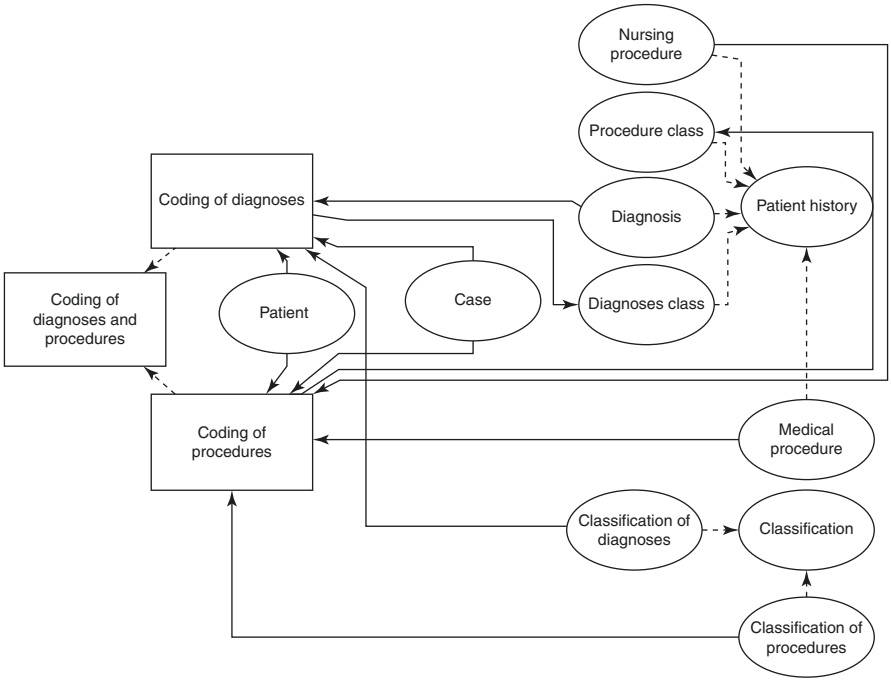


Fig. 3.8 Function *coding of diagnoses and procedures*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

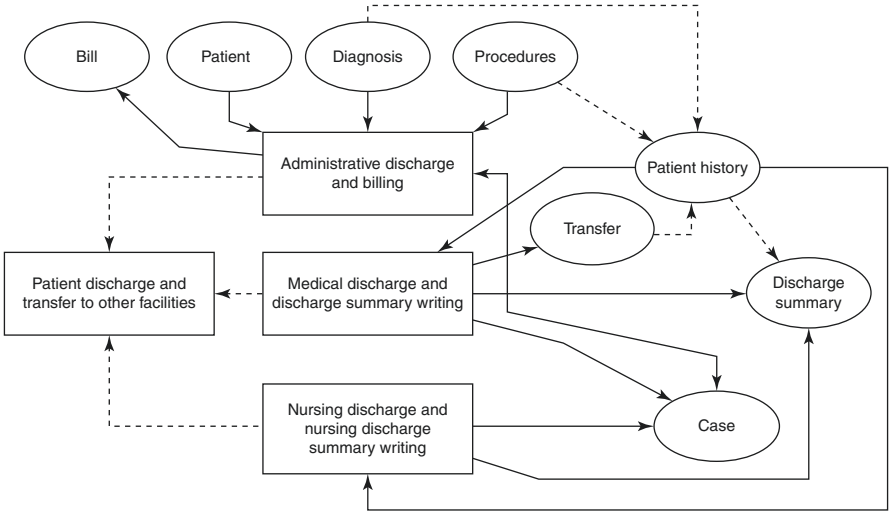


Fig. 3.9 Function *patient discharge and transfer to other facilities*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

Patient Discharge and Transfer to Other Facilities

In case of inpatient care in a health care facility after the patient's care has been completed, the patient is discharged and sometimes referred to other facilities (e.g., GPs or rehabilitation centers). *Patient discharge and transfer to other facilities* (short: discharge) covers *administrative, medical, and nursing discharge*.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.9):

Administrative Discharge and Billing

The process of administrative patient discharge initiates final billing and the fulfillment of legal reporting requirements (e.g., statistics on diagnoses and procedures). In recent years, diagnosis-related group (DRG) systems have been introduced for patient billing in most countries. That means that bills for patient treatment are no longer calculated based on daily rates but on the DRG in which a patient case was classified. Diagnoses, procedures, patient's age, and other criteria serve as an input for the calculation of a DRG.

Medical Discharge and Medical Discharge Summary Writing

Medical discharge entails the completion of the documentation and the writing of a discharge summary by the attending physician. The discharge summary includes the relevant diagnoses, important findings, therapeutic procedures, current patient state, and recommendations for further treatment. The hospital must be able to transmit this and other information (e.g., radiological images) to other facilities as

quickly as possible. To speed up this process, a short report (i.e., physician's discharge letter) is often immediately communicated to the next facility containing, for example, the diagnoses and therapeutic treatments. It is then later followed by a more detailed report.

Nursing Discharge and Nursing Discharge Summary Writing

Nursing discharge entails the completion of the documentation and the writing of a nursing discharge summary by the attending nurse. The nursing discharge summary comprises, for example, information about activity level, diet, and wound care.

3.3.2.2 Supply and Disposal Management, Scheduling, and Resource Allocation

The health care facility must offer sufficient and well-organized resources for *patient care*. This is true for wards (ward management), outpatient units (outpatient management), and service units (department management). Efficient process organization is extremely important, for example, in outpatient units or service units, and can be supported, for example, by providing working lists for individual staff members by issuing reminders about appointments or by visualizing actual process flow. The facility's information system must be able to support communication between all persons involved in *patient care*. This comprises synchronous (e.g., telephone) and asynchronous (e.g., blackboards, brochures, email) communication. Staff members must be able to be contacted within a prescribed period of time.

Supply and Disposal Management

Supply and disposal of materials, food, drugs, and so on must be guaranteed. All of a facility's departments should be able to order from up-to-date catalogs. The corresponding service units (stock, pharmacy, and kitchen) must be able to deliver correctly and on time.

Supply and disposal management can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.10):

- *Catering*
  According to their health status, patients have different nutritional needs. It must be ensured that the patients are provided with the right dietary food at the right time.
- *Material and medication management*
  Nurses and physicians must be able to anticipate shortages of material such as medical strips, bandages, or needles to order new material from a central supplier in time.

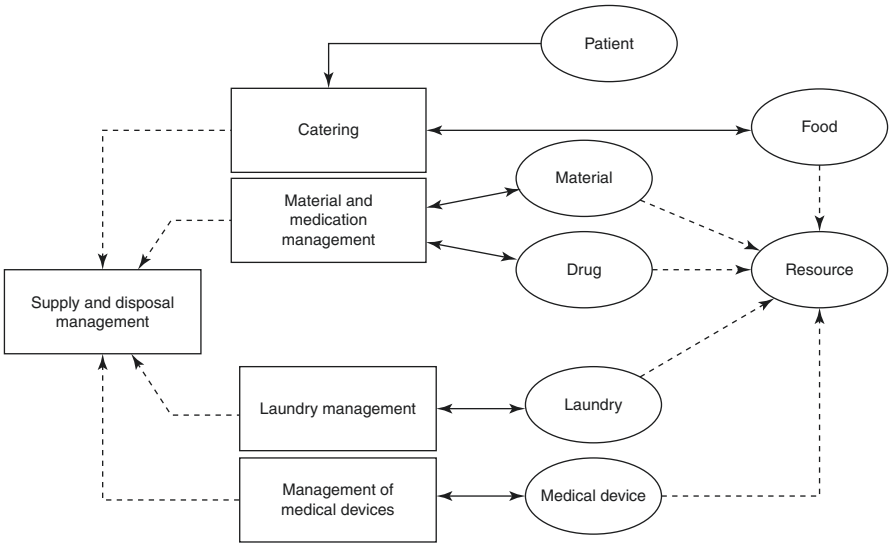


Fig. 3.10 Function *supply and disposal management*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

- *Laundry management*
  The hospital must permanently be supplied with linen, towels, sterile scrubs, surgical masks, etc.
- *Management of medical devices*
  In addition to other resources, medical devices must be registered and maintained according to legislation. Due maintenance must be organized, documented, and completed.

Scheduling and Resource Allocation

Various resources are needed for *patient care* in health care facilities. The function *scheduling and resource allocation* comprises staff planning, bed planning, room planning, and device planning. All resource planning activities must be coordinated. When procedures are scheduled, the demands of both the service unit and the ordering unit with regard to scheduling the appointment must be considered. Request, reservation, confirmation, notification, postponement, and cancellation must be supported. All involved staff members and patients should be informed about the appointments. Postponements and cancellations should be communicated to all involved persons in time.

This function can be decomposed into the functions *appointment scheduling*, *scheduling and resource planning with the medical service unit,* and *scheduling and resource planning with the patient transport service* (Fig. 3.11). *Appointment scheduling* was also listed as a subfunction of *patient admission*.

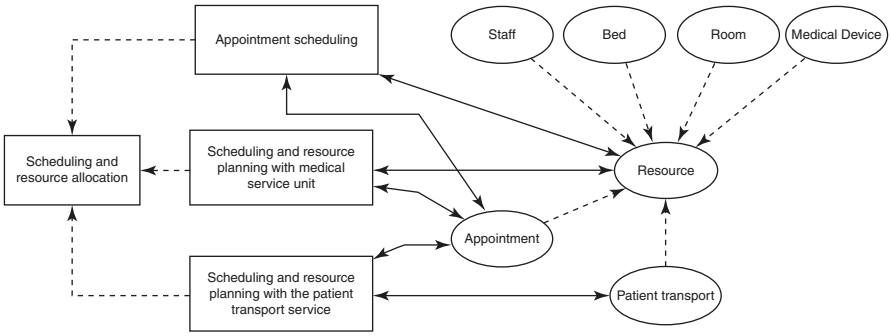


Fig. 3.11 Function *scheduling and resource allocation*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

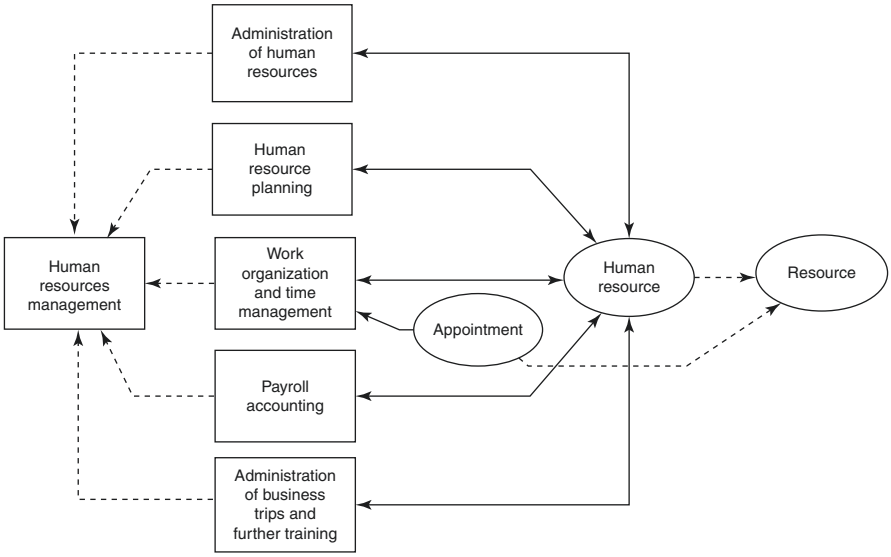


Fig. 3.12 Function *human resources management*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

Human Resources Management

This contains all tasks for the development and improvement of the productivity of staff. It comprises, for example, staff and position planning, the staff register, staff scheduling, and staff payroll.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.12):

- *administration of human resource master data,*
- *human resource planning,*

- *work organization and time management,*
- *payroll accounting,*
- *administration of business trips and further training.*

3.3.2.3 Administration of Health care Facilities

Administration of health care facilities supports the organization of *patient care* and guarantees the financial survival and the economic success of the hospital. Subfunctions are:

Patient Administration

Patient administration comprises the administrative tasks in a health care facility dealing more or less immediately with patients. Thus, it is an aggregation of the subfunctions

- *appointment scheduling,*
- *administrative admission,*
- *patient identification,*
- *visitor and information service,*
- *coding of diagnoses and procedures,*
- *administrative discharge and billing* (Fig. 3.13).

Archiving of Patient Information

Relevant data and documents containing patient information must be created, gathered, presented, and stored in such a way that they are efficiently retrievable during the whole process of patient treatment. These data and documents are primarily stored in patient records. A mixture of paper-based and computer-based patient records is still used today. Certain legal requirements usually must be considered.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.14):

- *Opening of a patient record*
  Administrative admission triggers the *opening of a patient record*. The patient record may be electronic or paper-based or a mixture of both. Standards for document filing formats must be established and used.
- *Administration and allocation of patient records*
  A paper-based archive must be able to manage patient records and make them available upon request within a defined time frame. The exact location of each record should be known (e.g., in which archive, on which shelf). Robot systems may store and gather paper-based records automatically. Lending and return of records (e.g., for patients coming for multiple visits) must be organized, while respecting different access rights that depend on the role of the health care professionals in the process of *patient care*.

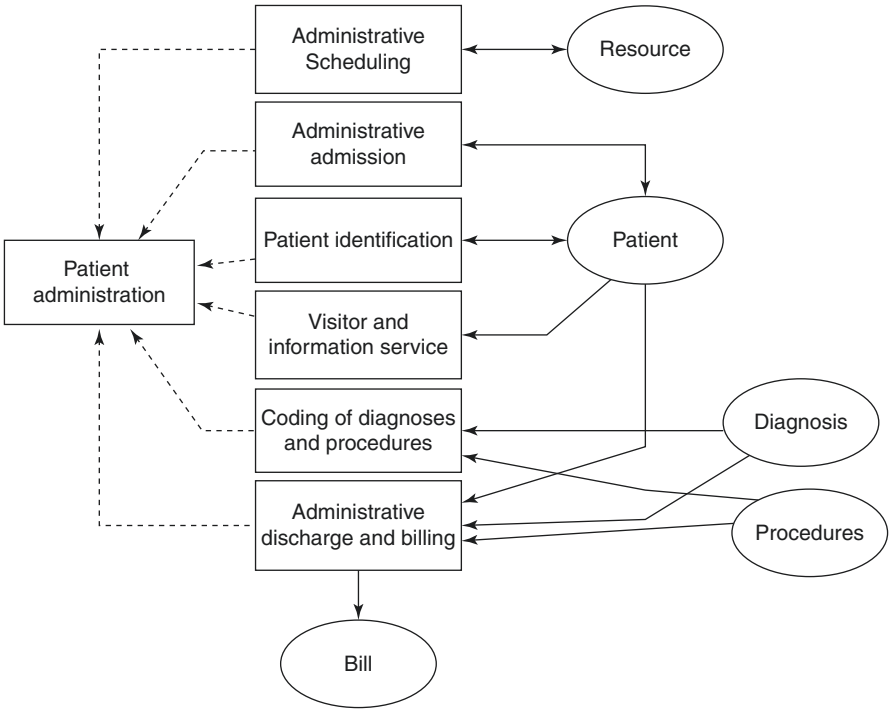


Fig. 3.13 Function *patient administration*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

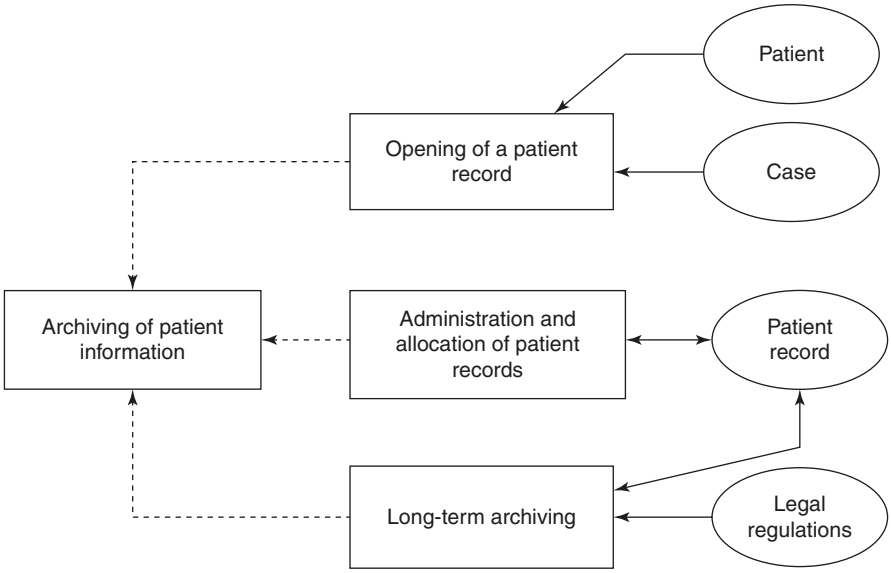


Fig. 3.14 Function *archiving of patient information*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

- *Long-term archiving*

  After discharge of the patient, patient records must be archived for a long time (e.g., for 10 or 30 years, depending on the legal regulations). The archive must offer enough space to allow the long-term storage of patient records. Their authenticity and correctness can be proven more easily, for example in case of legal action, if they are archived in accordance with legal regulations.

Quality Management

Quality management comprises all activities of a health care facility's administration to assure and continuously improve the quality of *patient care*. This includes setting goals, defining responsibilities, and establishing and monitoring the processes to realize these goals. This covers, for example, internal reporting containing quality indices. *Quality management* requires information about patients and treatments as well as knowledge about diagnostic and therapeutic standards.

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.15):

- *Internal quality management*

  Internal quality management assures a defined quality of all processes and outcomes of the hospital. An internal reporting system, which presents quality-related indicators, is also covered. Medical, nursing, and administrative guide-

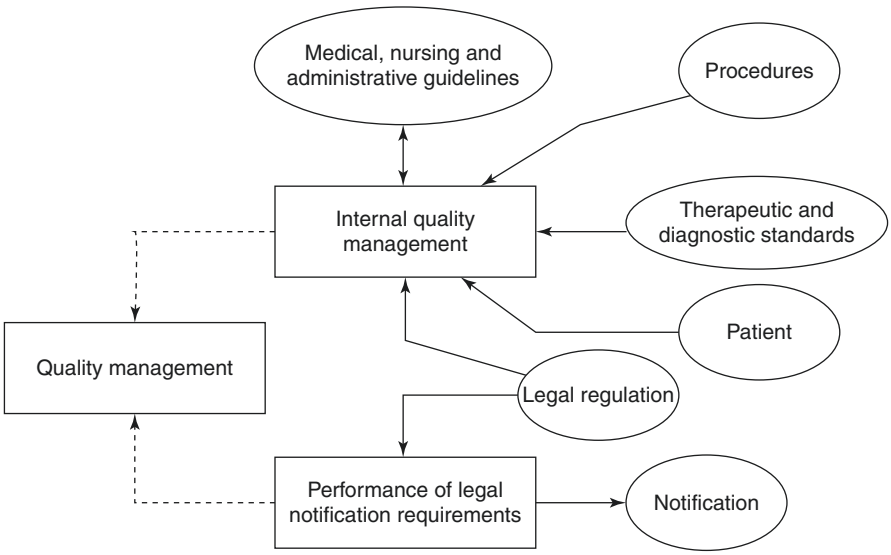


Fig. 3.15 Function *quality management*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

lines may be defined, stored, and presented. There exists a structured complaint management.

- *Performance of legal notification requirements*
  Legal notification requirements for quality assurance must be completed.

Cost Accounting

For controlling purposes, it is necessary to keep track of services, their costs, and who has received the services. *Cost accounting* usually investigates which costs incur (cost-type accounting), where costs incur (cost center accounting), and for what activities or services costs incur (cost unit accounting). According to the accounting purpose, the time period to be observed and the scope of the costs to be accounted have to be defined. The results of *cost accounting*, i.e., key performance indicators (KPI), serve as input for *controlling* (Figs. 3.16 and 3.17).

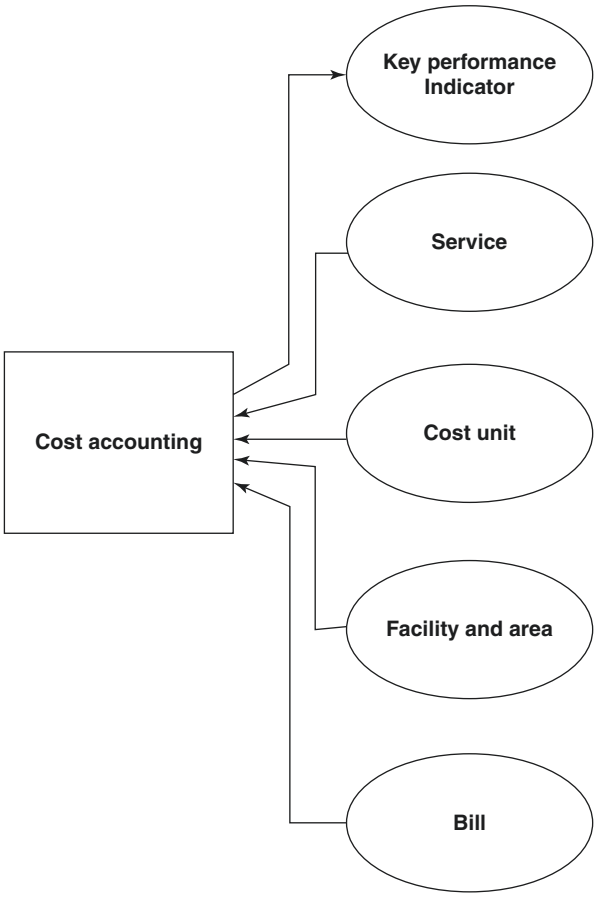


Fig. 3.16 Function *cost accounting*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

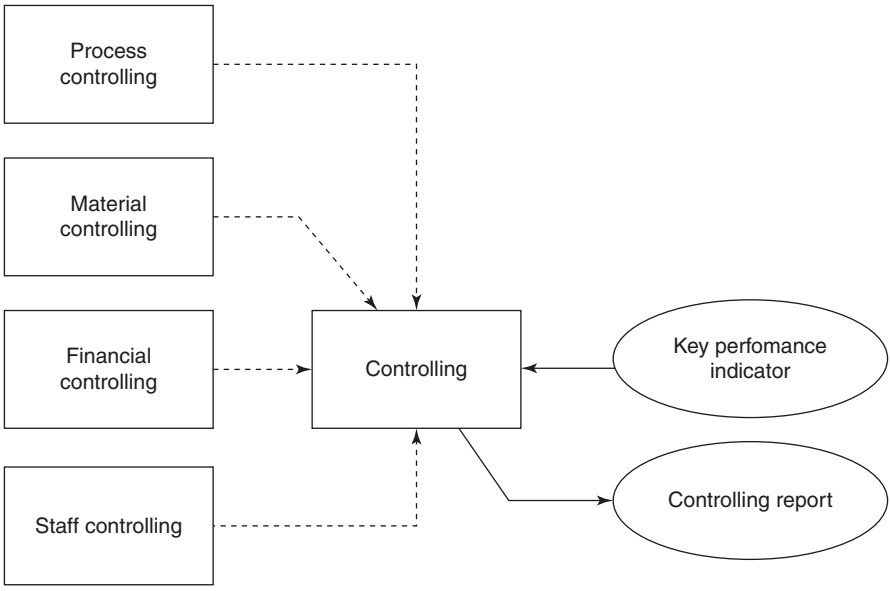


Fig. 3.17 Function *controlling*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

Controlling

The health care facility must be able to gather and aggregate data on its operation in order to control and optimize it. This covers, for example, *staff controlling*, *process controlling*, *material controlling*, and *financial controlling*. In hospitals, for example, the number of patient cases, the length of patients' stays in the hospital, and the case mix index, which is calculated from the patients' DRGs, are KPIs serving as input for controlling reports (Fig. 3.17).

Financial Accounting

All the facility's financial operations must be systematically recorded to meet legal requirements. *Financial accounting* comprises, for example, *debtor accounting*, *credit accounting*, and *asset accounting*. This type of accounting requires information from bills and creates new values for KPIs (Fig. 3.18). The health care facility must support general statistical analysis, for example, calculation and analysis of economic data.

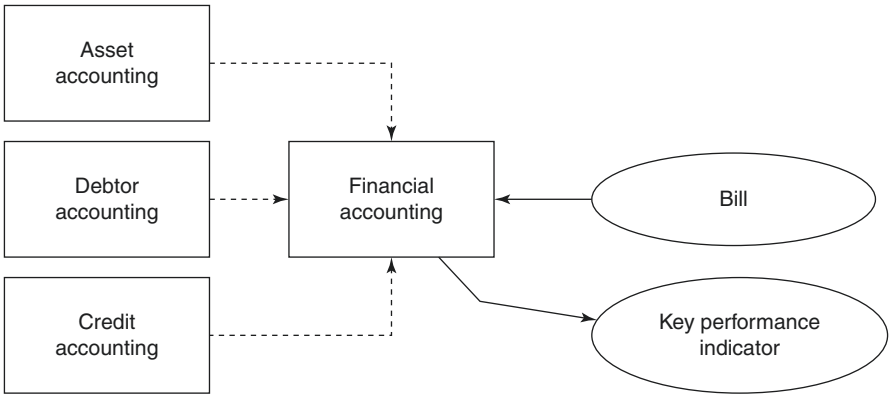
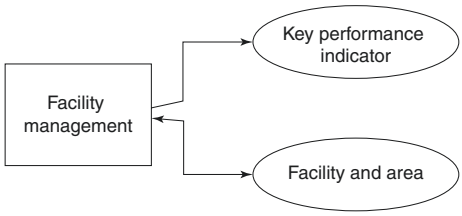


Fig. 3.18 Function *financial accounting*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

Fig. 3.19 Function *facility management* and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)



Facility Management

The management of buildings, areas, and utilities of the health care facility is usually subsumed by the term *facility management*. As this often also involves high costs, this management area also influences KPIs (Fig. 3.19).

Management of Information Systems[1]

Management of information systems plans the information system of an enterprise and its architecture, directs its establishment and its operation, and monitors its development and operation with respect to the planned objectives. Different management levels have different perceptions and interests.

[1] Now we have come full circle. Our book deals with information management and especially strategic information management. Since information systems are the subject of information management, and information systems are designed to support all necessary functions of an enterprise, they should support information management as well. For a more thorough explanation of strategic information management, refer to Sect. 4.3.

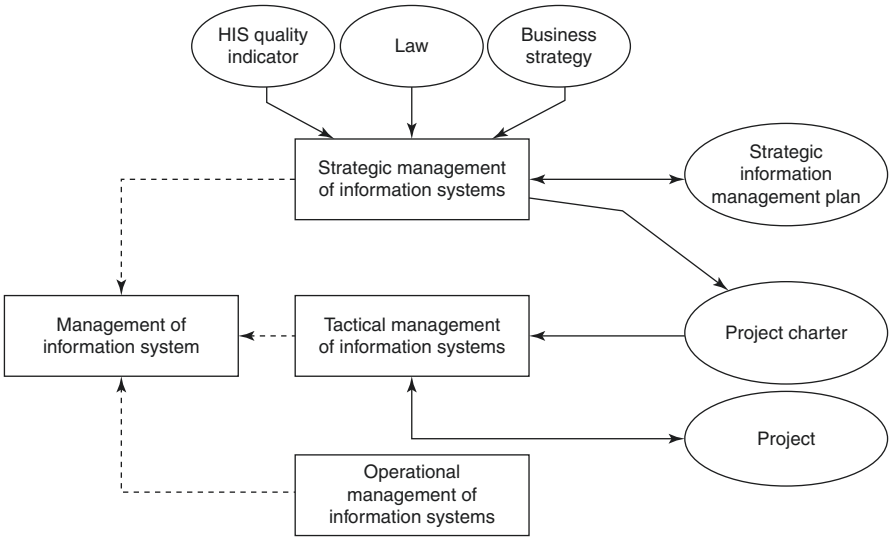


Fig. 3.20 Function *management of information systems*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

This function can be decomposed as follows (Fig. 3.20):

- *Strategic management of information systems*

  Strategic management of information systems deals with the enterprise's information processing as a whole and establishes strategies and principles for the evolution of the information system. An important result of strategic management activities is a *strategic information management plan* that is aligned with the hospital's business strategy. It includes the direction and strategy of information management and the architecture of the enterprise information system.
- *Tactical management of information systems*

  Tactical management of information systems deals with particular functions or application components that are introduced, removed, or changed. Usually, these activities are done in the form of *projects*. Such tactical information management projects are initiated by *strategic management of information systems*. Thus, *strategic management of information systems* is a vital necessity for *tactical management of information systems*. The result of tactical information management projects is the information system.
- *Operational management of information systems*

  Operational management of information systems is responsible for operating the components of the information system. It ensures its smooth operation in accordance with the strategic information management plan. Additionally, operational information management plans, directs, and monitors permanent *IT services* for the users of the information system.

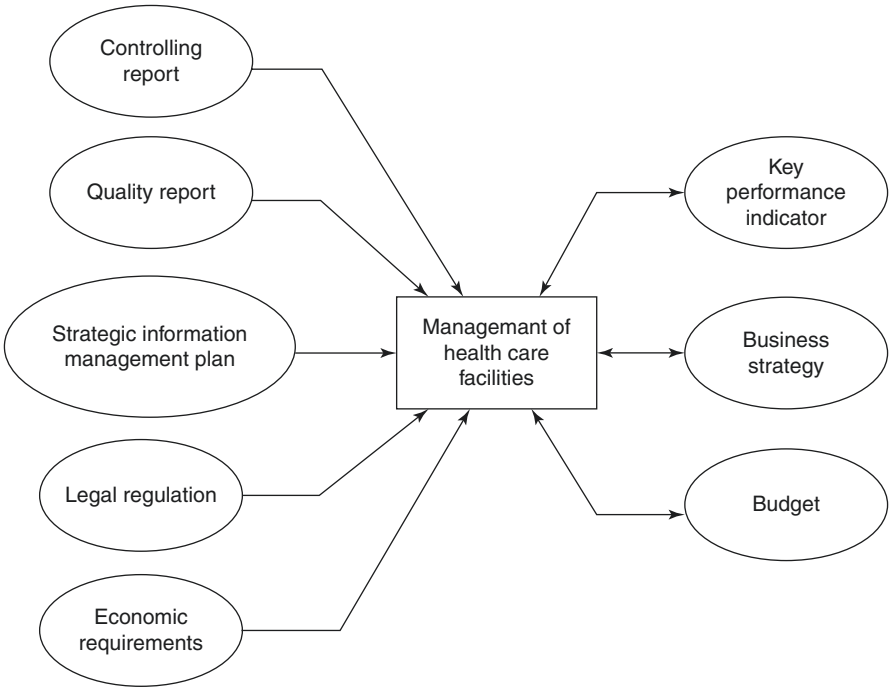


Fig. 3.21 Function *management of health care facilities*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types (for the legend refer to Sect. 2.14.1)

3.3.2.4 Management of Health care Facilities

Management of health care facilities decides on questions of fundamental importance for the health care facility's development (goals, strategic decisions, personnel decisions and decisions about budget, investments, or key treatments). *Management of health care facilities* must focus on high quality of *patient care*, taking into account economic as well as legal and other requirements. Information needed and produced is shown in Fig. 3.21.

3.3.2.5 Clinical Documentation: A Function?

It may be surprising that "documentation" is not listed as a function in the previous sections. In fact, clinical documentation, which comprises medical documentation and nursing documentation, is a time-consuming and often unpopular duty of health care professionals. Moreover, every function described so far requires a lot of documentation. The results of diagnostic procedures have to be written down, medical histories have to be documented, and so on. Documentation takes place every time a function is performed, new information is generated, and respective data are stored

somehow somewhere. Thus, every introduced function which updates an entity type is a documenting function. In fact, documentation is a part of all functions updating an entity type, even of those performed by patients.

3.4 Logical Tool Layer: Types of Application Systems in Health care Facilities

After having looked at data to be processed and at functions to be performed we now describe tools for data, information, and knowledge processing at the logical tool layer of information systems, i.e., the application components supporting these functions and storing and processing the data.

Health care facilities still have non-computer-based application components and use paper as a physical tool. For example, parts of clinical documentation while performing functions are occasionally still done with paper-based patient records. Thus, despite the growing portion of electronic documents, the "paperless hospital" still seems to be a remote ideal today. There might be a continuing need for some paper-based documents. Typical application components that are still paper-based comprise, for example, the patient chart, the patient record, and clinical text books and knowledge sources.

In spite of this still existing significance of non-computer-based information processing in health care, we will focus here on application systems, i.e., the computer-based application components.

In Sect. 3.3.2, we could see that many functions are commonly found in all health care facilities. Although they use different application systems to support the functions, there are typical application systems to support health care professionals in health care facilities. We take a closer look at the respective types in the following subsections. In Sect. 6.8, however, we will look at types of application components to support patients and informal caregivers.

We will sum up the characteristics of the application systems in tables enumerating the supported functions; please refer to Sect. 3.3 for their detailed descriptions. For every function, we also list typical features that the application system should offer. A feature is a functionality offered by the application system's software which directly contributes to the fulfillment of one or more functions (Sect. 2.9).

Please note that we refer to some of the application system types as "XYZ information system" (e.g., *laboratory information system*). Although this sounds contradictory to our definition of the term "information system," we did so in order to integrate the popular names and hope you will not be confused.

In this section, you will get to know the types of application systems that are used in health care. In later Sects. 3.5–3.9, we will explain step by step how and under which conditions the application systems described here can be assembled, i.e., integrated, in the information system. Finally, in Sect. 3.10, we will discuss the

physical data processing systems on which the application systems need to be installed. Finally, in Chap. 6, we will take a closer look at specialized application systems in specific health care settings.

3.4.1 Patient Administration Systems

Whether hospital, medical office, or rehabilitation center, a health care facility needs to administer patients. *Patient administration* comprises the functions from Sect. 3.3.2.3.1 as listed in Table 3.1.

Application systems supporting *patient administration* are referred to as *patient administration systems* or sometimes "patient management systems." They must provide correct, complete, and up-to-date administrative patient data for all other application components. In addition, all other application components must be able to transmit relevant administrative patient data (e.g., diagnoses) to the *patient administration system*. Therefore, the *patient administration system* can be regarded as the center of the administrative memory of the facility's information system.

Table 3.1 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *patient administration systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical application component features
Appointment scheduling	Provide means for scheduling patients' appointments Provide means for ordering transport services
Administrative admission	Provide forms for entering or updating patient administrative information (name, address, birthdate, relatives, admission diagnosis, etc.) Merge patient information from two records Provide means for ordering patient transfer within the facility Admit patients to the ward or outpatient unit For inpatient care: assign patients to rooms and beds Provide means for preparing facility-wide statistics
Patient identification	Retrieve patient information from database Generate a unique PIN and a CIN Administrate the transinstitutional PIN
Visitor and information service	Provide relatives with information on the location of a patient
Coding of diagnoses and procedures	Provide catalogs and other means for coding patients' diagnoses Provide catalogs and other means for coding patient-related procedures Provide means for verifying codings done in departments Provide forms for preparing a bill for the patient insurance
Administrative discharge and billing	Provide means for initiation of final billing for inpatients and outpatients Provide reminder for fulfilling of legal reporting requirements

During *patient admission*, *patient administration systems* must support the retrieval of patient data (e.g., by name or birthdate) to avoid duplicate and erroneous registration of patients. The resulting identification numbers PIN and CIN are of utmost importance for the whole information system. They are the basis for correct assignment of patient-related data to patients and thus are the very precondition for a valid patient record—regardless if it is electronic or not. Without correct PIN and CIN, all the high-tech of a modern information system would be useless.

Application systems providing a correct PIN are often called *MPI*. Hence, a *patient administration system* is an *MPI*. It is essential to have exactly one *MPI* in a health information system—regardless whether it is an institutional health information system where the MPI provides the PIN or a transinstitutional health information system (tHIS) where the MPI provides the transinstitutional PIN and, if necessary, cross-references the institutional PINs.

Both PIN and CIN as well as the related patient information must be made available to other application components of the facility. If the patient already has a paper-based patient record, the application component should automatically trigger the transfer of this record from the patient record archive to the unit the patient has been admitted to.

In addition, *patient administration systems* may update patient information in case of changes or merge patient information from two cases if a new PIN was wrongly assigned to a patient.

Patient administration systems are usually not only used by administrative staff but also by nurses and doctors at the ward. In the latter case, they also support daily management activities by health care professionals that occur on a ward. In particular, they support the assignment of patients to beds and rooms with the features shown in Table 3.1.

Some countries have different regulations for inpatient and outpatient billing. Particular features may therefore be needed for billing in outpatient departments and medical offices.

3.4.2 Medical Documentation and Management Systems (MDMS)

In addition to a *patient administration system* to support the management of patients, health care facilities need another application system to support functions related more closely to organizing and documenting patients' diagnostics and treatment. These functions are summarized in Table 3.2.

Application systems designed to especially support the functions in Table 3.2 are called *medical documentation and management systems (MDMS)*. They typically contain specialized modules for different medical fields (e.g., ophthalmology, psychiatry, dermatology) and usually offer generic forms for free text, semi-structured, or structured (e.g., drop-down lists) data entry for medical

Table 3.2 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *medical documentation and management systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Medical admission	Provide forms for documenting medical history Provide forms for documenting diagnosis Scan documents from referring physician and other sources
Decision-making, planning, and organization of patient treatment	Provide forms for documenting patient's informed consent Provide forms for documenting planned tasks Provide guidelines for care planning Provide context-related medical knowledge
Execution of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures	Provide forms for entering clinical data (free text or structured) Provide forms for preparing findings
Medical discharge and medical discharge summary writing	Provide means for writing the discharge summary, for example, by collecting and presenting available data which should be compiled for the summary Provide means for finalizing documentation
Human resources management	Provide means for managing staff Create a roster Assign doctors to patients or rooms
Coding of diagnoses and procedures	Algorithm for finding correct codes for diagnose and procedures given in natural language

documentation as well as support for speech recognition, reporting, and analysis features. The more data are structured, the easier patient-related computer-based decision support and statistical data analysis are. It is important that users are able to adapt the features to their needs (e.g., by defining which items have to be documented and which constraints the entered data must meet). When reports are generated, the reuse of already-documented data (e.g., diagnoses, findings from radiology, or lab) should be supported.

Besides clinical documentation, the *coding of diagnoses and procedures* is very important. Coding components must support the easy search for suitable diagnosis and procedure classes and their respective codes in classifications for a given medical field. Alternatively, free text can be analyzed using natural language recognition methods. If these coding components are separate from the *MDMS*, it must be guaranteed that the codes can be transferred to *MDMS*. The *MDMS* should also allow an adequate layout of diverse reports. When several persons are involved in the creation of a report (e.g., discharge summaries may be dictated by a junior physician, written by a secretary, and approved by a senior physician), the application components should support the management and distribution of different versions of a document having different status (e.g., preliminary or approved).

Medical documentation is the basis for decision-making, planning, and organization of patient treatment. The *MDMS* must therefore support the medical staff by providing medical knowledge, which should be preselected using documented data about the patient's conditions. Ideally, a respective "infobutton" [5] should be implemented.

3.4.3 Nursing Management and Documentation Systems (NMDS)

Although patient treatment and *patient care* or nursing are inherently intertwined, these two areas are often considered separately, even in information systems. Corresponding to the areas of responsibility of physicians and nurses, a distinction is also made, for example, between medical informatics and nursing informatics. Unfortunately, this often also results in other application systems being used to support the nursing process, even though doctors and nurses need to work together particularly closely.

The nursing process comprises *nursing admission*, nursing care planning with definition of problems, formulation of nursing aims, and planning of nursing tasks, then *execution of nursing procedures* and *nursing discharge and nursing discharge summary writing*. Like medical diagnoses and procedures, nursing diagnoses and procedures must be coded. The working hours of nursing staff, who usually work in shifts, must be carefully managed. These functions, together with related features, are listed in Table 3.3.

Application systems designed to especially support the functions in Table 3.3 are referred to as *nursing management and documentation systems (NMDS)* or sometimes "nursing information system."

Table 3.3 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *nursing management and documentation systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Nursing admission	Provide forms for documenting the nursing history
Medical and nursing care planning	Support creation of a nursing care plan Provide forms for documenting diagnosis and problems Provide forms for documenting nursing aims Provide forms for documenting nursing tasks
Execution of nursing procedures	Provide forms for documenting performed tasks Provide forms for documenting the outcome of nursing tasks
Coding of diagnoses and procedures	Provide catalogs and other means for coding of nursing diagnosis Provide catalogs and other means for coding of nursing procedures
Nursing discharge and nursing discharge summary writing	Provide forms for writing the nursing discharge summary Provide means for finalizing nursing documentation Communicate discharge information
Human resources management	Provide means for managing ward staff Provide means for creating a roster Assign nurses to patients or rooms

The *NMDS* must support the documentation of all steps of the nursing process. To support nursing care planning, the definition and use of predefined nursing care plans (comprising recent problems of the patient, nursing goals, and planned nursing tasks) is helpful.

The *NMDS* offers support for using predefined nursing terminologies and nursing classification such as NANDA, NIC, and NOC.[2]

3.4.4 Computerized Provider Order Entry Systems (CPOE)

The care of patients is a highly collaborative process. Not only are different facilities involved, but many service units as well as different health care professionals with different tasks are also involved within the facilities. The interaction of these units and people is handled by orders that one unit directs to another unit. This is summarized in the function *order entry*. *Order entry* can comprise both ordering of diagnostic or therapeutic procedures and ordering of drugs.

Application systems designed to especially support the function *order entry* and to provide the features in Table 3.4 are referred to as *computerized provider order entry systems (CPOE)* or sometimes *computerized physician order entry systems*. *CPOE systems* support formulation of the order, *appointment scheduling*, printing of labels, and the communication of the order to the service unit.

When ordering drugs, physicians may choose the most appropriate drug or generic drug from drug catalogs. The *CPOE system* may then also offer decision support functionalities such as dosage calculation, drug–drug interaction checks, drug allergy checks, or drug lab checks to prevent prescription errors.

When ordering diagnostic or therapeutic procedures, the results (e.g., lab values or X-ray report) must then be communicated back to the ordering facility. *CPOE systems* offer service catalogs that present the available service types of the different service units (e.g., laboratory, radiology, surgery). Order sets that describe a typical set of combined orders (e.g., a combination of diagnostic procedures that have to be performed in a given situation) can support the ordering process; they are activated and modified by the ordering clinician. Some *CPOE systems* support receiving and presenting findings. However, this is usually done by other application components such as the *radiology information system (RIS)* or *laboratory information system (LIS)*.

[2] NANDA = North American Nursing Diagnosis Association (the abbreviation is often used synonymously for the international classification of nursing diagnoses), NIC=Nursing Interventions Classification, NOC=Nursing Outcomes Classification.

Table 3.4 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *computerized provider order entry systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Order entry	Provide orders for patient-related drugs Provide drug catalogs Provide means for minimizing adverse drug events Calculate dosage of drugs Provide orders for patient-related examinations Select orders from order sets Provide means for scheduling a patient's appointment View patient-related appointments

3.4.5 Radiology Information Systems (RIS)

Facilities that handle the *execution of radiological examinations* exist as departments of hospitals, for example. There, they execute radiological examinations primarily on the inpatients of the respective hospital. Such facilities may also be legally and economically independent facilities, however, which then typically serve the care of outpatients, for example, from medical offices.

When radiological examinations are needed, wards or medical offices order them and schedule an appointment. In the case of outpatient care, however, the patients often have to perform the function *arrange appointments* themselves. The examinations may then be done using imaging devices, for example for computed tomography, magnetic resonance imaging, ultrasonography, or digital radiography. The imaging devices are called modalities. Based on the generated images, a specialist in radiology creates a report, which is then sent and presented (often together with selected pictures) to the ordering physician. The related functions are summarized in Table 3.5.Application systems designed to especially support the functions and to provide the features shown in Table 3.5 are usually called *radiology information systems (RIS)*. Please note that according to our definition, these application systems are not information systems, even if the name suggests that they are.

The *RIS* offers some features which are also provided by the *patient administration system* (3.4.1), i.e., features for registering patients, *appointment scheduling*, organization of examinations and staff (workflow management), provision of patient data and examination parameters, creation of radiology reports, documentation and coding of activities, and statistics. A special feature is the close connection to the modalities: The *RIS* typically provides a working list (i.e., patient name and requested examination) for the modalities and receives confirmation on the completion of a radiologic examination from the modalities. Due to these special features, software for *RIS* typically comes from specialized vendors.

Table 3.5 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *radiology information systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Execution of radiological examinations	Receive orders Assign orders to modalities Provide forms for writing a report
Medical admission	Provide means for check-in of patient
Appointment scheduling	Assign patients to modalities Offer free appointments to health care professionals and patients
Coding of diagnoses and procedures	Provide catalogs and other means for coding radiological diagnoses Provide catalogs and other means for coding radiological procedures
Management of medical devices	Manage modalities
Scheduling and resource allocation	Provide means for preparing work schedules

3.4.6 Picture Archiving and Communication Systems (PACS)

Even if radiologists occasionally still produce images on film, the modalities generally produce digital images. Digital images are stored in *picture archiving and communication systems (PACS)*. These application components allow the storage, retrieval, management, manipulation, and presentation of large amounts of image data and their quick communication from the storage medium to the attached radiologists' workstations. Image data can also be sent from the *PACS* to the ordering departments or facilities in a teleradiology network, for example. Quick communication may require a prefetching strategy to retrieve image data from slower storage devices and to provide it to faster devices well in advance to the situation in which they will be needed.

Application software products for *PACS* also comprise means for image processing and 3D reconstruction. They are often offered by vendors, which also offer physical data processing systems such as storage, networks, and modalities.

Alternatively, *vendor-neutral archives* (VNAs, Sect. 3.9.3) can be used to store image data and other patient-related documents. VNAs are connected to the *RIS*, the image processing components of the *PACS*, and other application systems using communication standards (especially DICOM). The use of the communication standards here follows the rules provided in the Integrating the Health care Enterprise (IHE) profiles for sharing documents (Sects. 3.7.2.4 and 3.7.2.6).

Obviously, *RIS* and *PACS* in one health care facility should be closely connected. They should also have a tight connection to the facility's *patient administration*

Table 3.6 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *picture archiving and communication systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Execution of radiological examinations	Retrieve pictures Display pictures Modify presentation of pictures "Hang" pictures like in the analog world Communicate pictures Archive pictures Search for old pictures

system, *MDMS*, *CPOE system*, and the *patient data management system (PDMS)* in order to allow quick access to reports and imaging pictures from every unit.

Table 3.6 sums up the functions being supported and the features usually offered for these functions.

3.4.7 Laboratory Information Systems (LIS)

Similar to radiology departments, laboratories exist both as functional areas within a facility, for example, a hospital, and as independent enterprises that offer their services to other health care facilities. Laboratories perform *execution of lab examinations* (Table 3.7). During *execution of lab examinations*, specimens of patients (e.g., blood sample, tissue sample) are used. In contrast to radiology departments, no *appointment scheduling* is required in laboratories. Depending on the type of laboratory, different examination technologies are used (e.g., chemical analysis of blood samples, microscopical analysis of tissue samples). Chemical analysis is usually done using automated equipment. Depending on the order, the sample is usually distributed automatically to various analytical devices, which are regularly checked for their precision in order to conform to quality management requirements. In addition, the laboratory physician checks all results of a sample for plausibility (so-called validation).

Application systems supporting *execution of lab examinations* and offering features as in Table 3.7 are called *laboratory information systems (LIS)*.

Laboratory information systems support the management of the whole analysis procedure: receipt of the order and sample, distribution of the sample and order to the different analytical devices, collection of the results, technical and clinical validation of results, communication of the findings back to the ordering department or facility, and general quality management procedures. The validation of laboratory results is more effective when patient-related clinical data (e.g., recent diagnoses, drug medication) are accessible to the laboratory physician. The *LIS* in a particular health care facility should therefore be closely connected to the facility's *MDMS*, *patient administration system*, *CPOE* system, and *PDMS*. Application software products for *LIS* are usually also sold by specialized vendors.

Table 3.7 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *laboratory information systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Execution of lab examinations	Receive orders Receive blood samples Assign order and blood samples to devices Collect results from devices Display earlier lab results of a patient Validate results Prepare report Communicate report to ordering unit Provide means for preparing statistics

Table 3.8 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *operation management systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Medical admission	Provide means for check-in of patient Provide forms for documenting medical history Provide forms for documenting diagnosis
Decision-making and patient information	Provide forms for documenting patients' informed consent
Execution of operations	Display vital parameters from monitoring devices Provide forms for documenting procedures and outcomes
Coding of diagnoses and procedures	Provide catalogs and other means for coding diagnoses Provide catalogs and other means for coding procedures Provide means for creating statistics
Patient discharge and transfer to other facilities	Provide forms for preparing operation reports Provide means for ordering patient transfer to ward
Supply and disposal management, scheduling, and resource allocation	Provide means for managing rooms Provide means for managing appointments Provide means for managing medical devices Provide means for ordering drugs, materials, and laundry Provide means for creating operation plans (daily, weekly) Provide means for preparing work schedules

3.4.8 Operation Management Systems (OMS)

Invasive procedures for patients at a particular health care facility are performed in the operating rooms (ORs) at this facility. Usually, patients stay in the OR for only a few hours. During this time, they are prepared for the operation, the operation is performed, and finally, for a period of time after the operation, the patients' state is monitored. This results in performing the functions listed in Table 3.8.

Application systems supporting functions and offering features as in Table 3.8 are called *operation management systems (OMS)*.

Operation management systems support *execution of operations* as a specialization of *execution of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures*. They allow operation

date and time to be assigned and should therefore be available on the wards as well as in the offices and management units of the OR. Depending on the planned operations, an operation plan can be created for a day or a week. The data necessary for efficient planning are the diagnoses of the patient, the planned operation (medical procedure), the surgeons and other staff involved (human resources), the planned time for operation (appointment), and the available OR (space). Therefore, the *OMS* should be closely connected to the *MDMS*.

A vast amount of data must be documented during each operation, including the members of the operating team, the operative procedure, the date and time, duration of the operation, materials (e.g., implants) used, and other necessary data to describe the operation and its results. Surgeons cooperate tightly with anesthesiologists during the operation. For their documentation, anesthesiologists need a lot of data, which must usually be documented by surgeons and vice versa. To avoid transcriptions, an *OMS* should therefore also provide supportive features for anesthesiologists in an integrated way.

Usually, the planning data are taken from the operation planning component to be updated and completed during and after the operation. These data can be used to create an operation report, which may be completed with further comments by the surgeons. Therefore, word processing capability is needed. Operation data needed for billing must be coded and then communicated to the administrative application components. The *OMS* should also allow extensive data analysis (e.g., operation lists for junior surgeons).

3.4.9 Patient Data Management Systems (PDMS)

Patients in critical situations are treated in intensive care units (ICU). These patients are generally in an unstable state and within seconds may enter into a life-endangering situation. Thus, the detailed and complete presentation of all vital parameters (e.g., blood pressure, pulse, breathing frequency) is required for a successful therapy. This is only possible when automated monitoring devices continuously measure and record various parameters. In addition, parameters that could point to the initial deterioration of the patient's status should be automatically detected and should lead to an immediate alert of the treating health care professionals. Functions being performed in ICU are outlined in Table 3.9.

Application systems supporting functions and offering features as in Table 3.9 are called *patient data management systems (PDMS)*.

Patient data management systems are specialized to automatically monitor, store, and clearly present a vast amount of patient-related clinical data in ICUs. They also support scoring (e.g., TISS,[3] SAPS[4]) and may offer features for decision support and various statistical analyses.

[3] Therapeutic Intervention Scoring System.

[4] Simplified Acute Physiology Score.

Table 3.9 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *patient data management systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Medical admission	Provide means for check-in of patient Provide forms for documenting medical history Provide forms for documenting diagnosis
Medical and nursing care planning	Provide means for preparing a care plan Offer decision support for care planning
Execution of diagnostic, therapeutic, and nursing procedures	Display vital parameters from monitoring devices Display warning messages Provide forms for documenting clinical procedures Provide forms for documenting medications Create work list for a group of patients Print forms Provide means for creating statistics
Coding of diagnoses and procedures	Scoring of the patient (e.g., TISS, SAPSII) Provide catalogs and other means for *coding of procedures* Provide catalogs and other means for *coding of diagnoses*
Patient discharge and transfer to other facilities	Provide forms for writing a transfer letter or discharge summary Provide means for finalizing documentation Communicate discharge information Provide means for ordering patient transfer to other units
Supply and disposal management, scheduling, and resource allocation	Assign staff to patients or rooms Provide means for ordering consumables Provide means for ordering drugs Provide means for ordering laundry Provide means for managing medical devices Organize patient transport Work scheduling

After transfer to a regular ward, a short summary of therapies on the ICU should be created and communicated to the application components used at the ward. In addition, a connection to the application components for *order entry* and result reporting is necessary. Software for a *PDMS* is sold both by specialized vendors and by vendors that also offer automated monitoring tools.

Intensive monitoring is also required during anesthesia. Therefore, *PDMS* are also used in the preparation, execution, and follow-up of operations. *PDMS* for anesthesia have additional features for anesthesia planning and execution.

3.4.10 Enterprise Resource Planning Systems (ERPS)

As part of the *administration of health care facilities*, there are functions to be performed that differ little from those in facilities in other industries. These include, in particular, the functions *controlling*, *financial accounting*, *facility management*, *human resources management*, *quality management*, and *supply and disposal management* (Table 3.10).

Table 3.10 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *enterprise resource planning systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Controlling	Provide means for overhead cost management Provide means for product costing Provide means for cost center accounting Provide means for cost element accounting
Financial accounting	Provide means for accounts payable Provide means for accounts receivable Provide means for general ledger accounting Provide means for *asset accounting*
Facility management	Provide means for preventive maintenance Provide means for control of security issues Provide means for incident tracking
Human resources management	Provide means for organizing recruitment Provide means for organizing training Provide means for organizing career development Provide means for performance evaluation
Quality management	Provide a collection of internal processes and regulations Provide means for editing and graphically illustrating collections of internal processes and regulations
Supply and disposal management	Provide means for managing logistics Provide means for stock-keeping Provide means for order management Provide means for managing and monitoring disposal

Application systems supporting functions and offering features as in Table 3.10 are called *enterprise resource planning systems (ERPS)*. *ERPS* enable health care facilities to manage their financial, human, and material resources.

A close connection is needed to the facility's *patient administration system*, in particular, but also to the other application components mentioned before, in order to obtain, for example, billing data and legally required diagnoses and procedure codes. Most of the application software products used for *ERPS* in health care facilities are not specific to health care but are also used in other industries outside health care where similar administrative functions have to be supported.

One major goal of the *ERPS* is the documentation and billing of all accountable services. The types of data needed and the details of billing depend on the country's health care system.

3.4.11 Data Warehouse Systems (DWS)

For decision-making, the management of a health care facility (Table 3.11) requires up-to-date information about the facility's operation as a whole. The management is, for example, interested in answers to questions such as: What are the top ten diagnoses of the patients treated in our facility? Which department of the facility

Table 3.11 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *data warehouse systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Management of health care facilities	Integrate data from different application components Structure data Analyze data Provide means for data mining
Execution of clinical trials	Provide means for recruiting patients

causes the highest material costs? In which department do patients stay longest on average?

In order not to jeopardize the performance of these application systems with resource-consuming data analyses, dedicated application systems are used that extract the required data from the source application systems at certain intervals and then make them available for analysis. Application systems that support functions and offer features as in Table 3.11 are called *data warehouse systems (DWS)*.

Data warehouse systems are also used to support medical research, especially for clinical trials. Loading data, for example from the *MDMS*, *LIS*, *RIS*, or *CPOE system* into a *DWS*, the recruitment of patients for clinical trials, and the statistical *evaluation* of patient data can be effectively supported.

Data warehouse systems can help to answer the aforementioned questions by pooling management-relevant data from other systems such as the *ERPS* and the *CPOE system* and providing means to analyze these data through data mining techniques. A *DWS* supporting *management of health care facilities* is often called a business intelligence system.

Extracted data in the *DWS* have been transferred and aggregated into a suitable format and then actively loaded into the data warehouse (push principle). A specific request on the data will only access data already loaded into the data warehouse.

An ISO standard exists which provides implementation guidance for data warehouses in health information systems [6].

3.4.12 Document Archiving Systems (DAS)

As part of the function *archiving of patient information*, long-term archiving is a particular challenge for both paper-based and digital documents. Application systems supporting this function and offering the features listed in Table 3.12 are called *document archiving systems (DAS)*.

Dependent upon the type of data and national laws, patient-related data must be stored for up to 30 years. For *long-term archiving*, confidentiality, availability, and integrity of the data according to the Open Archival Information System model (ISO 14721) must be guaranteed. Availability means that data must be retrievable and readable at any time throughout the archiving period. To ensure integrity, data must be complete and unchanged. In health care, authenticity of the author and the time of the creation of a document are important aspects of integrity. For example, unauthorized alteration of the date of creation results in the loss of integrity of

Table 3.12 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *document archiving system*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.2)	Typical features
Long-term archiving	Import documents Scan documents Index document content Manage storage formats Manage storage media Provide access to archived information Attach digital signatures Communicate documents to other applications

archived data. The conditions of confidentiality, availability, and integrity can hardly be met by the individual application systems introduced before. This is especially true as these application systems cannot be expected to be in use for up to 30 years. It therefore makes sense to assign this task to a dedicated application system and copy the documents to be archived there.

Document archiving systems offer long-term archiving of patient-related and perhaps of other data and documents. Archiving is based on sustainable standardized data formats, document formats, and interfaces. The *DAS* also provides standardized indexing of document content and regular updates of storage media. Qualified electronic signatures, for example in compliance with European directive 1999/93/EC [7], can be used to guarantee long-term integrity of stored data in case the *DAS* is enabled to renew outdated signatures and hash algorithms. *DAS* are typically closely linked to all application systems that generate data and documents which it must store for a long time. It obtains copies of data and documents from those systems, indexes them, and stores them, while enabling fast retrieval. Paper-based documents can be integrated through scanning, which makes it possible to eliminate the physical space needed for paper-based archiving. *DAS* can typically archive not only text-related documents but also images, videos, and other multimedia data. All these documents may be stored using established non-proprietary industry standards such as:

- ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange),
- PDF/A, an ISO standard for long-term archiving of documents based on the Portable Document Format (PDF),
- XML (Extensible Markup Language),
- TIFF (Tagged Image File Format),
- JPEG and MPEG, acronyms for the names of the committees that created the standards (Joint Photographic Experts Group and Moving Pictures Expert Group),
- Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM, Sect. 3.7.2.4),
- CDA (Clinical Document Architecture), an ANSI standard for the structuring of clinical documents (Sect. 3.7.2.2).

It makes sense to use vendor-neutral archives (Sect. 3.9.3) to realize *DAS*.

Patient-related medical data and documents stored in the *DAS* in a facility have to be made available to the medical management documentation system of this facility in order to enable their users to directly access information from earlier patient contacts.

3.4.13 Application Systems for Patients and Informal Caregivers

In contrast to the previously described application systems in health care facilities, application systems for patients and informal caregivers cannot be structured that clearly by the tasks they perform and their typical functionalities. This is due to the fact that there are a multitude of mobile health (mHealth apps), desktop, and browser applications available that support patients in better understanding, dealing with, and (independently) managing their health condition. In addition to application systems dealing solely with self-diagnosis, *self-treatment*, or knowledge management, there are also a number of combined application systems, i.e., mHealth apps, that provide knowledge, support therapy, and assist patients in keeping their appointments at the same time. Some typical types of application system for patients and informal caregivers are described below. These are examples and by no means represent an exhaustive list.

3.4.13.1 Patient Portals

Patient portals are offered by health care facilities. They are primarily available for patients of this facility and informal cargivers to provide them with an overview of their health data, organize documents, and actively manage themselves. *Patient portals* can also be used to improve communication between health care professionals and patients. For example, relevant documents can be uploaded to the portal by patients before admission to a hospital or rehabilitation center and are made available there for early access. This improves not only the preparation for admission to a facility but also creates transparency of information, which is crucial for patient empowerment.

Patient portals support *medical knowledge management* including document management and, in some cases, also *appointment scheduling*. Thereby, they offer features such as those described in Table 3.13.

In addition to *patient portals* that focus exclusively on the needs of patients, there are also special portals for relatives. Such portals mostly support relatives in their role as informal caregivers. Simple portals for relatives usually provide information about a disease and how to deal with it. They are therefore also referred to as information platforms. Information can be provided in different ways, ranging from simple structured information sets to comprehensive e-learning services. More comprehensive portals for relatives also offer opportunities for *medical knowledge management* as previously described for *patient portals*.

Table 3.13 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *patient portals*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.1)	Typical features
Medical knowledge management including document management	Administer user account Provide/upload documents Retrieve documents Fill in forms View treatment Information retrieval
Appointment scheduling	Manage appointments (view, edit, and schedule)

3.4.13.2 Telemonitoring Systems

Telemonitoring systems are provided by health care facilities or by health insurance companies. They are primarily used to monitor patients' state of health remotely, reinforcing a patient-centered health care approach. The aim is to detect critical or conspicuous changes in the state of health in order to be able to address them as quickly as possible. Therefore, they are used particularly frequently in post-acute monitoring of patients, for example, after discharge from a hospital or a rehabilitation center, as well as in chronic diseases, such as with Mr. Russo's heart failure.

In principle, *telemonitoring systems* acquire a patient's health data, transmit it to a health care professional, and represent it to that professional (and in some cases also to the patient) in an appropriate form. The monitoring of the health status can be done either in real time or time-delayed. In addition to a clear visualization of the recorded data and its provision to a treating health care professional, some *telemonitoring systems* also handle the partial or complete analysis of the data. Health care professionals either receive aggregated information on a patient's health status or receive alerts as soon as a critical value or abnormal changes in health status are detected.

Telemonitoring systems thus support the patient's self-management abilities and *self-diagnostics* through continuous monitoring. Thereby, they offer features such as those described in Table 3.14.

The range of functions and complexity of *telemonitoring systems* varies greatly in practice. For example, simple *telemonitoring systems* only record a patient's state of health via manual data entries by patients, for example, by querying the symptoms associated with a disease. There are also a number of *telemonitoring systems* that, in conjunction with other systems such as a blood pressure monitor, can also record vital parameters and evaluate them independently in combination with other patient-related data. The range of functions thus extends from simple observations to comprehensive application systems which, in addition to recording, also perform analysis, management, and initial diagnosis.

Telemonitoring systems are increasingly supplemented by functionalities for patient education and patient coaching.

3.4.13.3 Self-Diagnosis Systems

Simple *self-diagnosis systems* in the form of web applications or mHealth apps are used to provide people suffering from ailments with information about what illness they might have. The so-called symptom checker systems provide possible diagnoses or disease information matching the symptoms entered by the patient in just a few minutes. This works particularly well for simple, common diseases. For rarer, more complex conditions, however, the results provided are significantly less precise.

Self-diagnosis systems are also used in various disciplines for remote diagnosis, for example, when a patient is unable to visit a physician. In this case, *self-diagnosis systems* are considered telemedicine applications that are used for communication between physicians and patients.

Self-diagnostic systems support *self-diagnostics* and self-management of patients. Thereby, they offer features such as those described in Table 3.15.

Self-diagnosis systems usually operate on the basis of artificial intelligence and neural networks. They automatically analyze a patient's entries, from simple texts to image data. As mentioned before, some of these application systems transmit their results automatically or at the request of a patient to a (specialist) physician in the sense of telemedicine. Such *self-diagnosis systems* are used, among other things, in dermatology for the prevention and early detection of skin diseases such as skin cancer.

Table 3.14 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *telemonitoring systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.1)	Typical features
Self-diagnostics	Recording/measurement (e.g., vital parameters and symptoms) Monitoring of vital parameters Analysis Reporting Diagnosis/detection of risks Visualization Sending alarms

Table 3.15 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *self-diagnosis systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.1)	Typical features
Self-diagnostics	Analysis (e.g., image analysis, analysis of medical/therapeutic parameters, and text analysis) Provision and evaluation of assessments/tests Diagnosis Reporting Information provision/provision of information Patient education

It is important to note that no form of *self-diagnosis systems* can replace professional assessments by physicians, not to mention professional treatment. Instead, the aim is to involve patients to a greater extent in the care process (patient empowerment) and to improve communication between patients and health care professionals.

3.4.13.4 Self-Treatment Systems

Self-treatment systems range from simple treatment-assisting systems to strengthen patients' self-management skills to individual therapy systems that can be used either as a complement or as an alternative to standard therapy. In addition to software-based mHealth apps, desktop and web applications, more and more hardware-based systems are also being used. Through the implementation of different sensor technologies, these enable not only the guidance of therapies, but also a monitoring of the state of health or even an evaluation of therapeutic measures.

Overall, the feature set of *self-treatment systems* varies greatly and depends, among other things, on the intended use and the specific area of application. Table 3.16 shows some typical features to support patient *self-treatment*.

Information-only application systems represent the simplest form of *self-treatment systems*. These simply contain descriptions to educate patients about one or more alternative therapies. For example, Mr. Russo can access information about a healthy diet for lifestyle changes or learn about ways to reduce stress, such as yoga exercises. More sophisticated *self-treatment systems* include not only information and guidance but also concrete instructions on how to perform a therapeutic or complementary measure. For example, Mr. Russo is not only recommended certain yoga exercises, but they are also explained in detail, for example, in the form of texts or instructional videos. Thereby, Mr. Russo can exercise along with the application system and mark off individual workouts to save his progress. Embedded assessments, whether automated based on sensor technology or as queries via manual data entry, also help to record the current state of health and changes caused during the therapy period. These can either be feedback to the patient or be forwarded in the form of telemedicine applications to a health care professional for further interpretation and subsequent therapy adjustment.

Reminders to perform an activity, such as exercise sessions or taking medication, are also integral parts of *self-treatment systems*.

Table 3.16 Set of functions and related features typically to be supported by *self-treatment systems*

Function (from Sect. 3.3.1)	Typical features
Self-treatment	Therapy (instruction, evaluation, adaptation) Monitoring Provision and evaluation of assessments/tests Reporting Information provision/provision of information Reminder (e.g., for taking medication) Serious games

3.4.14 Other Application Systems

In addition to the application systems introduced so far, we can usually find many other types of application systems, often serving specific needs of the respective health care facility and its departments. For example, depending on the size of the hospital, a hospital may have its own pharmacy department which needs a *pharmacy information system* to supply wards and patients with the right drugs in the right dose. Depending on the specializations of a hospital, there may be, for example, a *cardiovascular information system (CVIS)* or a *dialysis information system*, which are specialized *MDMS*.

Table 3.17 lists some of these specific application components. This list is not intended to be exhaustive, however.

Until now, we have focused on "classical" application systems, i.e., software installations in health information systems primarily supporting the functions as listed in Sect. 3.3. But there is an increasing number of installations of software in health care settings that primarily control medical devices. Hence, medical devices can increasingly be considered to be application systems and in many cases to be specialized *MDMS*. Consequently, they not only provide information (e.g., findings and images) via respective interfaces, but also need information from other application components (e.g., patient, case, order). This close interconnection is often referred to by the term "converging technologies." Due to the considerable risks for patient safety, reasonable diligence must be exercised when integrating these converging technologies into the computer-based part of health information systems.

Table 3.17 Further specific application components in health information systems (examples)

Application component	Description
Blood bank management systems	Support blood donor services, blood analyses, administration of blood bottles
Cardiovascular information systems (CVIS)	Provide many features of *clinical information systems (CIS)* and *radiology information systems (RIS)* while tailoring the special needs of cardiology departments
dialysis information systems	Provide many features of *CIS* while tailoring the special needs of dialysis departments; have interfaces to hemodialysis machines
Oncology information systems	Provide many features of *CIS* while tailoring the special needs of oncology departments
Orthopedics information systems	Provide many features of *CIS* while tailoring the special needs of orthopedics departments; can include a computer-aided design (CAD) system for transplant planning
Pathology information systems	Have similar features as *LIS*, for example, receiving orders, writing reports
Pharmacy information systems	Support the workflow in pharmacy departments: receiving drug orders, managing the drug stock, distributing drugs throughout the hospital
Teleradiology systems	Enable evaluations of radiological images from (external) radiologists' remote workplaces and may be closely connected to *RIS* and *PACS*

3.4.15 *Clinical Information Systems (CIS) and Electronic Health Record Systems (EHRS) as Composite Application Systems*

Not every health information system contains an *MDMS*, an *NMDS,* or a *CPOE system* as separate, identifiable application systems. Instead, these components are often closely integrated modules of the so-called *clinical information systems (CIS)*.

Clinical information systems are also often called *electronic health record systems (EHRS or EHR systems)*. As introduced in Sect. 2.10, the electronic health record (EHR) is a complete or partial health record stored on an electronic storage medium. Given this definition, every computer-based application component supporting the *execution of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures* or other subfunctions of *patient care* (e.g., *MDMS*, *outpatient management system*, *NMDS*, *PDMS*) contains at least a partial EHR. In the *CIS* of a certain health care facility, these partial EHRs are often integrated and made available to the professionals from all areas of the facility to provide one harmonized view on the data of a patient. Because of this harmonized view, the term *electronic health record system (EHRS)* as a particular application component has become quite common.

3.5 Logical Tool Layer: Data Integrity

In the previous section, we saw that there can be very many different types of application systems in health information systems. Therefore, we are dealing with very complex information systems in health care. In information systems, it is generally important to make sure that the data stored is correct. In complex health care information systems, this is a particular challenge.

For the correctness of data in health information systems, we use the term *data integrity*. There are many aspects of data integrity. Here we want to focus on the following aspects:

- the unique and correct identification of objects (object identity),
- the correct representation of relationships between these entities (referential integrity),
- the consistency of duplicated data among all application components in a health information system (*data consistency*).

In this section, you will learn more about these aspects of data integrity.

Object identity originates from object-oriented programming and means that an object has an existence that is independent of its value. Thus, two objects may look the same, i.e., they have the same value, but can still be different. Applying this to the representation of entity types in a database leads to the requirement that the representation of every entity must be uniquely identifiable. In a health information system, this is especially important for entity types such as “patient” and “case,” but also for “finding,” “order,” and all other entity types (Sect. 3.2.3). This

identity is needed, since all data need to be assigned to a specific patient and their cases. For example, if application components exchange information on the patient entity "Mr. Russo," they must be sure they are communicating about the same entity (the "real" Mr. Jakub Russo, not another patient who has by chance the same name).

Experience has shown that object identity of the entity type "patient" can be guaranteed only when every patient receives a unique number, the PIN. The PIN should have no internal meaning. That is, it is created continuously and is usually numerical. Past attempts to generate a PIN from data collected from the patient, for example, from the date of birth and the name, have led to considerable problems, for example when a date of birth is corrected and thus the PIN also changes. In this case, object identity could be compromised. For example, the "real" Mr. Jakub Russo has the PIN 3050.1515 that is used throughout all application components and in the communication between them when referring to this real person.

Similar actions should be taken for the entity type "case." A CIN, which should also have no apparent meaning, should be assigned for every case. If all application components of a health information system ensure that a case identified with a CIN is always assigned to the correct patient, the CIN can be used as an identifier for the patient. During order entry, for example, the CIN can then be used to uniquely identify a patient when ordering a laboratory test.

In every health care facility, assigning a PIN and a CIN to a patient is part of the function *patient identification* of this patient, a subfunction of *patient admission*. The PIN must be used in all parts of the hospital, and thus in all application components, for the identification of the patient and will also be used during future visits. Since PIN and CIN are assigned during *patient admission*, only one admission has to be performed and only one PIN has to be assigned to patients during their visit, regardless of which ward they are treated on. For example, Mr. Russo was assigned a PIN (and CIN) when he was first admitted to Ploetzberg Hospital. This PIN will now be used whenever Mr. Russo is admitted to this hospital again.

This works well if there is exactly one dedicated application system supporting *patient admission*, namely the *patient administration system*. The *patient administration system* must have direct access to a database that holds data allowing the reidentification of all past patients and cases in the hospital. To have this *MPI* as part of the *patient administration system* is an obvious choice.

MPI are also required for *patient identification* in HIS which cover more than one health care facility. In tHIS, data about a patient are to be used across different facilities, for example, when exchanging data between two hospitals or between a hospital and a nursing home. *MPI* as a dedicated application system provides a unique transinstitutional identification of a patient across separate *patient administration systems*. This transinstitutional PIN is cross-mapped by the MPI to the PINs of the respective health care facilities.

Object identity provides a unique identification for entities. Referential integrity builds on top of this and means the correct assignment of entities to each other. For example, a number of cases must be correctly assigned to a certain patient, or laboratory findings must be assigned to a given case. Object identity is the precondition for referential integrity.

Object identity for patients and cases needs to be achieved among all application components, regardless of whether they are computer-based or not. Without object identity, there is no referential integrity, and without referential integrity, results cannot be related back to the correct patient. Therefore, without the correct usage of the PIN and CIN, the pure installation of technical means such as communication networks and computer systems is practically useless, as the precondition for data integrity is not met.

Object integrity and referential integrity form two elements of data integrity. The third element we want to look at is data consistency. *Data consistency* means that copies of data on the same entity are identical.

In health information systems architectures with many different application systems, the application systems often use the same data on patients and thus store them redundantly in their own database systems. This means that there are copies of data (e.g., of patient name, patient diagnosis, laboratory findings) that represent the same information about one particular entity. We call these copies of the same data "duplicates."

Obviously, these duplicates are supposed to be identical in all application systems where they are stored. In this case, we denote these duplicates as consistent. If the data are not identical and thus represent contradictory information, we call the duplicates inconsistent. *Transaction management* tries to make sure that data are and stay consistent—we then talk of replicates, meaning that copies of data are automatically held consistent. In health information systems having only one application system with only one database system, no redundant data exist, as all data are the so-called unicums—they only exist once.

3.6 Logical Tool Layer: Architectural Styles

As defined in Sect. 2.11, the architecture of an information system describes its fundamental organization, represented by its components, their relationships to each other and to the environment, and the principles guiding its design and evolution. The components of health information systems comprise functions, business processes, and tools for data and information processing, especially application components.

With regard to the functions and processes, there are considerable differences between information systems of different kinds of health care settings. For example, there are very clear differences in functions and processes between hospitals on the one hand and patients' home environments on the other. However, there are very great similarities at the domain layer of hospital information systems, as the hospitals' goals and thus the hospitals' functions are in general the same. All functions presented in Sect. 3.3 should thus be supported in every hospital information system. Remember that, from our point of view, these functions can be supported by non-computer-based or computer-based application components.

However, even for the same kind of health care setting, there are usually significant differences in information systems architectures with respect to the types and relationships of tools used and the way they are integrated. We will introduce a multidimensional taxonomy, which can be used to characterize different styles of architectures. This taxonomy will help to describe real health information system architectures, to compare them, and to assess them.

We will first take a look at the logical tool layer and later (in Sect. 3.10.3) look at health information systems' architectural styles at the physical tool layer. In doing so, we concentrate on the computer-based part of health information systems.

Architectural styles at the logical tool layer of the computer-based part of health information systems are characterized by the

- number of databases being used to store data (especially patient-related data),
- number of application systems used to support the functions,
- number of different application software products used to install the application components and the number of vendors of these products, and
- patterns of communication links between the application components used.

These facets will be introduced as semantic dimensions which can be used to categorize hospital information systems' architectures.

3.6.1 Number of Databases: Central vs. Distributed

Application systems of health information systems may store data on certain entity types persistently. Usually, a database is used for this purpose. We will use the number of databases storing data in health information systems as the basis to distinguish possible data distribution styles at the logical tool layer of health information systems: the DB^1 and the DB^n style.

3.6.1.1 DB¹ Architecture

If a health information system (or its sub-information system) comprises only one database to store all patient-related data, we call this a *DB^1 architecture* (Fig. 3.24). This single database system is often called the central database system for this (sub-)information system.

The precondition for the *DB^1 architecture* (also: *central architecture*) is that all application systems store their data only in the central database and that this database is open for accessing and storing data there. There are two ways for realizing this style:

- The application software products of the application systems originate from the same vendor who designed the database, they are all self-developed by a health care facility, or they have been developed particularly for this health care facility.

- There exists an appropriate API along with standards to query and manipulate the database. This can be achieved by using an *open platform* (Sect. 3.9.3) where the database schema on the persistence layer does not need to be known.

If application components from different vendors are used and the previous conditions are not fulfilled, the so-called DB^n style can usually be found.

3.6.1.2 DB^n Architecture

In health information systems based on commercial software components from several different vendors, we can usually find *DB^n architectures* (also: *distributed architecture*). This means that several application components store data on certain entity types persistently and contain their own database systems. Figure 3.22 presents this style.

As a consequence of this style, patient-related data must be stored redundantly in different application components. For example, data on the entity types "patient" and "case" may be stored in different application components, such as the *patient administration system*, *LIS*, and *RIS*.

In this architecture, great emphasis must therefore be placed on the consistency of redundant data (Sect. 3.8.1). For example, the architecture must define which system is the responsible source for which data elements. It may be useful to state, for example, that data on patient and case may be created and changed only by the *patient administration system* (however, the other components may locally store and use a copy of these data). We will discuss these topics in more detail in Sect. 3.9.1.

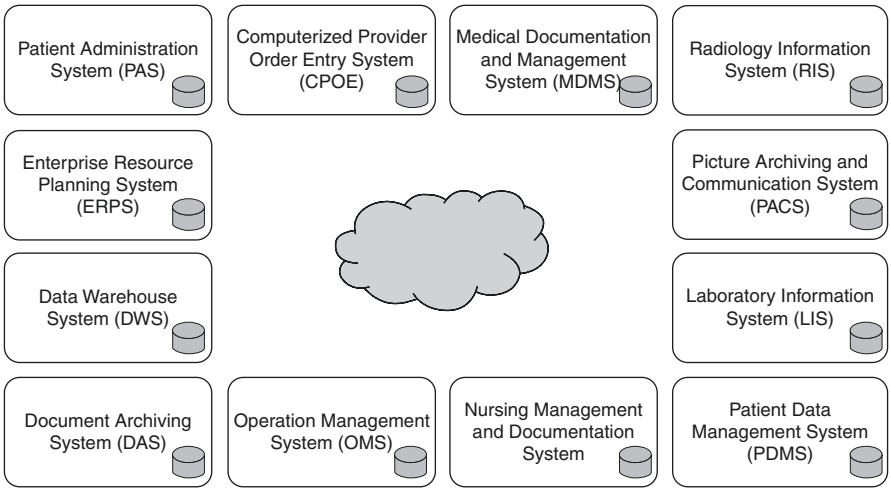


Fig. 3.22 DB^n style with multiple application systems, each with its own database system, using 3LGM^2 symbols. The cloud in the center indicates that some as yet unknown means is needed to link the components

It is quite obvious that in DB^n architectures consistency of redundant data can only be achieved if the application systems are able to communicate with one another, i.e., they must be interoperable. We will discuss interoperability of application systems in more detail in Sect. 3.7.1.

3.6.1.3 Mixed DB^1/DB^n Architectures

In practice, you will hardly find health information systems with a pure DB^1 style. Even if one central application component with the central database has been installed in order to support the functions, it is hardly possible to stop implementation of further application components; and those application systems will usually come with their own databases. Hence, even if a considerable part of these health information systems is DB^1 styled, they are in sum actually DB^n styled. Similarly, even DB^n styled health information systems contain sub-information systems which are DB^1 styled.

We will refer to the mixed style by the string "DB^1/DB^n".

3.6.2 Number of Application Systems: Monolithic vs. Modular

In the simplest case, the overall health information system consists of only one computer-based application system which supports most of the functions. This application system would then look like the one rock on which the whole hospital rests. Respective health information systems are commonly called *monolithic*. We will refer to this style by the string "AC^1". Of course, this application component contains the central database and AC^1 correlates with DB^1. A graphical representation of such a (DB^1, AC^1) architecture is presented in Fig. 3.23.

Especially in large health care facilities such as university medical centers or even in home settings, however, one application component is usually not sufficient to support the different functions. This leads to architectures with a multiplicity of application components, which can be denoted by AC^n and are called *modular architectures*.

Fig. 3.23 (DB^1, AC^1) architecture using $3LGM^2$ symbols. The rectangle denotes the application system that contains a database system (denoted by the cylinder)

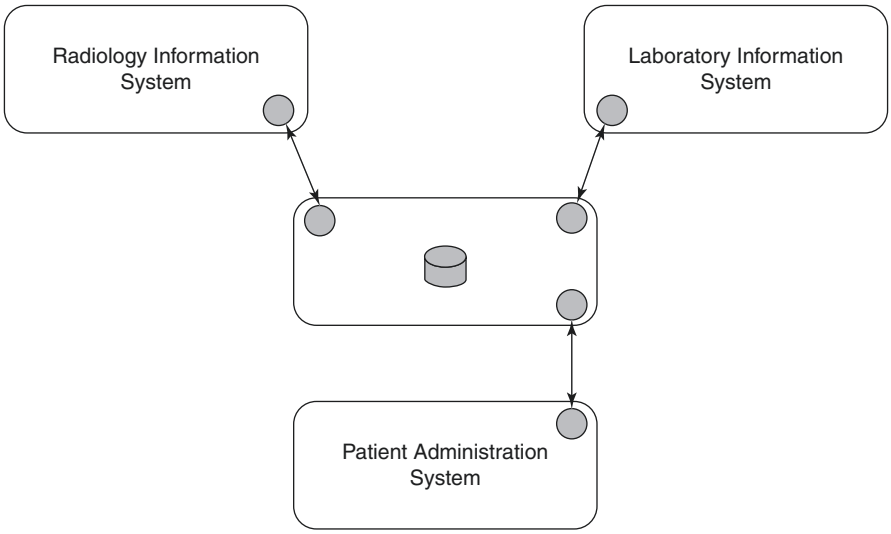


Fig. 3.24 (DB^1, AC^n) architecture with multiple application systems, using $3LGM^2$ symbols. Only one application system (in the center) contains a database system

However, modular architectures can still be DB^1 architectures: For example, the *RIS*, the *LIS*, and the patient administration system are connected to a certain application system which shares one single database management (Fig. 3.24). The application system in the middle may be an *open platform* (Sect. 3.9.3). Such (sub-) information systems can be described by (DB^1, AC^n).

Anyhow, there is still widespread use of a combination of many application components and many databases, i.e., of (DB^n, AC^n) architectures, as in Fig. 3.22.

3.6.3 Number of Application Software Products and Vendors: All-in-One vs. Best-of-Breed

The terms "homogeneity" and "heterogeneity" are commonly used to describe whether a health information system consists of somehow similar components or very different ones. A practical measure is the number of application software products installed or the number of vendors delivering these products to a health information system. We denote a *homogeneous architecture*, i.e., a (sub-)health information system with software from only one vendor, as V^1. Consequently, independent of the number of application systems, V^1-HIS use only application software products that all come from the same vendor. On the contrary, *heterogeneous architectures* comprise software from several vendors and are denoted as V^n.

Obviously, (DB^1, V^1) architectures are more common than (DB^1, V^n) architectures.

An (AC^n, V^n) architecture where the different application systems are based on software from different vendors is commonly denoted as *best-of-breed architecture*, pointing to the fact that the health care setting combines the "best" application software products from different vendors. This best-of-breed architecture is typically DB^n although (DB^1, V^n) architectures could become more common in the future.

On the contrary, a monolithic (AC^1, V^1) architecture and even an (AC^n, V^1) architecture emphasizes that the health care facility selected only application software products from exactly one vendor to support as many functions as necessary. This homogeneous architecture is also called *all-in-one architecture*.

3.6.4 Communication Pattern: Spaghetti vs. Star

Application systems that are part of an AC^n architecture have to be connected as we discussed before. One way would be to directly connect those application systems that need to exchange certain patient-related data.

For example, if data on the entity types "patient" and "case" are needed in the *patient administration system* in the *RIS* and in the *LIS*, direct communication links between these components seem to be a possible solution. Hence, a communication link allowing for the transfer of patient data between the *patient administration system* and the *RIS* may be introduced. Consequently, when connecting several application systems, this will lead to an increasing number of bidirectional communication links. This architecture is called *spaghetti* style. All these different links must be supported and managed. As the number of application systems rises, the number of links grows nearly exponentially. The maximum number of communication links between n application components ($n \geq 2$) is $\sum_{x=1}^{n-1} x$. We denote architectures with this spaghetti-styled communication pattern as CP^n. Figure 3.25 presents a (DB^n, AC^n, V^n, CP^n) architecture.

To reduce the large number of links, one can use smarter methods and tools to organize and implement the interoperability of application systems, for example, by installing an application system in the "middle", ensuring communication between the application systems.

For example, most hospital information systems following the DB^n style use a *communication server*. By using a communication server, no direct communication links between application systems are needed. Links are needed only between the application systems and the communication server. The number of links that must be managed can consequently be low—ideally, only n links exist for n application systems.

We call this style *star architecture* and denote it as CP^l. Figure 3.26 presents a (DB^n, AC^n, V^n, CP^1) architecture. Note that star architectures do not necessarily contain communication servers, as the center of the star may also be an application system with a central database. Consequently, (DB^1, AC^n) architectures will also be CP^1 architectures. Furthermore, we may call a service-oriented architecture (SOA)

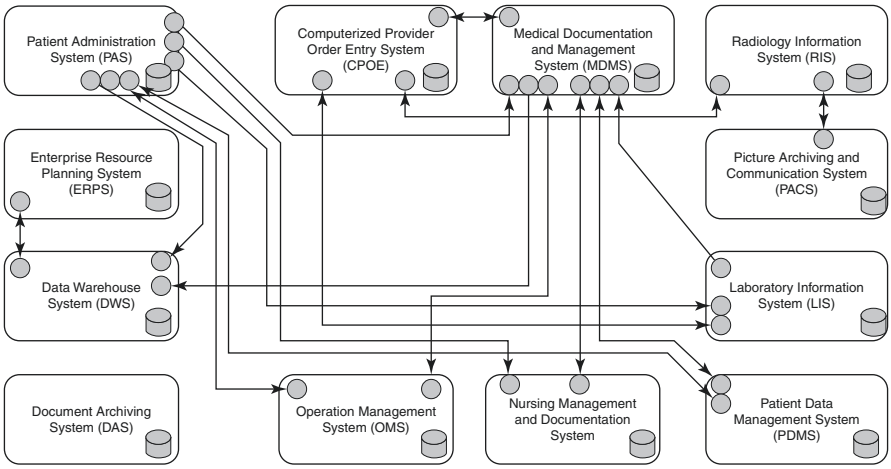


Fig. 3.25 (DB^n, AC^n, V^n, CP^n) architecture with multiple application systems, using $3LGM^2$ symbols, with several bidirectional communication interfaces. This representation is also called a "spaghetti" architectural style

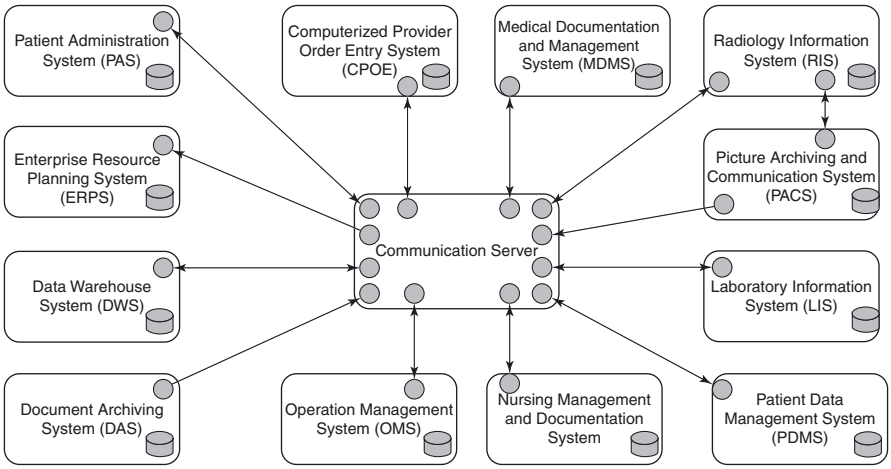


Fig. 3.26 (DB^n, AC^n, V^n, CP^1) architecture with multiple application systems connected by a specific application component, using $3LGM^2$ symbols. This representation is also called a "star" architectural style

with one application component serving as a broker or as a service bus a CP^1 architecture as well. But for AC^1, this concept obviously does not make sense and neither CP^1 nor CP^n should be applied.

3.7 Logical Tool Layer: Interoperability and Standards

As we saw in the previous section, health information systems are characterized by containing many application systems, i.e., they are usually of the AC^n architecture type. And we saw that they can only guarantee data integrity in their health information systems if the application systems communicate with each other. Even more, this communication is the absolute prerequisite for the health information system to fulfill its task of ensuring the necessary data and knowledge logistics.

Thus, application systems need to be able to communicate—they need to be interoperable. Without interoperability, no meaningful integration of application systems within health information systems is possible. Integration means that the application systems are put together in such a way that the resulting information system—as opposed to its parts—displays a new quality. There are various kinds and aspects of integration, as we will discuss later in Sect. 3.8.

Interoperability in general is the ability of two application systems to exchange information with each other and to use the information that has been exchanged. Saying that two application components are interoperable thus indicates that (1) they have interfaces and (2) they are—on the most minimal level of interoperability—basically able to send and receive data via these interfaces.

In this chapter, you will first be given an introduction into various aspects of interoperability within health information systems. Costs of the implementation and maintenance of health information systems can be significantly reduced when the application system's interfaces are based on standards. In Sect. 3.7.2, we will discuss recent interoperability standards and how they support the various aspects of interoperability.

3.7.1 Aspects of Interoperability

How does communication really work? If two application components want to meaningfully communicate, a consensus must exist about four aspects:

- the technical means of data exchange,
- the syntax of the exchanged data and messages,

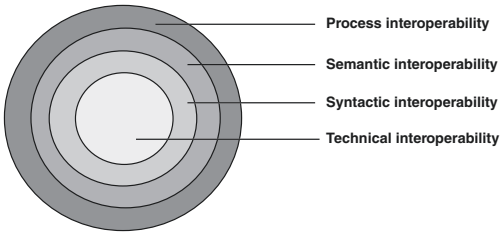


Fig. 3.27 Four aspects of interoperability describing meaningful communication between application systems. (Adapted from [8])

- their semantics (i.e., meaning),
- the organization of communication with a given process.

This leads to four aspects of interoperability: technical interoperability, syntactic interoperability, *semantic interoperability*, and process interoperability (Fig. 3.27).

We will describe interoperability as a property or capability of application systems or of application software products used to install application systems.

Please note that the four aspects of interoperability do not allow dichotomous statements about application systems or application software products. Rather, they are concepts that can exist to varying degrees and relate to different aspects. For example, semantic interoperability may refer to more aspects in one application system than in another application system without completely denying semantic interoperability in the other application system.

3.7.1.1 Technical Interoperability

Technical interoperability, as the most minimal level of interoperability, is the ability of an application system to send or receive "bits and bytes" in a reliable and standardized way and thus possesses respective interfaces and implements protocols. The data may be sent or received as a file, string, or continuous stream. Files and strings of data can be considered messages (Sect. 2.2). Web technologies such as REST application programming interfaces (APIs) provide such technical interoperability.

If the application system wants to send messages to or receive messages from an application system installed on a different computer, these computers need to be physically interoperable (Sect. 3.10.2) and the interfaces have to be able to interact with lower layer communication protocols at the physical tool layer as defined in the ISO/OSI reference model (Sect. 3.10.2).

For example, the *patient administration system* is technically interoperable if it possesses an interface for reliably sending or receiving a message to or from another interoperable application system such as the *RIS*. The message exchange must work regardless of whether both application systems are installed on the same or on different servers.

To be able to consider the structure, content, or meaning of the exchanged messages, higher levels of interoperability are needed.

3.7.1.2 Syntactic Interoperability

An application system is syntactically interoperable if it is technically interoperable and additionally uses a predefined structure for the exchanged messages. Thus, when technically exchanging a data file, string, or stream, specific data elements can be identified, such as beginning and end of a message or of message segments containing data on certain entity types such as "patient," "case," or "finding." Syntactically interoperable application systems are thus able to obtain information from received messages—exchanged data becomes machine-readable.

A quite simple approach to structure exchanged data are data formats such as CSV (comma-separated values) or XML. However, these formats cannot support syntactic interoperability by themselves, as they need additional agreements or rules, for example, on where to find the patient's name or birthdate in the given dataset.

Communication standards such as Health Level 7 Version 2 (HL7 V2), DICOM, and Health Level 7 Clinical Document Architecture (HL7 CDA) provide a data or document format together with clear rules on where to find which data element. Thus, they support syntactic interoperability. All these communication standards are presented in more detail in the next sections.

For example, the *patient administration system* is syntactically interoperable if it is technically interoperable and can use HL7 V2, specifically the message type "administrative admission." Thereby, the *patient administration system* can send Mr. Russo's administrative data to the *RIS*. If the *RIS* is syntactically interoperable as well, it will be able to incorporate these data in its database.

3.7.1.3 Semantic Interoperability

Two application systems are semantically interoperable if they are syntactically interoperable and can exchange information (in the form of messages) that can be meaningfully interpreted by both and processed further.

We can also say that the information transferred is not only "machine-readable" but also "machine-processable." This means that the application system can "understand" the content of messages and act accordingly, for example, by using data for automatic decision support. Beyond mere syntactic agreement between two actors and agreement on data types or structures defined in a reference model for data representation, a prerequisite for this mutual understanding is a homogeneous, jointly agreed definition of the underlying content concepts, for example, a clinical concept such as "systolic blood pressure." Such concepts are called detailed clinical models. To achieve this, two application systems must adhere to such content models which define possible content (e.g., as openEHR archetypes) or actual content (e.g., as HL7 FHIR resources or openEHR templates, Sect. 3.7.2.8).

Modelers who create detailed concept representations which are used for communication between systems or for querying data repositories frequently draw on already existing specialized terminology standards or terminologies such as

SNOMED and LOINC (Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes) to enhance their models. Thus, they support semantic interoperability, as they provide a common and unambiguous vocabulary within shared information models (Sect. 3.8.2) between application systems. LOINC and SNOMED are presented in more detail in Sects. 3.7.2.9 and 3.7.2.10.

An *information model* describes the entity types and their relationships at a conceptual level, independent of any specific implementation or protocols. Information models are intended for designers. In contrast, a data model is defined at a lower level of abstraction. Data models are intended for implementers of databases.

In addition to these two terminologies, also known as nomenclatures, there are numerous classifications in medicine. Classifications are mainly used for statistical purposes, for example, counting similar objects, or for grouping similar treatment cases together for billing purposes. Occasionally, however, they are also used to support semantic interoperability although they were not actually designed for this purpose.

Some examples of classification systems used in health care are presented in Table 3.18.

Please note that semantic interoperability cannot be achieved without technical and syntactic interoperability. The ability to exchange structured messages is the precondition for exchanging meaningful data. If application systems have agreed to exchange, for example, LOINC codes within a message, the receiver can automatically extract these LOINC codes. To be semantically interoperable, the application system must be able to interpret the extracted LOINC code and understand the context in which it is used.

3.7.1.4 Process Interoperability

Finally, process interoperability addresses whether application systems are able to cooperate in certain organizational contexts, especially in certain processes, by meaningfully exchanging information. Such processes may involve, for example, ordering a radiological examination and then sending back the findings or providing a document for use outside one's own facility and then using the document from

Table 3.18 Examples of classification systems used in health care

Classification systems in health care	Concepts represented
NANDA—North American Nursing Diagnosis Association	Nursing diagnosis
NIC—Nursing Intervention Classification	Nursing interventions
NOC—Nursing Outcome Classification	Nursing outcomes
ICF—International Classification of Functioning, Disability, and Health	Health and social status, disabilities
ICD—International Classification of Diseases	Medical diagnosis
ICNP—International Classification of Nursing Practice	Nursing problems, interventions, and outcomes

outside. Process interoperability depends on successful technical, syntactic, and semantic interoperability.

An application system is interoperable with respect to a particular process if it is syntactically interoperable and capable of both sending all messages required for the collaborative processing of that process and correctly interpreting the messages received. Through this communication, the application system must be able to correctly fulfill the role it has been assigned in this process.

The more business-related the processes to be supported are, i.e., the more they correspond to the function in Sect. 3.3, the more semantic interoperability an application system must have.

Process interoperability requires the ability to handle many send and receive operations in a specific way and sequence required by the supported process. Since the communication standards mentioned so far essentially refer to individual sending and receiving operations, regulations are required that relate to the complex organizational context and the processes to be supported. IHE provides such regulations in the form of the so-called profiles. The IHE organization offers to review and certify application software products to determine whether they are interoperable with respect to a specific process and profile.

Although these profiles merely describe the use of existing interoperability standards, they have now taken on a normative character. For this reason, we also describe IHE in Sect. 3.7.2.5.

3.7.2 Interoperability Standards

As said before, the costs of the implementation and maintenance of interfaces within heterogeneous health information systems can be significantly reduced when standards for interoperability are used. Furthermore, mapping processes are usually accompanied by a loss of information or semantics.

Within the logical tool layer of health information systems, there exist standards for syntactic interoperability (also called communication standard or message standards), for semantic interoperability (common information models, terminology standards), and for process interoperability. For technical interoperability there is, for example, the already mentioned REST standard at the logical tool layer. This is complemented by so-called protocols at the physical tool layer, which will be discussed in Sect. 3.10.2.

An abundance of standards exists, some covering more than one aspect of interoperability. Thus, it is not trivial to assign them to the above-mentioned levels.

As the most widely implemented and well-established standards, HL7 V2 messages and DICOM will be described. However, there are more. HL7 CDA is a standard for structuring medical documents and contributes to syntactic interoperability. HL7 FHIR simplifies the exchange of clinical data between heterogeneous application systems using web technologies for data transfer. DICOM allows digital images and related metadata to be shared. IHE in general focuses on workflow processes

and enables process interoperability by providing guidelines on how to apply other standards, for example, DICOM, HL7 V2, and HL7 FHIR. In particular, Integrating the Health care Enterprise Cross-Enterprise Document Sharing (IHE XDS) focuses on content-agnostic, i.e., encapsuled, sharing of documents within and across different health care organizations. For the exchange of bio-signals and vital signs between point-of-care devices, the ISO/IEEE 11073 standard is available. openEHR focuses on the representation of clinical information in detailed clinical models and allows for the creation of a semantically fully defined EHR. SNOMED CT is a universal, multilingual clinical terminology for supporting semantic interoperability that includes more than one million relationships of different types between concepts. LOINC also supports semantic interoperability and is the most widely used standard for measurements and tests in health care, for example, laboratory tests. The Clinical Data Interchange Standards Consortium (CDISC) provides a number of standards, of which ODM-XML (Operational Data Model) is well-known for the representation of clinical research (trial) data and metadata, being widely used in electronic data capture (EDC) systems.

We will now discuss some of these standards in more detail. The list is by no means complete, with new standards emerging and others disappearing frequently, as well as current ones changing.

3.7.2.1 Health Level 7 Version 2 (HL7 V2)

Health Level 7 Version 2 (HL7 V2) [9] is the most-implemented communication standard in hospital information systems for the transfer of messages with data on the entity types "patient" and "case" and the other entity types as described in Sect. 3.2.3, but excluding image data.

HL7 V2 has been maintained by the international standards organization Health Level Seven International (HL7) since the 1990s. It can be best considered as a standard to support mainly syntactic interoperability between application systems.

HL7 describes event types and dedicated message types that are exchanged between application systems when triggered by a specific event.

HL7 assumes that a message is sent from application system A to another application system B through the occurrence of an event of certain event type (Fig. 3.28). The message type that is used for the message depends on the occurring type of event. The message type describes the structure of the sent message and determines the meaning of the individual parts of the message.

Following the arrival of the message, application system B confirms the receipt of the message through a receipt message (ACK) that is sent back to application system A. If a communication server such as in Sect. 3.9.2 is used to send a message, for example, from the *patient administration system* to the *LIS*, then the communication server first takes over the role of the receiving application system B. As

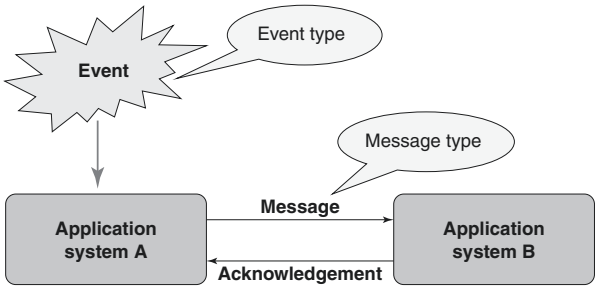


Fig. 3.28 Event-driven communication with HL7 V2

a second step, the communication server, as the sending application component A, sends the message to *LIS*, which takes over the role of B.

HL7 possesses an extensive catalog of event types. For example, A01 describes the event "admission of a patient," A02 "transfer to another organizational unit," A03 "discharge of a patient," and R01 "completion of an examination result."

In addition, HL7 provides a list of standardized message types, such as *admission, discharge, and transfer* (*ADT*), for messages related to admission, discharge, and transfer of patients. Other message types are ORM for a general order message (e.g., ordering a radiological examination), ORU for an unsolicited observational result (e.g., radiology report), and BAR for patient accounting message.

Message types are assigned to event types. For example, if the *LIS* in the laboratory of a hospital registers the occurrence of an event of type R01, then it can send a message of message type ORU.

All HL7 V2 messages are structured into segments, with each segment containing fields. For example, the ADT message contains at least the following segments: message header (MSH), event description (EVN), patient identification (PID), and patient visit information (PV1). With each segment, the relevant information is provided in different fields, each separated by "|". The following example shows a very simplified pattern of an ADT message where a patient is admitted to a specified ward:

```
MSH|SENDING COMPONENT|RECEIVING COMPONENT|DATE OF MESSAGE|
EVN|A01|DATE OF EVENT|
PID|PATIENT IDENTIFIER|NAME^FIRST NAME|BIRTH OF DATE|SEX|
PV1|PATIENT CLASS|WARD ID|DATE OF ADMISSION|
```

Despite this standardization, the use of "plug and play" equipment is often not possible due to various reasons. On the one hand, HL7 leaves users with a certain degree of freedom with regard to semantic interoperability. Consensus must be reached between the communicating application systems, whether, for example, the

choices “male.” “female,” “other,” and “unknown” for gender can be documented as “m”, “f”, “o”, and “u”, with “0”, “1”, “2”, and “3”, or in some other fashion. Furthermore, there also exists the problem of using catalogs of terms. For example, if a *CIS* wants to order a radiological examination, it must have an up-to-date copy of the service catalog of the radiological unit.

On the other hand, manufacturers of application software products sometimes offer HL7 interfaces to their products that cannot send or receive all required event types and/or all necessary message types. In this case, a thorough analysis is necessary before deciding on a purchase.

Finally, there exist different sub-versions of HL7 V2 (2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6) which partly differ in their definition of message content.

When a message was constructed in accordance with the previous explanations, it is left up to the particular implementation how communication between the physical data processing systems will occur. A message can then, for example, be written in a text file or transported by disk or using an FTP file transfer. The exchange format and protocol for technical interoperability at the physical tool layer is to be decided on in every single communication link.

3.7.2.2 Clinical Document Architecture (CDA)

The Clinical Document Architecture (CDA) is an XML-based document standard for storing and exchanging clinical content in the form of documents (e.g., a discharge letter, a lab finding). CDA was developed and is maintained by the HL7 organization and has been accredited by ANSI, the American National Standards Institute.

CDA is one element of the Health Level 7 Version 3 (HL7 V3) standard. HL7 V3 is a message standard developed by the HL7 organization in the 2000s. Unlike HL7 V2, where messages were developed in a pragmatic way, messages in HL7 V3 are derived from an information model, the so-called HL7 Reference Information Model (RIM).

The message encoding within CDA is based on XML, thereby supporting syntactic interoperability. CDA documents are persistent records of medical information (such as diagnostic findings, discharge summaries, or lab reports). CDA supports free text as well as fully structured, machine-processable information, thus also supporting semantic interoperability. Document templates (so-called implementation guidelines) define CDA-based document structures for specific use cases such as a discharge summary or a radiology report. CDA is used in several countries for sharing clinical documents on a national level.

CDA documents comprise two parts: the CDA header that presents metadata on the document such as sending institution, patient name, and type and date of document; and the CDA body that contains the specific information (e.g., the lab result).

The following example (adapted from [10]) shows a very simplified extract of an XML-based lab result message from the CDA body. The elements specify the type of observation (glucose 12 h fasting), the time of the observation

(February 15, 2021, 7.30 a.m.), and the status (the observation is completed). The value for the actual result is shown in the value element (182 mg/dL), and the data type is PQ = physical quantity. The glucose lab value is also given in coded form (1554–5), which is a code from the LOINC system ("LN," Sect. 3.7.2.10). Using LOINC codes supports semantic interoperability. LOINC is uniquely identified by the LOINC Object Identifier (OID) ("2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"). All relevant terminology systems in health care possess a unique OID which allows application systems to exchange the information which terminology systems is being used.

```
<observationEvent>
<id root="2.16.840.1.113883.19.1122.4">
<code code="1554-5" codeSystemName="LN" codeSystem=
"2.16.840.1.113883.6.1" displayName="GLUCOSE^POST 12H"/>
<effectiveTime value="202102150730"/>
<statusCode code="completed"/>
<value xsi:type="PQ" value="182" unit="mg/dL"/>
</observationEvent>
```

Since HL7 V3 is not compatible with HL7 V2 and a "translation" between both formats is not trivial, HL7 V3 is primarily used for transinstitutional message exchange for which version 2 is not well suited. Both HL7 versions can be expected to coexist for a longer time.

3.7.2.3 Health Level 7 Fast Health care Interoperability Resources (HL7 FHIR)

HL7 FHIR (Fast Health care Interoperability Resources) is a recent HL7 standard based on the experience from other HL7 standards that was developed in and has been continuously updated since 2014. The standard is built upon web technologies, most notably REST APIs and simple HTTP operations. The focus is on sharing medical data in terms of transferring them from one application system to another in a standardized manner and thus make medical data portable. FHIR supports technical interoperability (by using web technology standards), syntactic interoperability (via clearly defined resources), and semantic interoperability (via an underlying information model and the use of reference terminologies).

The two basic building blocks are information models called "resources" which represent clinical, identifying, or financial information as well as APIs. The basic resources follow the so-called 80/20 approach, i.e., to meet 80% of the needs by implementing 20% of the requirements. FHIR neither aims to cover all clinical information nor to implement an EHR but pragmatically focuses on frequent, generic use cases. HL7 develops the FHIR specification and manages the resources, for which it also defines a number of rules on how to create them. FHIR provides terminology linking and validation.

To implement specific clinical use cases, generic FHIR resources are adapted into "profiles," or more specific information models. Thus, institutional or local adaptations are implemented, albeit with a trade-off towards loss of interoperability.

Apart from supporting data sharing by providing mechanisms for interfacing different application systems with likely diverging underlying information models and persistence structures, a native "FHIR server" implements a set of APIs and resources and allows for operations, for example, to create, update, or search resources.

3.7.2.4 Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM)

Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM) [11] is an open standard maintained since the 1980s by the DICOM Standards Committee of the National Electrical Manufacturers Association. DICOM addresses the integration requirements of the medical imaging sector.

DICOM supports technical interoperability at the physical tool layer (by defining network protocols such as Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)), syntactic interoperability (by its message formats), and—to some extent—semantic interoperability (by an underlying information model).

DICOM defines not only file and message formats for all types of medical imaging modalities (e.g., computed tomography, digital X-ray, magnetic resonance imaging, ultrasound, nuclear medicine imaging), but also a network protocol at the physical tool layer with a set of well-defined network services. These services permit, for example, an imaging modality to retrieve a "worklist" describing the patients to be examined from the *RIS*, to transmit the images and X-ray dose information created during an examination to the *PACS*, to confirm that the images have been archived successfully (and can thus be deleted locally), and to notify the *RIS* that the imaging procedure has been completed. Other services permit a diagnostic workstation to retrieve current and prior imaging studies, to print a hardcopy on a medical printer, or to store a report and results of measurements performed on the images. Unlike HL7 V2, the DICOM standard defines a complete network protocol stack (based on TCP/IP, Sect. 3.10.2) using efficient binary encoding and, optionally, image compression techniques. The capabilities of two communicating systems (such as the services and encodings supported by both systems) are dynamically negotiated whenever a new network connection is initiated, which permits a tight integration because systems can to some degree adapt to the capabilities of their communication peers. DICOM has gained widespread acceptance in the medical imaging sector as well as in all medical disciplines that rely heavily on digital images (in particular radiology and cardiology).

It should be noted that the *RIS* is also dependent on messages from the *patient administration system* and must also send, for example, billing data there. As discussed above, this communication should be carried out on the basis of HL7 V2. Orders from wards and outpatient units will also most likely reach radiology as HL7 messages, whereas the results and images will come back as DICOM messages. The common initiative IHE (Sect. 3.7.2.5) has taken on the task of settling this complex interplay.

3.7.2.5 Integrating the Health care Enterprise (IHE)—Integration Profiles

Integrating the Health care Enterprise (IHE) is an organization founded by medical professional societies in 1998 together with the health care IT industry [12]. Its aim is to improve the integration of application systems in health care and to check and certify if application software products to be used for the application systems have the process interoperability needed for this integration.

The approach taken by IHE is to analyze typical work processes occurring in health care. IHE identifies the application systems involved in these processes and the information that should be exchanged between these application systems to support the diagnostic and therapeutic processes as good as possible. For example, IHE has defined working processes in the form of "integration profiles" for areas such as cardiology, pathology, radiology, and pharmacy. It has also defined integration profiles for the exchange of clinical documents between different health care facilities (IHE XDS, Sect. 3.7.2.6).

IHE then selects existing standards, i.e., especially HL7 V2 and DICOM, for each "transaction" (information exchange between application systems) and restricts the options offered by these standards for each transaction so that plug-and-play interoperability becomes possible.

By defining work processes, IHE supports process interoperability. Together with standards such as HL7, HL7 CDA, HL7 FHIR, openEHR, and DICOM, it indirectly supports syntactic and semantic interoperability.

IHE furthermore offers comprehensive test software enabling vendors to test their products' interfaces for IHE-conformant process interoperability and organizes large cross-vendor testing events called "IHE Connectathons" (from "connection" and "marathon").

IHE is not a standards body as such but fills a very important gap by selecting the most appropriate set of standards for a typical clinical workflow. It reduces the indeterminacy of the way of interaction, for example, between HL7 V2 and DICOM, by proposing clear rules for their joint use. The resulting technical specifications are published annually as the IHE Technical Frameworks.

Although the profiles are not communication standards, they gain normative character through their increasing dissemination and can be regarded as quasi-standards for the use of communication standards.

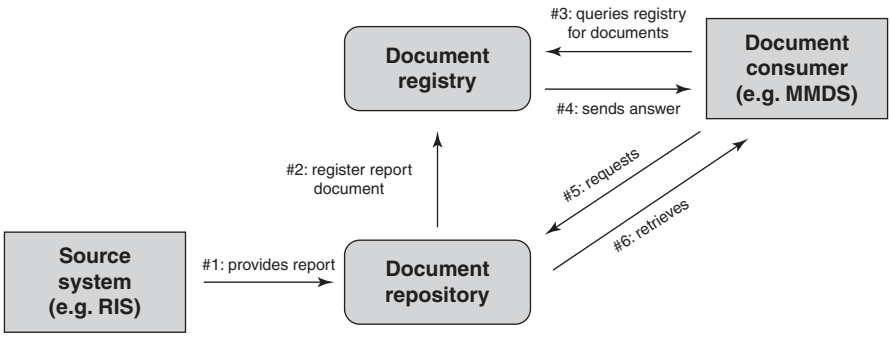


Fig. 3.29 IHE XDS.b actors and interactions (simplified), using the example of a radiology report. #1–#6 indicate order of messages

3.7.2.6 IHE Cross-Enterprise Document Sharing (XDS)

One of the above-mentioned technical frameworks is the IT Infrastructure Framework (ITI), which specifies standards-based implementations for exchanging clinical information. Among other things, it describes how to share documents between different health care organizations. IHE Cross-Enterprise Document Sharing (IHE XDS) is used, for example, for the Austrian ELGA (national EHR) and partly in the German Medical Informatics Initiative.

IHE XDS defines neither the content of these documents nor their internal structure, making it "content-agnostic." Instead, it defines actors along with their interactions and integration profiles of both these components. IHE XDS.b is a prominent integration profile defining affinity domains and actors.

Figure 3.29 shows the actors in this profile and their interactions. A source system (e.g., an *RIS*) provides a new document, for example, a radiology report on Mr. Russo, along with its metadata to the document repository. This document is then registered in a document registry. A document consumer, for example, another clinical application system, such as the *MDMS*, at a different site in the health care network, can query the document registry to locate a relevant document and then query and subsequently retrieve this document from the decentral document repository. Document repositories are usually decentral, while the registry is central.

3.7.2.7 ISO/IEEE 11073

The ISO/IEEE family of standards for the exchange of data between medical devices comprises, for example, a standard for exchanging bio-signals and vital parameters between point-of-care devices [13]. Furthermore, the standard enables a dynamic exchange and reconfiguration of devices and remote control, for example, of infusion pumps.

Medical devices can be considered as combining an application system at the logical tool layer with a dedicated physical data processing system at the physical tool layer, which is often also called an appliance.

ISO/IEEE 11073 can be used, for example, to receive and display data from infusion pumps, respirators, ECGs, etc. on patient monitors in the ICU and for integrating medical devices in operating rooms. It is also used for receiving data from mobile wellness devices (e.g., fitness tracker) and personal health applications (e.g., diabetes app).

ISO/IEEE 11073 supports technical interoperability by defining a complete communication protocol stack and, for example, includes binary encoding of data that is optimized for near-real-time transmission. It also supports syntactic interoperability by defining the formatting and syntax for the exchanged messages.

While ISO/IEEE 11073 enables the exchange of especially vital parameters between the application systems of the medical devices, HL7 V2 and DICOM facilitate the data exchange between the application systems mentioned in Sect. 3.4. However, it is also necessary to be able to exchange data between these worlds. For example, patient demographic data is also required for the devices, and vital parameters should be able to be transferred to the EHR. Gateways are used to realize this communication.

3.7.2.8 open Electronic Health Record (openEHR)

openEHR (open Electronic Health Record) is an open standard specification which focuses on the standardized representation of clinical information in EHRs. It has been maintained by the openEHR Foundation since the early 2000s and supports semantic and syntactic interoperability.

The specification follows a detailed (maximum) clinical information modeling approach and provides a formalism—the archetype definition language (ADL)—to define *archetypes* as the basic building blocks representing clinical concepts. Furthermore, it includes the archetype query language (AQL), which—while syntactically similar to the ubiquitous SQL—operates on clinical concepts and—unlike SQL—requires no knowledge of the persistence data structures (e.g., database schemata).

openEHR follows a two-layer modeling paradigm, fundamentally separating clinical content from technical details. The first layer is the reference model, which describes the smallest logical blocks along with their implementation, for example, data types and structures or basic EHR components. As part of the archetype model, the second layer defines the domain model representation in a maximum approach, meaning that an *archetype* (e.g., blood pressure or height), as the most basic and self-contained clinical concept, should serve all potential uses of this concept within the health care domain.

In other words, archetypes are reusable as semantic building blocks in different contexts without further modification. Within an archetype, each single item or data

instance can be linked or bound to a terminology (e.g., LOINC or SNOMED CT). Archetype classes include "composition", "section," and "entry," whereby the latter again includes "observation," "evaluation," "instruction," "action," and "cluster." To create more complex information units on the basis of these interchangeable building blocks in the context of specific use cases, openEHR uses templates. An operation report, the results of an assessment test, or a form/document could, for example, be represented as templates, each assembled using archetypes just like construction bricks. A number of tools support the collaborative creation of openEHR archetypes and templates by clinicians and modelers, their governance, and the automated creation of software artifacts from them, which can be used in application systems of all kinds.

openEHR enables the definition of a complete EHR along with methods to structure the EHR and manipulate its contents, for example, by writing (adding) compositions to the record. It also includes versioning. The open specification includes openly available REST APIs for programmers and vendors and supports several implementation/representation formats. Finally, it makes it possible to build a full, vendor-independent EHR within and across health care facilities.

3.7.2.9 Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine Clinical Terms (SNOMED CT)

SNOMED was developed in the 1970s and is maintained by SNOMED International, a non-profit international standards organization. SNOMED CT (Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine Clinical Terms), first published in 2003, is currently the most comprehensive terminology in the health domain and is used in many countries worldwide. Users must obtain a license for use. The nomenclature aims to support the development of high quality, precisely defined content by standardizing medical terms and by providing ontological components such as associations and relationships between encoded concepts and entities.

SNOMED CT supports the semantic interoperability of application systems. It can be used for encoding and exchanging machine-processable data. SNOMED CT codes (like other codes from terminology standards) can be embedded in information models of other standards such as HL7 FHIR or openEHR.

SNOMED CT consists of concepts, descriptions, and relationships. A concept represents a unique clinical concept such as diabetes mellitus (disorder), which has several children concepts, such as diabetes mellitus type 1 or diabetes mellitus type 2, and so on (Fig. 3.30). Each further level in the hierarchy represents a more specific concept (partitive or taxonomic relationship). Associations between concepts may be of different types, for example, is-a (diabetes mellitus is a disorder of the endocrine system) or finding-site (structure of the endocrine system). SNOMED CT also contains synonyms and is available in multiple languages.

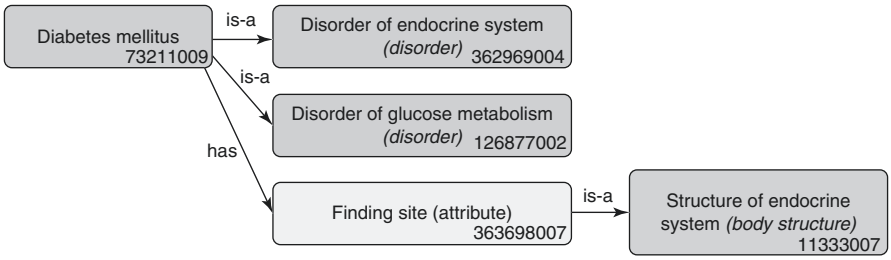


Fig. 3.30 SNOMED CT example of associations between concepts. (Taken from the SNOMED CT browser [14]; use of SNOMED CT is with the permission of SNOMED International)

3.7.2.10 Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes (LOINC)

Logical Observation Identifiers Names and Codes (LOINC) is a widely used terminology system for health measurements, tests such as laboratory and clinical tests, and observations. LOINC was developed in the 1990s and is maintained by the Regenstrief Institute in the United States [15].

The system defines unique names, codes, and identifiers that can be used in application systems or within communication messages such as HL7 or DICOM messages as well as in CDA documents (Sect. 3.7.2.2 shows an example of this), openEHR archetypes, or FHIR profiles. LOINC thus supports the semantic interoperability of application systems.

LOINC codes are constituted of six components, for example, LOINC code 1554-5:

1. component (analyte): what is measured, for example, Glucose^post 12H CFst,
2. property: the attribute or characteristic measured, for example, mass concentration (MCnc),
3. time: the point or interval of time,
4. system (specimen), for example, serum/plasma,
5. scale: type of value, for example, numerical quantitative (Qn), such as "125",
6. method (optional): classification of the measurement/observation method.

The LOINC "long common name" for this code example is "Glucose [Mass/volume] in Serum or Plasma --12 hours fasting."

3.7.2.11 Clinical Data Interchange Standards Consortium (CDISC)

The Clinical Data Interchange Standards Consortium (CDISC) spans a wide variety of standards, which are mainly—but not exclusively—designed for and used in clinical studies and trials in the pharmaceutical industry. CDISC standards were developed in the late 1990s and are maintained by the non-profit Clinical Data Interchange Standards Consortium.

CDISC standards are free to use and cover different domains and parts of the complete process to develop clinical products such as new drugs. The use of some of these standards is mandatory for reporting and submitting results from clinical trials to regulatory authorities, for example, to the FDA (U.S. Food and Drug Administration).

Common CDISC standards include the "foundational standards," which cover all necessary processes within research studies. Along the evolution of a research study, these standards cover planning (model for planning: Protocol Representation Model), data acquisition (model for data collection: Clinical Data Acquisition Standards Harmonization), organizing and managing data (e.g., Study Data Tabulation Model (SDTM), model for Questionnaires, Ratings, and Scales), and for data analysis (Analysis Data Model).

SDTM is the standard in which study data are submitted to regulatory authorities. Apart from these foundational standards, CDISC also supports a controlled terminology and includes widely used standards for data exchange, such as ODM-XML.

By employing these CDISC standards, researchers can achieve syntactic and semantic interoperability, share their data and metadata, and use a variety of software solutions (e.g., different EDC systems and analytical tools) along the study process.

3.8 Logical Tool Layer: Types of Integration

Interoperable application systems can be joined together, i.e., integrated, in such a way that their combination has new properties that the application systems did not have on their own. Integration is a union of parts making a whole, which—as opposed to its parts—displays a new quality.

Integrating application systems lead to integrated health information systems. An integrated computer-based health information system typically offers better support for functions and business processes than a non-integrated information system consisting of isolated application systems. In non-integrated information systems, users may, for example, need to manually transfer data from one application system to another, or inconsistencies between data representations and semantics may exist that hinder the multiple use of data.

There are various ways of integrating application systems, resulting in different types of integration. Each type of integration leads to specific new properties of the information system. In this section, you will learn about the following types of integration in more detail:

- data integration,
- semantic integration,
- user interface integration,
- context integration,

- feature integration,
- process integration.

Note that the basic prerequisite for all types of integration is that the application systems to be integrated must be technically and syntactically interoperable so that communication is possible at all.

While interoperability makes a statement about a single application system or about a single application software product and its specific properties and capability, integration always refers to a set of application systems and the way they are connected in a specific information system.

3.8.1 Data Integration

Data integration is achieved in integrated health information systems when data that have been recorded and stored once in one application component are made available in a coherent and uniform way wherever they are needed, i.e., in other application components, without having to be reentered. Data integration has two effects:

- Data on different entity types being recorded and stored in different application systems can be combined for joint analysis and use in one particular application system.
- New data on entity types need to be recorded, changed, deleted, or otherwise edited just once—even if the data are to be used in several application components.

In DB^1 architectures, i.e., architectures with a central database, data integration is comparatively easy to achieve. *Open platforms* are a technology that can be used to implement this even in (AC^n, V^n) architectures (Sect. 3.9.3).

In case of a decentralized DB^n architecture, data integration and a uniform view on the data is more challenging. Transaction management and communication servers are integration technologies suitable to meet this challenge (Sects. 3.9.1 and 3.9.2).

Data integration helps to increase data consistency (Sect. 3.5) and to reduce unnecessary double data entry:

Assume that Mr. Russo was treated in the cardiology department, and a detailed medical history was collected and entered into the *MDMS*. Now Mr. Russo's health is deteriorating dramatically, and he must be moved to the ICU of the same hospital. If the medical history needs to be documented again, in case the information from the cardiology department cannot be accessed, there would be no data integration. If the ICU can assess and add data to the existing medical history, regardless of where and in which application system the already existing data was entered, data integration is achieved. In this example, the medical history may be sent from the *MDMS* to the *PDMS*, either directly or via respective integration technology and tools (Sect. 3.9).

To support data integration with non-computer-based application components, computer-based application components need to be able to print out data or to scan data such as paper-based documents (e.g., signed patient consent documents or a paper-based order entry form).

3.8.2 Semantic Integration

Like data integration, *semantic integration* is concerned with data. Semantic integration is achieved when semantically interoperable application systems actually use the same system of concepts, i.e., they interpret data the same way. For example, when the sending application system uses the abbreviation "GOT" for a lab value, but the receiving application system does not know this code and uses "ASAT" for the same concept instead, then semantic integration is not achieved.

To achieve semantic integration of application systems, the application systems must agree on the way that information is represented, for example, within a hospital or a network of care facilities. This means that there needs to be an agreement on a common information model, for example, on Mr. Russo's blood pressure. This agreement comprises two aspects: We need to agree on how to actually represent the data values (e.g., systolic and diastolic values) by data. And we also need to agree on the underlying clinical concept and represent metadata such as the context of the measurements (resting blood pressure or exercise test), the measurement method (cuff or intra-arterial on an ICU), and so on. Contextual information can make a huge difference. For example, for a *clinical decision support system (CDSS)*, which tries to interpret the blood pressure values to determine whether the value is normal or abnormal in a specific situation. Development of such information models is time-consuming multi-professional work, and agreeing on and maintaining them requires effort and strict governance of models. In the long term, however, these information models reduce tedious and costly mapping work and maintenance of mapping tables between application systems. Furthermore, it enables the reuse of data in contexts that differ from the original scenario in which the data was recorded, for example, for research or clinical decision support (CDS).

Thus, for semantic integration, the application systems must agree on some common terminologies. However, using terminology systems such as LOINC, SNOMED, or ICD (Sect. 3.7.1.3) does not guarantee semantic integration. Instead, for real semantic integration, application systems must also agree on common information models. Such common information models contain a set of abstract concepts (e.g., patient, case, observation, entry, series of pictures) which are close to our concept of entity types and their relationships among each other. They thus try to formally represent the reality of health care through a set of concepts and their relationships. If two application components agree on the same information model, exchange of information and thus semantic integration are facilitated. Both openEHR (Sect. 3.7.2.7) and HL7 FHIR (Sect. 3.7.2.3) enable the creation of common information models, derived from a reference model.

Semantic integration can be elegantly and thoroughly supported by health data dictionaries. Such medical data dictionaries are central catalogs of health-related concepts and terms that offer the possibility of representing the semantic relationships among all data stored in a health information system and of linking that local vocabulary to internationally standardized nomenclatures and knowledge sources ("terminology linking" in openEHR). Such health data dictionaries (sometimes also called Medical Data Dictionaries, MDD) can be independent application components or part of existing application components.

3.8.3 User Interface Integration

User interface integration is guaranteed when different application systems represent data and organize their user interfaces in a unified way. For example, different application systems should display the patient's name always at the same place on their user interface. Icons for patients should code gender with the same colors. Alerts and warnings should be presented using the same colors and layout. Or the birthdate of a patient should also be displayed in the same format (e.g., yyyy-mm-dd).

The responsibility for integrating application systems in such a way that user interface integration is achieved lies with *tactical management of information systems* (Sect. 4.4). Especially at the specification stage of a new application software product, the relevant user interface requirements must be clearly described. This can be supported by user interface guidelines that are commissioned by standardization, governmental agencies, or leading health IT vendors.

3.8.4 Context Integration

Even if data, semantic, and user interface integration is ensured, problems can arise when users use multiple application systems on one workstation, as the user and patient context may become lost through the change from one application system to another. *Context integration* is achieved if the context is preserved when the application system is changed. Or, more generally, the aim is that a task that has already been executed once for a certain purpose, such as login to a component or selecting a patient, does not need to be repeated again in the information system in order to achieve the same purpose.

Assume that the nurse Peter Smith first wants to order a lab examination for the patient Jakub Russo at his workstation before documenting certain nursing procedures. The nurse would first log in to the *CPOE system* and create the user context "Peter Smith." Then Peter searches for the patient Jakub Russo and orders the requested examination for him. This creates the patient context "Jakub Russo." For the next task, the nurse would have to start the *NMDS*. Without context integration, the user context "Peter Smith" would not be created in this application system

automatically and Peter would have to log in again. And without context integration, Peter would have to again select the patient and restore the patient context "Jakub Russo" before being able to document the nursing procedures. Context integration would be achieved when both login (then also called "single sign-on") and patient selection (maybe called "single patient look-up") do not have to be repeated again, even when changing the application system.

Health Level 7 provides a standard for single sign-on and single patient lockup, called CCOW (Clinical Context Object Workgroup).

3.8.5 Feature Integration

Feature integration is achieved when features needed in more than one application system are implemented only once and can be invoked by other application systems.

In a hospital, for example, *coding of diagnoses and procedures* is a feature that should be supported by the *patient administration system*, the *OMS*, the *RIS*, and the *LIS*. The health information system would display feature integration with respect to *coding of diagnoses and procedures* if only one application component (e.g., the *patient administration system*) provides the features needed for coding diagnoses and procedures and all other application components can invoke and use these features.

Feature integration reduces the need to exchange data between application systems, reduces the danger of inconsistent data, and decreases the need to train users on multiple application systems.

On the technical level, feature integration can be supported by providing the use of features as services within an SOA (Sect. 3.9.3). Those services can be invoked by other application systems.

Overall, feature integration is an important quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it allows features to be shared among application systems.

3.8.6 Process Integration

An integrated health information system should support the business processes effectively. From this perspective, *process integration* is indeed the overall vision of integration within heterogeneous information systems, i.e., especially in (AC^n, V^n) architectures.

Process integration is guaranteed when business processes are effectively supported by a set of cooperating application systems showing process interoperability.

Typically, as we have seen, functions of a health care setting are supported by many different, yet interrelated application systems. A user must therefore use different application systems for one task.

For example, while writing the radiological report on Mr. Russo, the radiologist must work with the *CIS*, the *RIS*, and the *PACS*. To enable effective work in this process, these application systems should interoperate as transparently and smoothly as possible. If the radiologist receives the best possible support in report writing, without any interruption due to the heterogeneity of application systems, then we can say the information system is process integrated.

Obviously, process integration builds to some extent on the other integration qualities such as data integration (*CIS*, *RIS*, and *PACS* are able to exchange and jointly use patient diagnosis data without the need to reenter it), user interface integration (e.g., *CIS* and *RIS* have comparable user interfaces), context integration (e.g., when shifting between *CIS* and *RIS*, user patient context is maintained), semantic integration (e.g., procedures documented in the *RIS* are automatically understood by the *patient administration system*), and feature integration (the *RIS* invokes the billing function of the *patient administration system*). Good process integration builds on this, supports comprehensive information logistics, and prevents users from transcription and media breaks.

Process integration can be achieved, among other things, through the adoption of IHE profiles (Sects. 3.7.2.5 and 3.7.2.6) on a systematic basis.

Overall, process integration is an important quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it describes a situation where different application systems interoperate in an optimal way so that business processes are best supported.

3.9 Logical Tool Layer: Integration Technologies and Tools

To achieve data integrity (Sect. 3.5) and to support various types of integration (Sect. 3.8) in AC^n architectures, specific integration technologies are available. These integration technologies support interoperation of application systems and efficient and secure health information exchange between health care providers, and in some cases also with patients.

In this section, you will learn about transaction management, communication servers, vendor-neutral archives, and SOAs as examples of this kind of integration technologies.

3.9.1 Transaction Management

Transaction management ensures that every update of correct data in one or more databases will lead to another state in which the data in these database(s) are still correct. This turns out to be not trivial, especially for complex update operations, the so-called transactions. It is even more complicated in settings of more than one database system, i.e., in DB^n architectures.

Transaction management guarantees data integrity and especially data **C**onsistency through **A**tomicity, **I**solation, and **D**urability of any transaction (ACID conditions). Atomicity guarantees that either all of the tasks of a transaction are performed or none of them are; isolation makes intermediary updates of data inside the transaction invisible; and durability stands for persistence of the transaction's results.

The "2-phase commit protocol" was developed for transaction management in DB^n architectures. Among other things, this protocol is intended to ensure data consistency in case of data redundancy. In the initial phase, it checks if the transaction can be carried out by all affected application systems. Only if the changes are possible everywhere, they are actually carried out in a second phase in all application systems. To carry out the protocol, the application systems must be tightly coupled by *synchronous communication*, and the database schemata of all involved database systems must be known. For an application system in a health information system, this means that an interface must be provided where both updates and the cancellation of these updates are possible. This is not the case for commercial application components available today. Generally, the individual database schemata of each component are also not known. Due to these reasons, the 2-phase commit protocol to ensure data consistency has usually not yet been implemented within DB^n architectures of health information systems.

Nevertheless, to guarantee data consistency, the following more asynchronous approach is typically chosen within a health information system:

For every redundantly stored entity type, one application component is determined as the *primary application system* for this entity type. Thus, data on entities of this type can only be inserted, deleted, or changed in this primary application system. For example, the *patient administration system* is typically the primary application system for the entity types "patient" and "case." Consequently, data on patients and cases can be created, deleted, or changed only in the *patient administration system*. Therefore, this application system is sometimes called the "leading system."

Transactions in a database of the primary application system are carried out without regard to whether the corresponding operations can also be (immediately) carried out in the databases of the other affected application components. *Patient admission* is thereby carried out through the *patient administration system* independent of, for example, what is going on in the *RIS*. It may happen that the *RIS* is not capable of inserting corresponding data on the patient or the case that were sent by the *patient administration system* into its database at the same point in time. The *RIS* is then obliged to catch up on database operations at a later point in time.

3.9.2 Communication Server

A quite simple way of communication between application systems is the asynchronous exchange of messages. *Asynchronous communication* means that the application system sending a message will continue its tasks without interruption even when awaiting a response message from the communication partner. Message

exchange generates queues of messages that have to be managed. Besides direct, point-to-point communication between two application systems, tools for managing message queuing can also be used. These so-called queue managers support the sending of messages from the sender to the receiver and the distribution of a single message to numerous receivers (multicasting).

In health information systems, queue managers are typically referred to as communication servers. A communication server is an application system standing at the center of the logical tool layer of a health information system (Fig. 3.31). This architectural principle is also called star architecture (Sect. 3.6.4) and can be found in many health information systems.

Generally speaking, a *communication server* is an application system used for the asynchronous receiving, buffering, and sending of messages. It can also be used to transform messages and monitor the traffic between application systems and may provide intermediate storage of messages in case the intended recipient of the messages is not yet available (e.g., system down). An application system can send a message to the communication server over its communication interface. The communication server will then relay the message to one address or many addresses (multicasting) when these application systems are ready to receive. In the meantime, the communication server buffers the sent messages in a queue (message queuing). In the case that the receiving application system is awaiting messages in a format based on a different interoperability standard than the sending application system sends, the communication server can transform the sent message. The application systems have to provide communication interfaces for sending messages to the communication server and to receive messages from it.

In this way, the communication server is a tool to support data integration in a health information system of (DB^n, AC^n) architecture. Furthermore, communication servers prevent (DB^n, AC^n) styled health information systems from *spaghetti architectures* and support CP^1 architectures. Application components can be more easily exchanged, thus supporting the expandability of the health information system's architecture.

Some communication servers may also provide *synchronous communication*. For this, the sending application system will pause from the time that it sends a message to the time that it receives the respective answer. In this way, communication servers can be used to invoke services as described in Sect. 3.9.4 and to provide feature integration as well.

In health information systems with DB^n architecture and redundant data storage, the application components store the data needed for supporting their functions by themselves. This holds especially for data on the entity types "patient" and "case." Consequently, the communication server is used to ensure that every application system will find these data in its database system whenever the data is needed without having to request this data from the *patient administration system*. The following example describes how the *patient administration system* and the communication server can be integrated based on asynchronous communication and use of the interoperability standard HL7 (Sect. 3.7.2.1) in order to ensure data integration as well as data consistency regarding the entity types "patient" and "case":

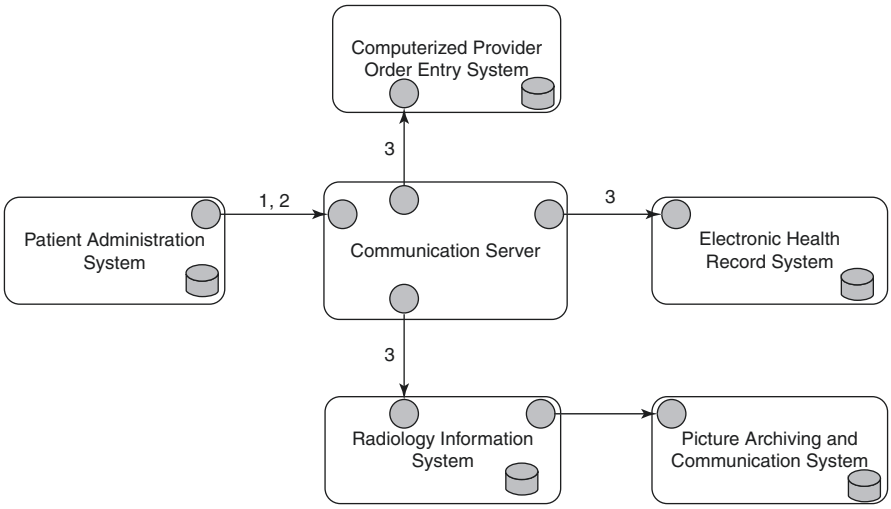


Fig. 3.31 Architectural style with multiple application systems, each with its own database system, using 3LGM^2 symbols. A communication server links the application components

Mr. Russo has just been admitted to Ploetzberg Hospital in the administration unit. Since the *patient administration system* is the primary application system for the entity types "patient" and "case," *patient admission* is exclusively supported by the *patient administration system* (Sect. 3.9.1). Even before Mr. Russo leaves the administration unit to go to the cardiology ward, the following messages are exchanged between the application systems (Fig. 3.31 highlights steps 2 and 3):

1. The *patient administration system* creates a message that indicates that Mr. Russo was just admitted to Ploetzberg Hospital (event called "A01" by HL7). This message includes data on the entity types "patient" and "case" using a predefined standard (such as HL7).
2. The *patient administration system* sends this message to the communication server.
3. The communication server multicasts this message to all application systems that may need data on the entity types "patient" and "case" during the Mr. Russo's stay (e.g., *CPOE system*, *EHRS*, *RIS*). Usually, nearly all application systems of health information systems need this administrative data.
4. All application components receiving the message will store the data on the entity types "patient" and "case" for Mr. Russo in their own database system in order to have them available in case they are needed.

A similar process takes place when administrative data on Mr. Russo is updated. If his address changes, for example, this is first documented in the *patient administration system*. This application system then sends a message on this update to the

communication server (2) that multicasts this message again (3), as described above. Since the *patient administration system* is the primary application system of patient and case, all updates of related data must be performed using the *patient administration system*.

By following these processes, data consistency is provided and application systems will have actual data available in case they are needed. Above all, users in the radiology department, for example, can always find the administrative data on their patients in their *RIS* without the *RIS* having to make a request to the *patient administration system* beforehand.

3.9.3 Open Platforms and Vendor-Neutral Archives

An application system is called *open platform* if it stores patient data based on open specifications and open information models and provides open Application Programming Interfaces (API) for storing and querying these data. "Open" in this context means that the specifications, information models, and interfaces are published and can be used by any vendor.

An *open platform* follows the idea that both data and metadata are stored in a centralized database, with strict separation between application logic and data storage.

The advantage of the *open platform* approach is that other application systems with different functionalities from different vendors can directly work on the same database (DB^1 architecture). This facilitates both *data integrity* (Sect. 3.5) and *data integration* (Sect. 3.8.1) even in V^n architectures. The interoperability standard openEHR (Sect. 3.7.2.8) provides a universal, agreed-upon information model.

Open platforms were first used in medical image archives and *PACS,* then typically called vendor-neutral archives (VNAs).

For example, after admitting Mr. Russo to the cardiology ward, blood samples have to be analyzed at the laboratory and radiological images have to be taken. Using an *open platform* as in Fig. 3.24, the LIS and the RIS would be able to access the same database as the patient administration system even if they are from different vendors.

To support communication between *open platforms* and other application systems, standards such as HL7 FHIR, DICOM, or IHE profiles are used (Sect. 3.7.2).

While an *open platform* may seem difficult to introduce in a long-grown environment of different application systems with their own proprietary information models, it reduces the ever-increasing cost of mappings on the communication server side whenever a new application system is introduced. It also eliminates costly mapping processes when migrating patient data from a previous to a new application system. Open APIs also enable new vendors to integrate their application software products in given information systems by using the agreed information models and thus enable a growing "application ecosystem."

3.9.4 Service-Oriented Architectures

Service-oriented architectures (SOAs) represent architectural styles of health information systems that provide the means and tools to use services for the collaboration of application systems. A service is an encapsulated feature provided by an application system in order to be invoked by other application systems (Sect. 2.9).

This results in synchronous communication between application systems, meaning that the process in the invoking application system, after starting the communication with the providing application system, is paused until a response from the partner is obtained.

The *patient administration system* may, for example, store data on the entity type "patient" and may provide a service for retrieving name, birthdate, and address of certain patients. In this case, the patient data is called a resource. Other application systems can access this resource by invoking the retrieve service and handing over a certain PIN. They will then obtain the desired data—if access is granted. Another service may be provided by application systems allowing a message to be sent to these application systems by invoking this service and handing over the message.

Therefore, this technology is very good at achieving data integration and ensuring data integrity. In particular, it facilitates the construction of DB[1] architectures using VNAs.

Moreover, the *patient administration system* could provide a service for *patient admission*. The *RIS* could thus invoke this admission service, handing over data on a certain person who should be admitted to the health care facility. As a result, the *patient administration system* executes all necessary actions needed to perform *patient admission*. With such more complex services, feature integration can be achieved in addition to data integration.

When using World Wide Web technology, the resources are identified by certain Uniform Resource Identifiers (URIs). Application systems can provide basic services for GET, PUT, POST, and DELETE operations on their resources by offering the so-called RESTful APIs. For health information systems, resources as well as services for operating on the resources are standardized by FHIR (Sect. 3.7.2.3).

3.10 Physical Tool Layer

Application components are logical tools, and they cannot exist without physical tools as a basis. In an information system, we can describe this basis with the physical data processing systems at the physical tool layer. As stated earlier, physical data processing systems can be human actors, non-computer-based physical tools, or computer systems.

If application components that exchange data and interact with each other are installed on different physical data processing systems at the physical tool layer,

these physical data processing systems have to communicate as well, i.e., integration is also needed there.

We will now have a closer look at typical computer-based physical data processing systems and their integration. You will learn about *physical interoperability* and integration and how challenges in terms of availability and security of application systems and data are addressed in the design of communication networks and the construction and operation of data centers.

3.10.1 Physical Data Processing Systems

3.10.1.1 Servers

Servers are used to provide sophisticated features to clients (Sect. 3.10.1.2). Servers can run databases (database server), they can run the back-end part of application software products (application server), or they can support printing (printer server). Terminal servers run the front-end part of application software products, which traditionally have been implemented on and run by clients. If terminal servers are used, mere terminals (Sect. 3.10.1.2) for displaying output and receiving input are sufficient. Further server types are name servers (for domain name system (DNS) management), DHCP servers (for dynamic IP assignment), mail servers (for email services), and web servers (for website management).

There is a strong trend to virtualize servers. A "real" (i.e., physical) server can simulate lots of the so-called virtual servers. Every virtual server runs a particular instance of an operating system and can be used to implement application software products. Thus, these virtual servers behave nearly identical to physical servers. This approach makes computing power in a data center much more flexible and scalable.

Virtual servers also result from coupling physical servers in order to maximize availability through redundancy. These kinds of coupled servers are called a server cluster. It makes sense to localize the members of the cluster at different sites of the data center (Sect. 3.10.3).

3.10.1.2 Clients and Personal Devices

Clients comprise all data processing tools that are immediately available to the various user groups within a hospital, for example:

- stationary personal computers (PCs) located at defined places in a health care facility (e.g., the PC in the ward office),
- terminals (also called thin clients) which have only functionalities for displaying and for data entry but have no storing capability,
- mobile computers such as laptops, tablets, or smartphones used for mobile information access.

Mobile devices are especially important in health care settings because devices must provide both data and support of functions wherever patients are. This applies not only to health care facilities, but especially to the patient's home environment.

In medicine, there is a plethora of other personal devices in use to capture data from and about individuals, making it available for further processing in application systems. Sensors for recording vital signs such as heart rate, blood oxygen saturation levels or an ECG are not only used in the ICU of a hospital. Smartphones and smart watches also have such sensors and can provide corresponding data. These personal devices also provide sensors for personal identification, such as fingerprinting or retinal eye scanning. Smart cards, which are connected via special readers, are also used for identification.

Overall, large health care facilities such as a 1500-bed university medical center will have about 4000 clients (PCs) and 3000 mobile devices. This causes not only investment costs, but also enormous maintenance costs. The energy consumption of these devices is also considerable.

If we assume a power consumption of approx. 300 watts for one PC, this results in a total consumption of approx. 1.2 MW (megawatts) for all PCs together. The mobile devices' energy consumption must be added.

3.10.1.3 Storage

Health information systems must store not only large amounts of data but also very important data that may be crucial for the patients' health and life. This requires storage devices of high capacity and high reliability. The storage media that are used range from magnetic discs for random access to magnetic tapes and optical media for backup and archiving.

Storage devices, regardless of the media used, are not specifically attached to and exclusively used by certain servers. Moreover, storage area networks (SANs) provide storage services of different kinds to all servers integrated in this network. This technology allows the storage capacities to be scaled up or down quite easily depending on actual storage needs. Additionally, SANs help to maximize availability through redundancy. It makes sense to localize the members of an SAN at different sites of the data center (Sect. 3.10.3).

3.10.2 Physical Interoperability and Integration by Communication Networks

The types of integration introduced in Sect. 3.8 relate to the logical tool layer and, more precisely, to sets of application systems. Let us supplement this catalog of integration types with *physical integration*.

Physical integration refers to a set of physical data processing systems and is guaranteed if the necessary physical communication is possible for each required data exchange. This requires having only one computer, for example, a mainframe,

hosting all application systems or having physical interoperability of the physical data processing systems to be connected. For this, the devices must have hardware interfaces for data exchange. In other words, physical interoperability of physical data processing systems is a prerequisite for technical interoperability of application systems that are installed on different physical data processing systems (Sect. 3.7.1.1). In other words, physical integration between physical data processing systems is a prerequisite for any kind of integration between application components.

Communication networks can be implemented by optical fibers, copper cables, and wireless LAN technologies. Different communication protocols such as Ethernet or Token Ring can be used.

The ISO/OSI reference model provides a framework for describing communication between computers at seven levels. Standards for the respective communication protocols are available for each level. With respect to the three-layer graph-based metamodel ($3LGM^2$), these seven levels interconnect the physical with the logical tool layer of a health information system. Level 7 may be considered the logical tool layer which corresponds to the name of the communication standard HL7 (Sect. 3.7.2.1). A set of protocols for each of the seven levels is called a protocol stack.

In order to be able to use the mobile devices required in medicine, appropriate wireless networks are necessary. Wireless local area networks (WLAN) are commonly used inside buildings, both in health care facilities and in private environments. Outside buildings, for example to connect ambulance vehicles but also to feed a limited campus of a health care facility, the same mobile networks that are also used for mobile telephony are used. Currently, fifth-generation mobile networks (5G) are being introduced. These enable high data transmission rates but require a close-meshed network of antennas. The health effects of the associated electromagnetic fields are subject to controversial debate.

The network that exclusively connects the physical data processing systems of a facility is also called intranet. Extensive security measures are required at the interface between the intranet and the internet to prevent unauthorized access to the physical data processing systems within the intranet from outside the facility. These include, in particular, the so-called firewalls. Firewalls are physical data processing systems on which incoming and outgoing communication is monitored by software.

To optimize security, the intranet itself is also partitioned into further security zones. Depending on the need for protection and the permitted user group of application systems, the physical data processing systems on which these application systems are installed are assigned to such security zones. Communication into and out of a security zone is also monitored using dedicated hardware.

3.10.3 Data Centers

The servers must fulfill special requirements related to availability, stability, performance, maintainability, and redundancy. For health care facilities, this can only be economically achieved if the servers are centralized in a data center.

The reliability of the data center, with all its equipment and physical data processing systems, is the very basis for the reliability of the health information system as a whole. Although system stability of application components deals with the quality of the software used, system stability must be enhanced by redundancy. Redundancy is not needed at the logical tool layer, however, but at the physical tool layer.

This requires data centers that provide at least two redundant sites as well as mirrored servers and storage devices at each site, a stable energy supply, high-capacity air conditioning, server rooms that are burglar-proof and disaster-proof, and effective means for fire protection. Even if an information management department ensures an effective backup, the continuous operation of the data center through appropriate redundancy is of utmost importance.

Data center staff needs software tools for supervising proper operation of servers, communication network components, PCs and terminals, and the application components running on top of these physical tools.

For two redundant sites of the data center housing the servers of a large academic center, one must expect an energy consumption of 0.5 MW. This energy consumption results not only from the power consumption of the servers but also from the energy requirements of the air conditioning systems, which must dissipate the electrical energy converted into heat. Consideration should therefore be made as to whether the waste heat from the computers can be used for other useful purposes such as heating the facility's domestic water.

These and the previously mentioned figures on client energy consumption alone make it clear that medical informatics specialists, and information managers in particular, not only have responsibility for good information systems but also for the impact of information systems on the global climate.

Not only the high energy consumption, but also the major technical challenges involved in operating a data center, suggest that smaller health care facilities in particular should consider whether servers in the cloud, and thus commercial data centers, can be used instead of own data centers. However, this requires stable and sufficiently powerful communication links. In addition, the data protection regulations of the respective country must be observed. Conversely, large health care facilities can consider whether their own data center can be offered to smaller surrounding facilities for use. The large facility could then become a cloud provider for the smaller facilities.

3.10.4 Data Security

Data security means protecting the data of an information system both from destruction and loss and from illegal use by unauthorized persons. This is particularly important in health information systems for two reasons. Firstly, health data is highly sensitive and represents intimate information about individuals that must never fall into the hands of third parties without the consent of the individuals concerned. Secondly, a health care facility is at risk of becoming completely incapacitated if the

data in the patients' health records can no longer be accessed. This can cost lives. Recent cases of the so-called ransomware attacks on hospitals, for example, illustrate the associated dangers. In ransomware attacks, data is encrypted by criminals and a key for decryption is only made available after payment of a ransom.

It is therefore imperative to invest in protective measures at all levels. For example, as mentioned above, communication networks must be protected through their structure and suitable hardware and software, data backups must be performed and the data copy must be protected against attacks, and highly qualified personnel must be available. We can only hint at the required know-how in this textbook and therefore refer to the relevant, current technical literature and the training and continuing education programs on data security.

In health care facilities, it is the responsibility of the management of information systems to ensure data security, while corporate management must provide the necessary financial resources for this purpose.

In the private environment, this responsibility lies with the individuals themselves. It is the task of politics, but also of the professional societies for medical informatics, to ensure that people are informed, educated, and advised.

3.11 Examples

3.11.1 A Reference Model for the Domain Layer of Hospital Functions

The reference model for the domain layer of hospital information systems consists of the subset of functions and entity types described in Sects. 3.2.3 and 3.3 that are relevant for hospitals. The reference model focuses on the activities in *patient care*. Thus, the main enterprise function is *patient care*, and there are maintenance functions supporting *patient care* such as *supply management*, *scheduling and resource allocation*, *hospital administration*, *hospital management*, and *research and teaching* (Fig. 3.32).

Furthermore, the enterprise functions in that reference model bear a relation to each other by entity types which they can update or interpret. To define entity types within the reference model of the domain layer, the HL7-RIM[5] was used.

The Reference Model for the Domain Layer of Hospital Information Systems is available as a 3LGM^2 model[6] and for this reason can be immediately used for modeling hospital information systems. Following the definition of reference models in Sect. 2.13, the Reference Model of the Domain Layer can be used as a model pattern for the domain layer of hospital information systems and, additionally, can help

[5] http://www.hl7.org/Library/data-model/RIM/modelpage_mem.htm.

[6] http://www.3lgm2.de//Modelle/Referenzmodelle_und_Beispielmodelle/RM_DomainLayer_version2_English.z3lgm.

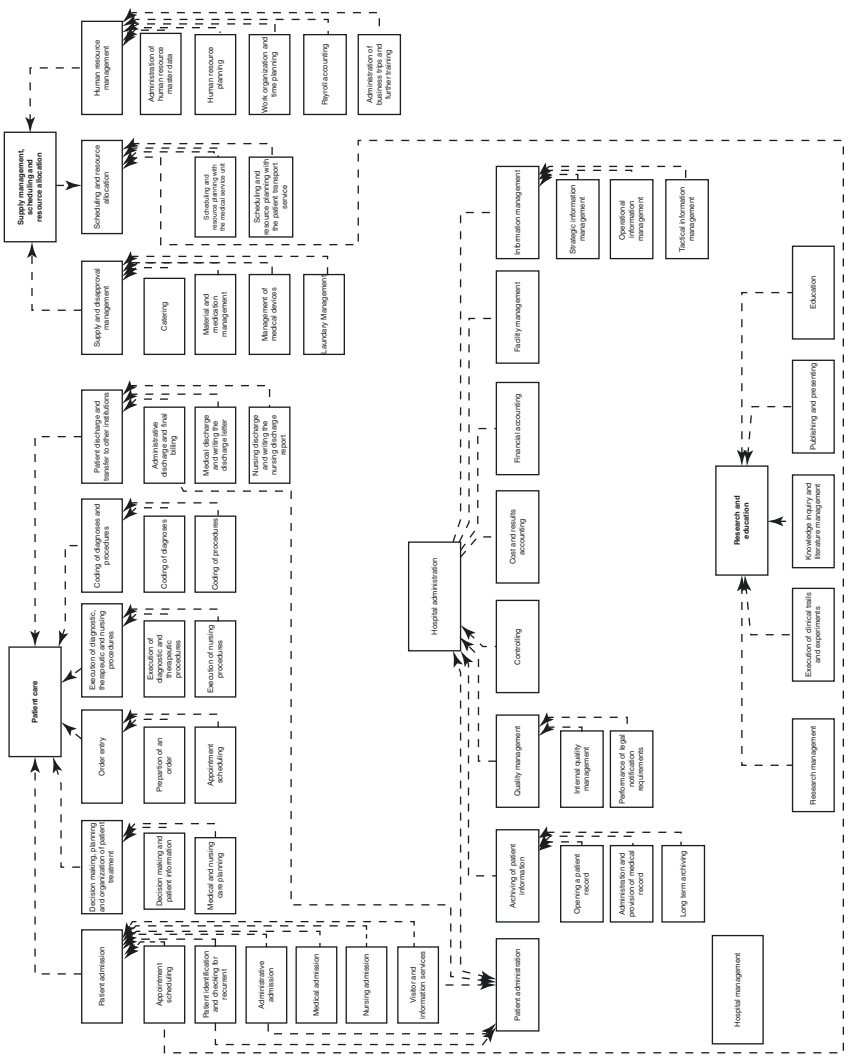


Fig. 3.32 Reference model of hospital functions at the domain layer

to compare hospital information systems by means of a uniform terminology used for the domain layer. This means that, for each enterprise function of the Reference Model of the Domain Layer, it is possible to determine the support by application components in different information systems.

3.11.2 The Domain Layer of CityCare

CityCare is a health care network in the city where Mr. Russo and his family live. In CityCare, Ploetzberg Hospital, Ernst Jokl Hospital, and a specialist medical office for sports medicine cooperate in order to treat patients suffering from joint injuries.

Mr. Russo's son, an amateur football player, injured his knee joint during his last match. Patients suffering from joint injuries first consult CityCare's primary care sports physician. If the physician suspects that surgery is needed, she orders MRI diagnostics at Ploetzberg Hospital. After receiving the findings from Ploetzberg Hospital, the sports physician admits patients needing arthroscopic surgery to Ernst Jokl Hospital for further treatment.

Figure 3.33 describes the domain layer of the CityCare scenario. Functions introduced in Sect. 3.3 were used and specialized or decomposed to model the domain layer. The entity types used are described in Sect. 3.2.

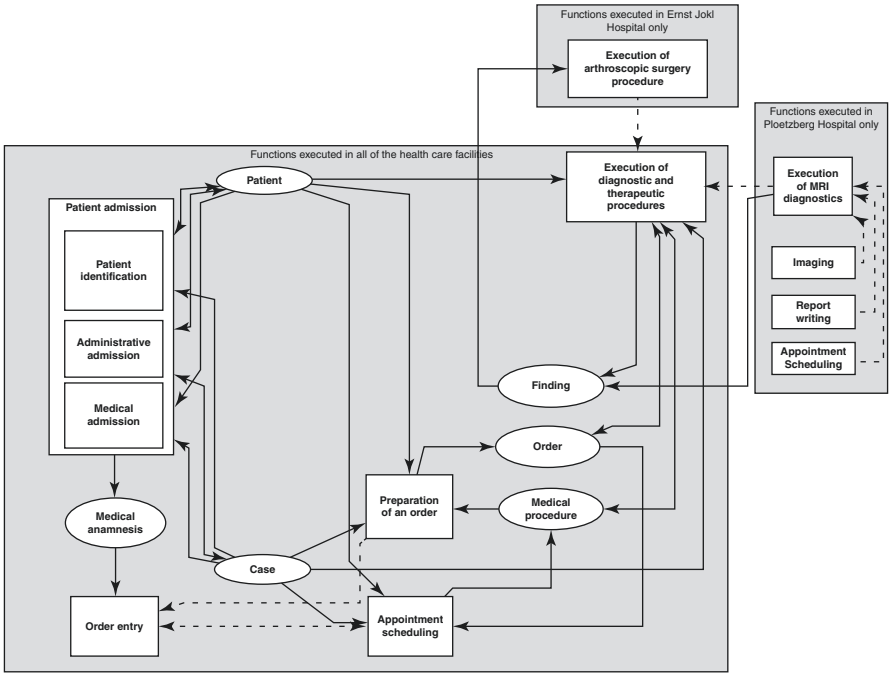


Fig. 3.33 Domain layer of CityCare

All three health care facilities cooperating in CityCare perform activities regarding the functions of *patient admission* and *execution of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures*. These functions performed by each health care facility are modeled only once at the domain layer. Ploetzberg Hospital is the only hospital offering "execution of MRI diagnostics," whereas Ernst Jokl Hospital is the only hospital offering "execution of arthroscopic surgery procedure."

Entity types such as "patient," "case," and "order" that are used or updated in all three facilities are also modeled once at the domain layer. To visualize different health care facilities, labels (see grey rectangles) were used in the $3LGM^2$ model.

3.11.3 The Logical Tool Layer of CityCare

At the logical tool layer shown in Fig. 3.34, the application systems that are relevant for the described scenario in CityCare and their communication are modeled. For a better overview, the institutional information systems and the jointly used application systems of the network are labeled by gray rectangles.

The specialist medical office has one application system that is used for *patient administration* and medical documentation. Both Ploetzberg Hospital (PH) and Ernst Jokl Hospital (EJH) have their own *patient administration system* and *MDMS*. These are different installations of different application software products

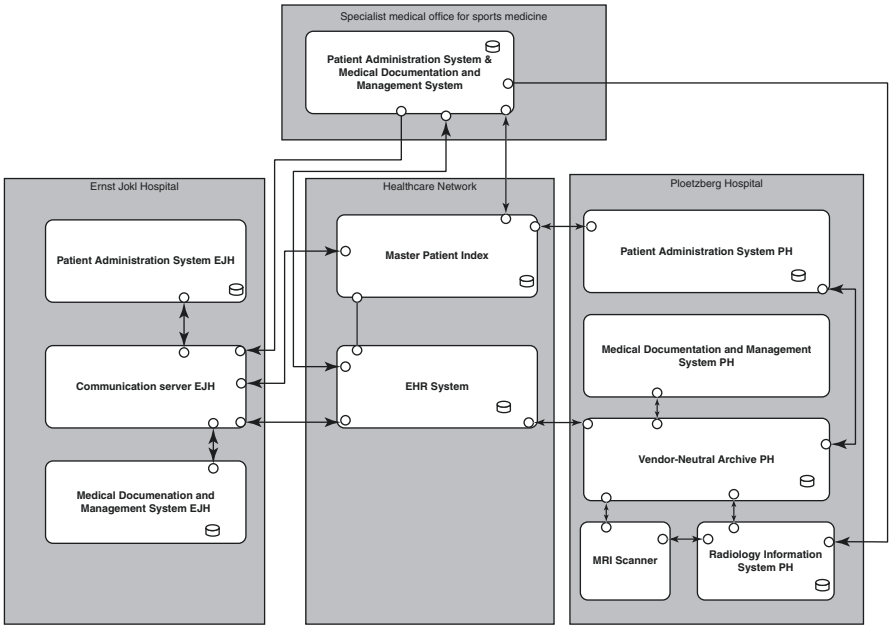


Fig. 3.34 Logical tool layer of CityCare

which are therefore modeled as single application systems. For MRI diagnostics, Ploetzberg Hospital additionally uses an *RIS* and an MRI scanner which is also modeled as an application system. Images that are generated by the MRI scanner and all other medical and administrative data from the *MDMS,* the *RIS,* and the *patient administration system* are stored in the Vendor-Neutral Archive PH, an *open platform*. Thus, these other application systems do not need their own database systems. All three facilities access the central EHR system, a *clinical information system*, of the health care network. This EHR system comprises patient information such as diagnoses, findings, and discharge letters received from all facilities. To manage the PINs from the different facilities, the health care network uses an *MPI* that assigns a transinstitutional PIN for the patients and maps the different PINs of the facilities to this transinstitutional PIN. This is a precondition for being able to build the *EHRS* in the health care network.

The matrix view in Fig. 3.35 shows which functions are supported by which application systems in CityCare. The application system of the specialist medical office, for example, supports six different functions. We can also identify functional redundancies. For *administrative admission*, for example, all three facilities use different application systems. Within a health care network like CityCare, it would also be possible to support this function with one application system that is used by each facility. Application systems serving solely as an integration technology, such as the EJH communication server, do not need to be linked with functions at the domain layer in 3LGM^2 models. For the VNA and the EHR system, no supported functions are modeled either—finding appropriate functions is part of the exercise in Sect. 3.12.6. For the correctness of the model, application systems are only assigned to "leaf functions" but not to superordinate functions such as "execution of MRI diagnostics."

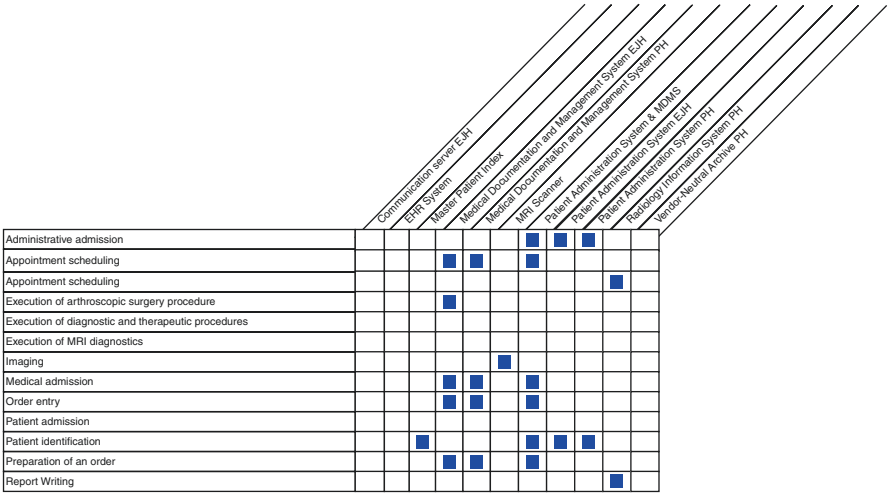


Fig. 3.35 Matrix view visualizing the relations between functions and application systems in CityCare

The architecture of Ernst Jokl Hospital (in the left of Fig. 3.34) can be described as a star-based (DB^n, AC^n, V^n) architecture. There are at least two major application systems (AC^n), probably from different vendors (V^n), with their own respective database system (DB^n). The application systems—the patient administration system and the *MDMS*—exchange data via a communication server (star-based architecture) using HL7 V2 messages. Ploetzberg Hospital also features a star-based architecture which is, however, different from Ernst Jokl Hospital's architecture. At the center of Ploetzberg Hospital's (DB^1, AC^n, V^n) architecture, there is a *VNA* implemented as an *open platform* based on uniform information models in the openEHR standard. The hospital's interoperability experts control these information models and stipulate and enforce their use whenever a new vendor system is added. The *RIS* at Ploetzberg Hospital's radiology department communicates with the MRI scanner using the DICOM standard. The DICOM images generated by the MRI scanner as well as the radiological reports that are documented with the help of the *RIS* are stored in the *VNA*.

The institutional information system of the specialist medical office has a (DB^1, AC^1, V^1, C^n) architecture because it only consists of a single application system with one database system. The application system combines the functionalities of a *patient administration system* and an *MDMS*. It could therefore be regarded as the *CIS* (or *EHRS)* of a medical practice (Sect. 3.4.15). This comprehensive application system sends orders for radiological examinations or orders for surgical procedures to Ploetzberg Hospital or Ernst Jokl Hospital, respectively. For this, it uses the HL7 V2 standard.

All three care facilities work together in the CityCare health care network, which provides a centralized *EHRS* that can receive as well as provide patient EHR data on demand. For data persistence, the central *EHRS* implements the openEHR standard for highly structured EHR data and an additional database system for documents. To receive patient data, the *EHRS* provides different interfaces for the three facilities in the network: an HL7 FHIR interface for Ernst Jokl Hospital's communication server, an HL7 V2 interface for the specialist medical office, and a native openEHR interface for Ploetzberg Hospital. For cross-network identification of patients, the CityCare network has implemented an *MPI* based on an IHE integration profile. In the future, it is planned to implement a portal both for external physicians and for the patients themselves so they can access their data in the central *EHRS*.

If Mr. Russo presents at Ernst Jokl Hospital, the local physician will look for available information on Mr. Russo in the hospital's *MDMS*. The system can then send a query to the CityCare network, asking for available information on Mr. Russo. The query is sent via Ernst Jokl Hospital's communication server to the network's central *EHR system* using the unique PIN for Mr. Russo. The central *EHR system* sends back Mr. Russo's data using the HL7 FHIR standard to the Ernst Jokl Hospital communication server and the data is forwarded to the EJK *MDMS*.

3.11.4 The Physical Tool Layer of CityCare

At the physical tool layer of CityCare, parts of the data centers of Ploetzberg Hospital and Ernst Jokl Hospital as well as a joint data center of the health care network are modeled (Fig. 3.36). The specialist medical practice only houses three PCs on which the patient management and *MDMS* can be used. The application system is installed on an application server which is hosted by Ernst Jokl Hospital's data center. Both hospitals also host application servers on which the application systems of the respective hospitals are running. For storing data, SANs are used. In the data center of the health care network, there is an application server for the *EHRS* and another server for network management.

The relations between the logical tool layer and the physical tool layer are visualized by a matrix view (Fig. 3.37). The specialist medical practice only houses three PCs on which the patient management and *MDMS* can be used. The application system is installed on an application server which is hosted by Ernst Jokl Hospital's data center. Both hospitals also host application servers on which the application systems of the respective hospitals are running. For storing data, SANs are used. In the data center of the health care network, there is an application server for the *EHRS* and another server for network management.

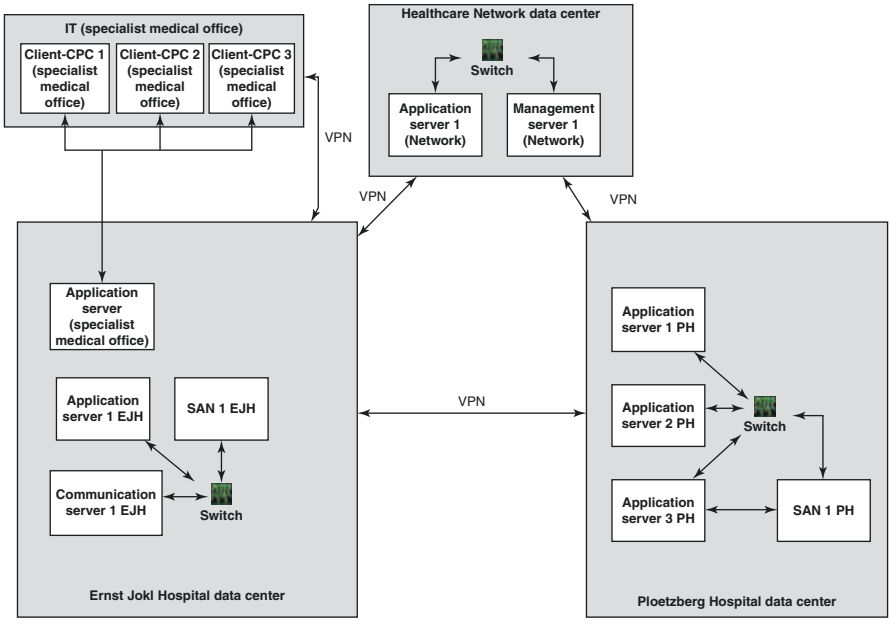


Fig. 3.36 Physical tool layer of CityCare

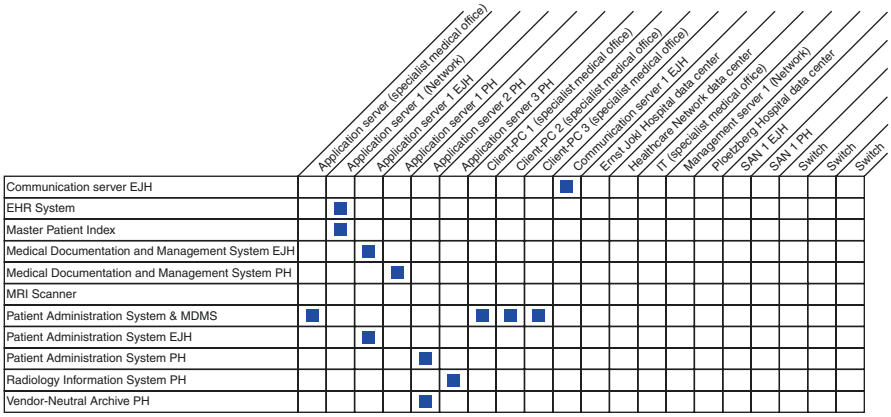


Fig. 3.37 Matrix view visualizing "installation" relations between application systems and physical data processing systems

3.12 Exercises

3.12.1 Domain Layer: Differences in Hospital Functions

Look at the functions presented in Sect. 3.3.2. Now imagine a small hospital (e.g., 350 beds) and a large university medical center (e.g., 1500 beds). What are the differences between these hospitals with regard to their functions? Explain your answer.

3.12.2 Domain Layer: Different Health care Professional Groups and Health care Facilities

Look at the functions listed in Sect. 3.3.2. Look at the relationships between the functions and the different health care professional groups (physicians, nurses, administrative staff, others) working in hospitals and medical offices. Select one health care professional group and describe which functions are most important for this group.

3.12.3 Domain Layer: The Patient Entity Type

Look at the entity type "patient" that is interpreted and updated by various functions. Which functions update the patient information, which functions interpret it?

3.12.4 Logical Tool Layer: Communication Server

Imagine a hospital information system that comprises four application systems: a *PAS*, an *MDMS*, a *RIS*, and a *PDMS*. The hospital is now considering the introduction of a communication server to improve data integration. Discuss the short-term and long-term pros and cons of this decision. Which syntactic and semantic standards could be used?

3.12.5 Logical Tool Layer: Integration from the User's Point of View

During a night shift, a nurse uses the *patient administration system* to conduct the administrative *patient admission*. The nurse then uses the *NMDS* to plan nursing care. Now consider the types of integration presented in Sect. 3.8 and discuss how this nurse would recognize a high (or low) level of data integration, semantic integration, user interface integration, context integration, feature integration, and process integration.

3.12.6 CityCare

The following questions can be answered by reading the text and analyzing the $3LGM^2$ figures of the CityCare Example 3.11.

(a) The *EHRS* and the VNA in CityCare are not linked with any function they support. Which function of the domain layer may (partly) be supported by these application systems? Which functions (as introduced in Sect. 3.3) that are supported by these application systems could be added at the domain layer?
(b) In which database systems shown in the logical tool layer (Fig. 3.34) should the entity type "patient" be stored?
(c) The *MPI* should receive messages containing PINs (entity type "patient") from all *patient administration systems*. Why is there no communication link between the *MPI* and the *patient administration system* of Ernst Jokl Hospital?
(d) According to the matrix view, which functions are supported redundantly in CityCare? Discuss pros and cons of the functional redundancies in this scenario. What redundancies would you resolve and how?
(e) Which functions in which health care facility cannot be performed anymore if "Application Server 1 Ernst Jokl Hospital" fails? Suggest a change to the physical tool layer that would minimize the risk of missing function support in case a single application server fails.
(f) For the CityCare network, would it make sense to implement further profiles from IHE? Explain your decision.

References

1. European Parliament. General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR). 2016. https://eur-lex.europa.eu/legal-content/EN/TXT/PDF/?uri=CELEX:32016R0679&from=EN. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
2. Roach KE, Budiman-Mak E, Songsiridej N, Lertratanakul Y. Development of a shoulder pain and disability index. Arthritis Care Res. 1991;4(4):143–9.
3. SNOMED International. CT Editorial Guide: Procedure. 2021. https://confluence.ihtsdotools.org/display/DOCEG/Procedure. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
4. World Health Organization (WHO). ICD-11 International Classification of Diseases 11th Revision. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2021. https://icd.who.int/en. Accessed 15 Jan 2023
5. Cimino JJ. Infobuttons. 2011. https://people.dbmi.columbia.edu/~ciminoj/infobuttons.html. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
6. International Standards Organization. ISO/TR 22221:2006 Health Informatics—Good principles and practices for a clinical data warehouse. 2021. https://www.iso.org/standard/40783.html. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
7. European Parliament. Directive 1999/93/EC of the European Parliament and of the council of 13 December 1999 on a Community framework for electronic signatures. 1999. https://eur--lex.europa.eu/legal-content/EN/TXT/PDF/?uri=CELEX:31999L0093. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
8. European Telecommunications Standards Institute. ETSI White Paper No. 3—Achieving Technical Interoperability. 2008. https://portal.etsi.org/CTI/Downloads/ETSIApproach/IOP%20whitepaper%20Edition%203%20final.pdf. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
9. HL7 International. Health Level Seven Version 2 (V2) Product Suite. 2021. http://www.hl7.org/implement/standards/product_brief.cfm?product_id=185. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
10. HL7 International. Examples section of the v3Guide. 2008. https://wiki.hl7.org/index.php?title=Examples_section_of_the_v3Guide. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
11. Digital Imaging and Communication in Medicine. The DICOM Standard. 2021. https://www.dicomstandard.org. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
12. Integrating the Health Care Enterprise (IHE). Making Healthcare Interoperable. 2021. https://www.ihe.net. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
13. International Standards Organization. ISO/IEEE 11073–20701:2020 Health Informatics—Device interoperability—Point-of-care medical device communication. 2020. https://www.iso.org/standard/78227.html. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
14. SNOMED International. SNOMED CT Browser. 2021. https://browser.ihtsdotools.org/. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
15. LOINC from Regenstrief. LOINC The international standard for identifying health measurements, observations, and documents. 2021. https://loinc.org. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.

Chapter 4
Management Perspective: Scopes and Tasks of Managing Health Information Systems

4.1 Introduction

In Chap. 3, we discussed the technological perspective of health information systems. We will now examine how health information systems have to be managed so they will fulfill the requirements of the stakeholders as presented in Sect. 1.3.

As already introduced in Sect. 2.12, management of information systems ensures systematic information processing that supports information and knowledge logistics and therefore contributes to the health care setting's goals. High-quality health information systems and their components can only by achieved if the health information systems are systematically planned, monitored, and directed.

Management of information systems can be differentiated into strategic, tactical, and operational management of information systems. In this chapter, we will first discuss these three scopes of management of information systems and how they are interlinked in more detail. We will then focus in more detail on strategic management of information systems and discuss tasks and methods of strategic planning, strategic monitoring, and strategic directing of health information systems. We will also discuss organizational structures for systematic management of information systems.

Finally, it is important to remember that for the management of information systems we can only say in a few cases what is indeed right and what is wrong. Rather, in practice, decisions must be made again and again as to which solutions and approaches are best suited in the respective setting (Fig. 4.1). In doing so, a balance must be reached between at times conflicting goals. This balancing act is what the last section is about.

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8_4

Fig. 4.1 Health information systems constitute an essential part of providing good health care. Managing health information systems requires both professional skills and communication

After reading this chapter, you should be able to

- define management of information systems and explain the differences between strategic, tactical, and operational management of information systems,
- describe the tasks of strategic planning, monitoring, and directing of health information systems,
- describe the tasks of tactical and operational management of health information systems,
- discuss appropriate organizational structures for the management of information systems in health care settings, and
- explain examples of balancing priorities in strategic management of health information systems.

Please note that the terms highlighted in italics are terms from the glossary or represent functions or application system types.

4.2 Dimensions of Managing Health Information Systems

In this section, we present in more detail the tasks of managing health information systems in health care facilities. We will discuss strategic, tactical, and operational management, their goals, and their tasks.

As already discussed in Sect. 2.12, *management of information systems* encompasses the management of all components at the three layers of an information system—the management of functions, processes, and entity types, of application components and services, and of physical data processing systems. We consider these components the objects of *management of information systems*.

Although the layers help to structure *management of information systems* by objects, it is helpful to also divide *management of information systems* with regard to its scope into strategic, tactical, and operational management.

Strategic management of information systems deals with the information system as a whole and establishes strategies and principles for the evolution of the information system. An important result of strategic management activities is a strategic information management plan.

Tactical management of information systems deals with particular functions, application components, or physical data processing systems that are introduced, removed, or changed. Usually, these activities are done in the form of projects. Tactical information management projects are initiated by *strategic management of information systems*. Thus, *strategic management of information systems* is a vital necessity for *tactical management of information systems*. The result of tactical information management projects is an updated information system.

Operational management of information systems is responsible for operating the components of the information system. It ensures the smooth operation of the system in accordance with the strategic management of information systems plan. Additionally, operational information management plans, directs, and monitors permanent services for the users of the information system.

Regardless of which objects are currently being processed and on which scope *management of information systems* is currently focused, *management of information systems* is always involved in the tasks of planning, directing, and monitoring.

This results in three dimensions for classifying *management of information systems* as shown in Fig. 4.2. When combining the three scopes, the three main tasks, and the three major objects of *management of information systems*, we can also define a $3 \times 3 \times 3$ matrix of information management activities.

This separation of activities of *management of information systems* is essential because each of the information management scopes has different perspectives and therefore uses different methods and tools. For example, planning within *strategic management of information systems* focuses on strategic information management plans. Planning within tactical management needs, for example, methods for project management or user requirements analysis, while directing within tactical management needs methods for software development or customizing. Operational management requires methods and tools for topics that range from intra-enterprise marketing of services to service desk and network management.

Strategic, tactical, and operational management depend on each other. Figure 4.3 presents their relationships in a three-layer graph-based metamodel ($3LGM^2$) domain layer.

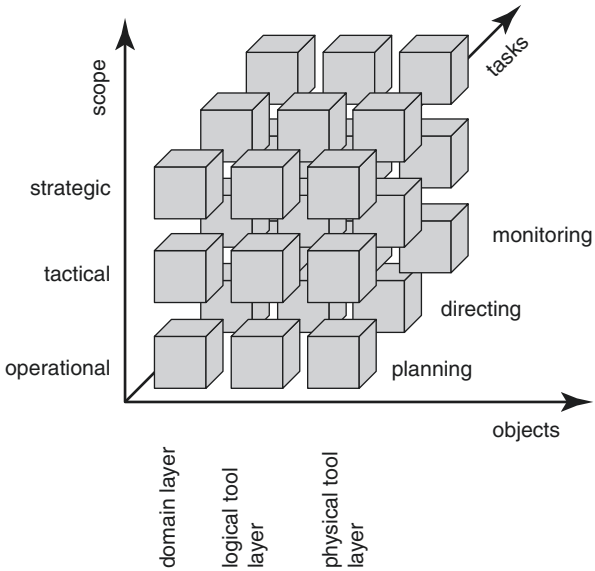


Fig. 4.2 Three-dimensional classification of activities of *management of information systems*

Within *strategic management of information systems*, a strategic information management plan and project portfolios have to be created as a result of planning activities. Strategic planning depends on the business strategy of the enterprise, defined by the strategic enterprise management, on information from HIS quality indicators, and on legal regulations. Since the strategic information management plan contains a project portfolio to be performed in the coming years, strategic directing means initiating these projects. Strategic directing updates a project charter which is then processed by *tactical management of information systems*. Strategic monitoring collects various information regarding the state of the information system components and users' and patients' requirements and compares these with the strategic information management plan and the project portfolio. The resulting HIS quality indicators are fed back to strategic planning.

Within each project of *tactical management of information systems*, the course of the project must be planned (project plan) and the project will be directed and monitored according to this plan. The result of a project are updated information system components. When a project ends, the result is documented in a handover protocol which is passed to *operational management of information systems* for further operation of the information system component.

Executive operational tasks (such as operating a computer server) are not part of information management. Nevertheless, these operational tasks must be planned, directed, and monitored. This is carried out by *operational management of information systems*.

As already indicated in Fig. 4.3, *management of information systems* in health care facilities is performed in an environment full of influencing factors. Decisions

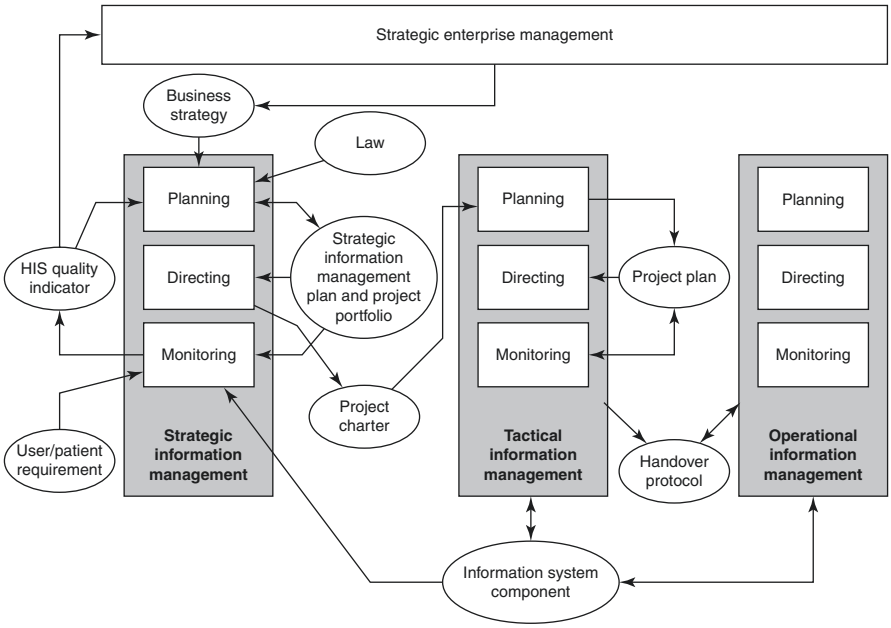


Fig. 4.3 3LGM[3] representation of the relationships between functions of "strategic, tactical, and operational management of information systems and related entity types"

made by the strategic enterprise management of the health care facility directly influence *management of information systems*. For example, the decision of the strategic enterprise management of a health care facility to cooperate in a health care network will have an impact on the future state of the information system. New legal regulations also have an effect on the *management of information systems*. For example, a law enforcing the introduction of a new billing system based on patient grouping will require adaptations in application components. Patients and users, as important stakeholders of an information system, also influence *management of information systems* with their values, attitudes, and requirements. Patients may demand a patient portal to access some of their data from home, for example. Or *management of information systems* itself may affect the management of the health care facility. If, for example, *management of information systems* proposes the introduction of a multi-professional *electronic health record system (EHRS)*, this must in turn lead to strategic activities such as process reorganization within the health care facility.

Figure 4.4 summarizes these relationships between management and operation of a health information system and the influencing factors.

We now look at the activities of strategic, tactical, and operational management of information systems in health care facilities.

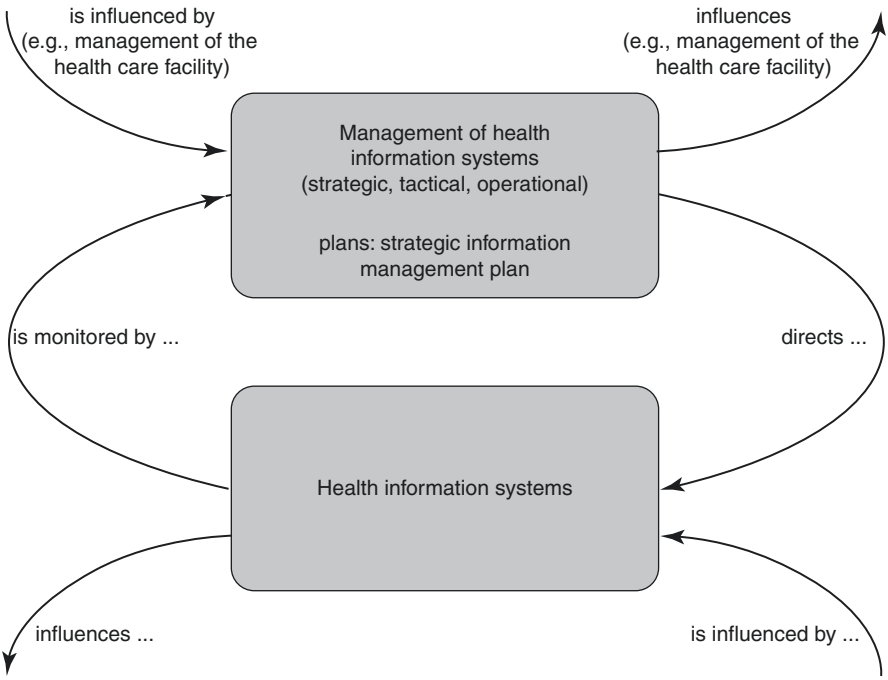


Fig. 4.4 Strategic, tactical, and operational management of information systems in health care facilities and their relationships

4.3 Strategic Management of Information Systems

Strategic management of information systems deals with the information system of a health care facility as a whole. It depends on and must be aligned to the facility's vision, mission, and strategic goals.

Strategic management of information systems and its strategic information management plan are the prerequisites for tactical and operational management of information systems in a health care facility.

We will now discuss in more detail strategic planning, monitoring, and directing of *management of information systems* in health care facilities.

4.3.1 Strategic Planning

Strategic planning is the first step of a systematic strategic information management process and leads to a strategic information management plan as basis.

Planning, as part of *strategic management of information systems*, must translate vision, mission, and strategic goals into a specific strategic information management plan. Thus, the most important tasks of strategic planning are *strategic alignment* of business goals and strategic information management goals, and the development of both a long-term *strategic project portfolio* as part of a strategic information management plan and *annual project portfolios*.

4.3.1.1 Strategic Alignment of Business Goals and Information Management Goals

The basis for *strategic management of information systems* in a health care facility is the mission of the facility. The mission describes what the basic functions of the facility are and what it stands for. For university medical centers in Germany, for example, it is stipulated by law that they must offer the basic functions of *patient care*, medical research, and teaching of future physicians.

Strategic goals are concrete specifications of how this mission is to be fulfilled within a certain, usually longer, period of time. Such goals are set by the management of the facility. The strategic, long-term goals of a health care facility are also called *business goals*. The term "business goal" should not be understood in a purely profit-oriented or economic way, which means focusing on financial gain only. Instead, as health care facilities should serve the needs of individual patients and of society, we should understand business goals as all goals of a health care facility that reflect its mission in *patient care*, *research*, *and education*.

Health care facilities aim to provide efficient, high-quality health care. They may thus define, for example, one or more of the following business goals as their strategic, long-term goals:

- offering holistic, interprofessional, patient-oriented care,
- offering integrated care in close cooperation with external health care providers,
- offering high-quality care for a special patient group (e.g., by specialized medical competence centers),
- attracting patients from other regions,
- supporting clinical research and medical education (e.g., as university-affiliated hospital),
- being very cost-effective, or
- being an innovative and modern health care facility (e.g., by using up-to-date technology for clinical diagnostics).

Different goals and sub-goals result in different information management strategies and different architectures of information systems. Also, advances in information and communication technology (ICT) may influence business goals. The role of *management of information systems* thus varies between two extremes. At one

extreme, *management of information systems* may be seen as a purely supporting function; that is, the business goals determine the information management planning activities. This is called "organizational pull" and the person in charge of *strategic management of information systems* needs to know the business goals of the health care facility. At the other extreme, *management of information systems* is seen as the strategic resource from which the health care facility gains competitive advantage. The application of technological advances mainly determines the further development of the health care facility and its position on the health care market. This is called "technology push." For this, the top management needs to know the potential of information systems with regard to supporting or shaping the business goals. *Strategic management of information systems* must thus be able to offer this information to top management in adequate and understandable form.

Strategic alignment describes the process that balances and harmonizes the business goals of the health care facility and the information management strategies to obtain the best results. Strategic alignment ensures that the strategic information management plan directly supports the business goals and that IT projects and IT budget can be directly tied to these business goals.

4.3.1.2 Strategic Information Management Plan

The *strategic information management plan* represents the long-term planning of the information system of a health care facility. This plan describes the business goals, the information management goals, the current state of the information system, the future state of the information system, and the steps to transform the current into the planned information system. *Strategic management of information systems* must create and regularly update this plan. The strategic information management plan is the basis for all tactical and operational information management activities and is the precondition for systematically directing and monitoring the information system of a health care facility.

Strategic management of information systems is an ongoing process, and there is no use in trying to solve all problems of information processing at the same time. Solely a stepwise approach, based on different levels of priorities, is feasible. The strategic information management plan is therefore the basis for a *strategic project portfolio* that describes projects or groups of projects, their priority, and a rough timeline for their initiation for the coming years.

The long-term strategic information management plan is usually valid for a longer period of time (e.g., 3–5 years). However, requirements (e.g., due to legal changes or new user requests) and resources (staff, money) may change more quickly than the strategic information management plan, or strategic monitoring results may require a faster adjustment or an update of prioritization of projects. This is reflected in the annual project portfolio (Sect. 4.3.1.3) that is annually derived from the strategic project portfolio. It lists the projects to be executed in the next year.

The strategic information management plan should be written by the persons responsible for *strategic management of information systems* (e.g., the chief information officer (CIO)) and approved by the top management. Without proper strategic planning, it would be a matter of chance if the information system of a health care facility fulfilled strategic information goals. But considerable efforts have to be made for creating strategic plans.

Figure 4.5 presents an overall view on strategic information management planning and use.

In larger health care facilities, several stakeholders are typically involved in the creation, updating, approval, and use of strategic plans, such as top management, clinical and administrative departments, service departments and information management departments, staff members, funding institutions, consultants, or hardware and software vendors.

These stakeholders may have different expectations of a strategic plan and are involved in different lifecycle phases for the following strategic plans:

- creation, i.e., writing a first plan,
- approval, i.e., making some kind of contract among the stakeholders,
- deployment, i.e., asserting that the plan is put into practice,
- use, i.e., the involved stakeholders (e.g., both the information management department and hardware and software vendors) refer to the plan when needed, and
- updating when a new version is required (because of new requirements, new available technologies, failure to achieve individual tasks, or just leaving the time frame of the plan). After the first version, the creation and update phases merge into a cyclic, evolutionary development of the plan.

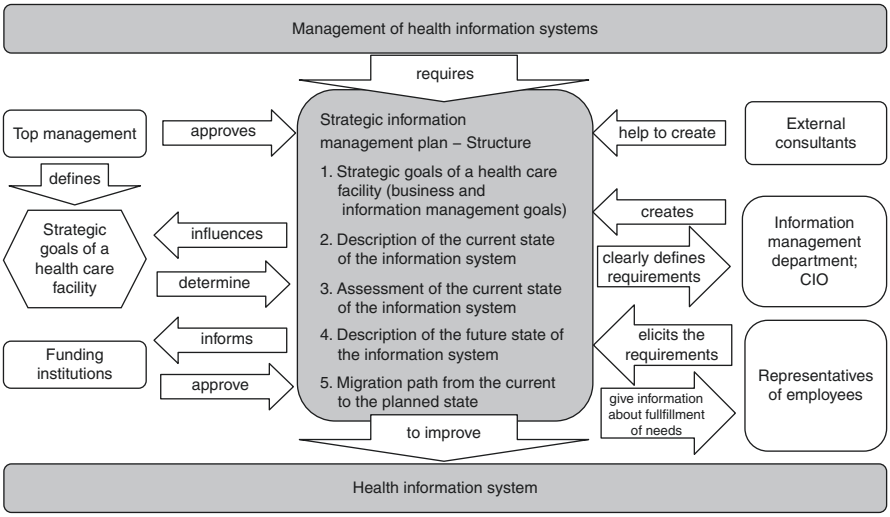


Fig. 4.5 Strategic information management planning of health care facilities. A "strategic information management plan" gives directives for the construction and development of an information system. It describes the recent and the intended information system's architecture

Usually, the CIO, supported by the information management department, creates and maintains a proposal for the strategic information management plan. The CIO is interested in having clearly defined requirements for *management of information systems*. Top management is interested in the seamless and cost-effective operation of the health care facility. Top management approves the plans (probably together with the funding institutions). Employee representatives should be involved in eliciting the requirements, as they will be using the resulting information systems. The current strategic plan will be used by the information management departments and the vendors of components when modifying the information system. External consultants may help to create the plan though they may also be engaged in negotiations for the approval of the plan.

The most essential purpose of a strategic information management plan is to improve the information system so that it can best contribute to the business goals of the health care facility. This purpose should determine the structure of strategic plans; that is, it should show a path from the current situation to an improved situation in which the business goals are achieved as far as possible and reasonable.

A strategic information management plan thus should encompass the business goals, the resulting information management goals, the current state of the information system, and an assessment of how well the current information system fits the goals. Based on this assessment, the future state of the information system is described, together with a migration path represented by a strategic project portfolio that allows this future state to be reached.

The strategic plan must also deal with the resources needed to realize the planned architecture and must include rules for the operation of the information system and a description of appropriate organizational structures. Examples of resources are money, personnel, software and hardware, rooms for servers and (paper-based) archives, and rooms for staff training. The resources should fit the architecture and vice versa.

The general structure of strategic information management plans is described in the following paragraphs and is summarized in Fig. 4.6. It should be noted that this is only a basic structure which may be adapted to the specific requirements of a health care facility.

1. **Strategic goals of the health care facility** (business goals) and of *management of information systems:* Based on a presentation of the business goals, the strategic information management goals are described based on strategic alignment.
2. **Current state of the information system**: Before any planning starts, the information system's current state is described. This may require some discipline because some stakeholders may be more interested in the planned (new) state than in the current (obsolete) state. The description is the basis for identifying those functions of the health care facility that are well supported by the information system and those functions that are not (yet) well-supported. Thus, application components and physical data processing systems are to be described, including how they support the functions. The metamodel 3LGM² (Sect. 2.14) and related software is very helpful for this task.

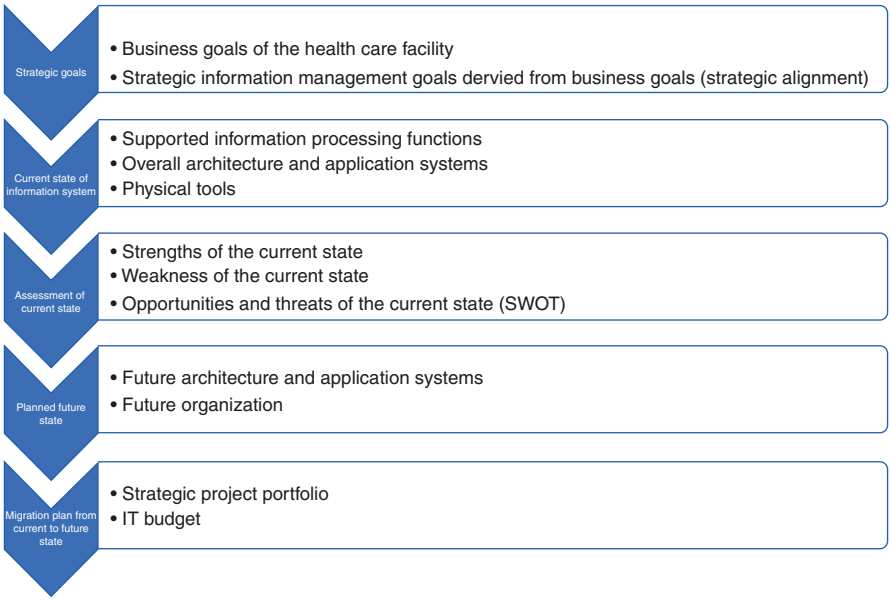


Fig. 4.6 Structure of a strategic information management plan

3. **Assessment of the current state of the information system:** The current state is then assessed with respect to the achievement of information management goals. Note that the lack of computer support for a certain function may not in all cases be assessed as a sign of poor support for that function. For example, a lack of computers in patient rooms and, consequently, the use of paper-based documentation for clinical findings may be part of the goal of being a humane hospital without using computers and hand-held digital devices in this area. Chapter 5 will discuss further criteria to assess the quality of an information system.
4. **Planned future state of the information system:** Based on the assessment of the current state, a new state is described that achieves the goals better than the current state. Again, $3LGM^2$ is useful here. The description of the planned state can be complemented by the description of the planned organizational structure of *management of information systems*. In many cases, this is an opportunity to introduce a CIO or to clarify his or her role.
5. **Migration path from the current to the future state:** This section describes a step-by-step path from the current to the future state. In the strategic information management plan, every such step is a project or a group of related projects (such a group is also called "program" in project management). The resulting migration path of projects describes priorities of projects as well as dependencies between projects. The resulting projects and their priorities can also be called a strategic project portfolio. This portfolio thus represents the migration path.

A short management summary and appendices describing the organizational structure, personnel resources, the building structure, etc. are likely to complement a strategic plan. Section 4.8.1 presents as example the structure of the strategic information management plan of Ploetzberg Hospital.

4.3.1.3 Annual Project Portfolio

The *annual project portfolio* is derived from the strategic project portfolio as described in the strategic information management plan. While the strategic project portfolio represents the planned projects for a longer period of time (e.g., 3–5 years), the annual project portfolio describes the projects to be executed in the next year.

The annual project portfolio thus contains a list of projects to be initiated in the next year together with their priorities, timeline, and rough resources. This annual project portfolio implements the long-term strategic project planning into an annual planning. It may reflect changes in prioritization of projects due to internal or external changes in the health care facility (e.g., a new data protection law or the availability of a new mobile technology). The annual project portfolio must be approved by top management, which also provides the needed resources for all projects.

An important instrument for building, managing, and updating annual project portfolios is portfolio management. Originating in the field of finance, the term portfolio management is today used in different management contexts.

A portfolio is a collection of objects grouped together to facilitate effective management of activities to meet strategic business objectives. Managing a portfolio comprises the selection and management of objects based on their value for the health care facility, but also based on their costs and risks and on their dependencies (i.e., one project can only start when another project has ended). Portfolio management establishes categories of objects (i.e., projects or application components) and defines priorities for each category (i.e., which projects should start first). Each category carries a different degree of risk and may thus need different project management methods.

In the context of *management of information systems*, portfolio management can focus on projects of information management or on components such as application components or physical data processing systems.

Project portfolio management categorizes IT projects, among other things, according to their contribution to the business goals, their risks, and their expected costs. Based on prioritizing projects, project portfolio management allows for the planning and controlling of IT projects. A project portfolio is typically built when an organization defines or refreshes its strategic goals and its strategic information management plan. Both the final strategic project portfolio and the derived annual portfolio need to be authorized by the top management. To build a project portfolio, the following steps can be followed [1]:

1. Create an up-to-date list of ongoing or planned projects (e.g., take the strategic projects defined in the strategic information management plan or project from the annual project list).
2. Define the evaluation criteria that will define the priority of each project (e.g., contribution of the project to major business goals, costs of the project, and risks of the project) and decide on the weight of each criterion.
3. Evaluate each project against the evaluation criteria by collecting information from various sources (e.g., assess contribution to business goals based on assessment by the CEO, assess project costs from the project plan or IT budget, and assess risks of the project based on assessment by the project manager).
4. Calculate an overall priority score for each project by using collected information and weight (e.g., multiply each evaluation score by the weight of each evaluation criteria and add the scores to get the overall priority score for a project).
5. Select the projects with highest priority for execution in the next time period (e.g., selecting the most important projects to be initiated in the next year and thus to be included in the annual project list). Balance the number of selected projects with the available financial resources.
6. Keep the project portfolio up to date on a regular basis (e.g., annually) by adding new projects or removing completed projects and by recalculating the priorities for the next annual project list.

Unlike project portfolio management, application component portfolio management considers different types of components. For example, the portfolio proposed by the Gartner Group distinguishes three categories of application components: Utility applications are application components that are essential for the operation of the health care facility but have no influence on the business success and, therefore, are independent of the business goals (e.g., the *patient administration system*). Enhancement applications are application components that improve the performance and thus contribute to the success of a health care facility (e.g., computer-based *nursing management and documentation system (NMDS)*). Frontier applications are application components that influence the position of the health care facility in the health care market (e.g., telemedical applications). Information management planning should aim at a well-balanced application portfolio—on the one hand, to efficiently support essential functions of the health care facility and, on the other hand, to not miss out on future technological innovations.

4.3.2 Strategic Monitoring

After having planned the information system strategically, one may expect that the information system will operate well in most of its functions, in most of its information processing tools, and in most parts of its operating organization. In many cases,

however, problems may occur. Confidentiality of data may not be assured in some circumstances; transmission of clinical reports may not be timely; adequate data integration capabilities may not be provided and thus consistency of redundant data may not be assured between application components; or, since there is no data warehouse, the health care facility may not be able to collect and analyze aggregated data to support *patient care* and operations. There may be additional problems to be taken into account at a strategic level. For example, users may be increasingly dissatisfied with a specific application component, technical or motivational problems may lead to a decrease in documentation quality, increased documentation time may limit the time available for direct *patient care*, there may be an unforeseen amount of high effort for support and training, or the number of medical errors may rise due to software errors or unusable software.

Besides low software quality, badly organized projects in tactical *management of information systems* or errors in *strategic management of information systems* may also lead to the problems described above. Such problems may become apparent very slowly, for example, when a formerly "good" component is not updated to match the overall technical progress, leading to inacceptable performance and functionality, or when more and more new application components need to be integrated into a spaghetti-styled architecture (compare Sect. 3.6.4). But problems may also arise very suddenly, for example, when a server suddenly crashes and no replacement is available or when, due to a software error, a wrong finding is presented to a patient, a physician makes a wrong decision, and the patient is harmed.

Monitoring, as part of *strategic management of information systems*, means continuously auditing quality and cost of the information system and assessing whether the strategic information management plan has been implemented as intended. Auditing determines whether the information system is able to fulfill its tasks efficiently, i.e., whether it contributes significantly to the facility's vision and mission, meets the stakeholders' requirements (Sect. 1.3), and fulfills the relevant laws. To allow auditing, monitoring needs to receive information from *tactical management of information systems* (e.g., on the successful completion of projects) and from operational management (e.g., on number of service desk calls) as well as information from users (e.g., from user satisfaction surveys) and from strategic management of the health care facility (e.g., on changes in the vision and mission). Additional information on the quality of the information system can be gained through evaluation projects. Monitoring results are used as input to direct tasks of *management of information systems*, which could, for example, initiate further projects. Monitoring results will also give feedback to update the strategic information management plan, which could, for example, lead to further activities of strategic management.

Typically, strategic monitoring comprises activities such as permanent monitoring activities, *benchmarking*, and ad hoc monitoring. These are explained in more detail in the following sections.

4.3.2.1 Permanent Monitoring Activities by Key Performance Indicators (KPI)

An information system of a health care facility is typically too complex to allow all its components to be monitored at the same time. However, it is useful to define a subset of quality criteria that is to be monitored on a regular (daily, weekly, monthly, yearly) basis. Quantitative measurements for regular monitoring of the achievement of strategic goals are also called *key performance indicators* (*KPIs*). In general, KPIs are a set of quantitative and well-defined performance measurements that demonstrate how effectively an organization is achieving key objectives. KPIs not only allow areas of improvement to be identified but also help to compare own achievements to similar organizations (benchmarking).

KPIs for information systems demonstrate how effectively key objectives of the information system, as typically defined in the strategic information management plan, are reached. These KPIs could comprise, for example:

- functional coverage of the application components (e.g., percentage of functions that are supported by computer-based application components, or percentage of documents created in computer-based form),
- standardization of the information system's architecture (e.g., percentage of interfaces using standards such as Health Level 7 (HL7)),
- homogeneity of the architecture (e.g., number of different application components),
- availability of the application components (e.g., downtimes per year),
- performance of the application components (e.g., response time),
- user satisfaction (e.g., quantifiable by regular user surveys),
- costs for *management of information systems* (e.g., overall costs, costs in relation to number of users or number of workstations),
- quality of IT training (e.g., IT training hours per user),
- quality of IT support (e.g., number of hotline calls that are successfully solved within 2 h),
- quality of *strategic management of information systems* (e.g., percentage of successfully initiated IT projects as planned in the strategic project portfolio or the annual project portfolio), and
- quality of *tactical management of information systems* (e.g., percentage of successfully completed IT projects).

In Chap. 5, we will further discuss indicators for the quality of an information system and how they can be structured.

These KPIs should be recorded in quantitative and, as far as possible, in automated form to allow monitoring on a regular basis. Example 4.8.2 presents some KPIs of the information system of Ploetzberg Hospital.

Besides monitoring those indicators, data from other sources can also be related to the quality of the information system and thus be of interest for *management of information systems* as well, such as data from patient satisfaction surveys, medical error reports, or commentary on the health care facility in the local press. In addition, national legislation (e.g., new data protection law) and standardization initiatives (e.g., new version of HL7) should be monitored, as both may affect the information system.

Sudden changes in monitored numbers can indicate problems (e.g., malfunctioning of a component), which could then initiate more detailed analysis and corrections that are then to be initiated by strategic directing.

Permanent monitoring activities can be used to identify areas of improvement, but they can also be used to compare the quality of the information system with other organizations or with established standards in the form of benchmarking. Some benchmarking approaches are presented in the following section.

4.3.2.2 Benchmarking of Health Information Systems

Benchmarking in general describes a process in which organizations evaluate various aspects of their performance and compare it to given standards or to the best organizations ("best practice"). Benchmarking uses quantitative criteria (KPIs) for comparing situations.

In strategic management, benchmarking is seen as an important approach to assess the performance of a health care facility. Benchmarking is often seen as part of a continuous quality improvement process in which health care facilities measure and then steadily improve their performance.

In strategic management of the information system of a health care facility, benchmarking can be used to assess the quality and costs of the information system in comparison with the information system of comparable facilities. Often, regional groups of health care facilities join together on an ad hoc basis to define and compare benchmarking criteria.

The Digital Maturity Self-Assessment [2], for example, measures how well secondary care providers in England use digital technology to achieve a health and care system that is paper-free at the point of care. The assessment measures digital maturity against the following three key themes: readiness, meaning the extent to which health care facilities are able to plan and deploy digital services (e.g., strategic alignment and financing of IT); capabilities, meaning the extent to which health care facilities are using digital technology to support the delivery of care (e.g., IT use to support functions such as order management or decision support); and infrastructure, meaning the extent to which health care facilities have the underlying infrastructure in place to support these capabilities. These three key themes are self-assessed using a set of questions. Results can be easily compared between health care facilities to highlight opportunities for improvement or support investment decisions.

4.3.2.3 Ad hoc Monitoring Activities by Evaluation Projects

Ad hoc monitoring activities may be initiated after larger changes of a component (e.g., introduction of a new application component) have been performed or when sudden larger problems have been observed. Ad hoc activities help to analyze a certain situation in detail in order to better understand the reasons of an observed problem or the consequences of a larger change. These ad hoc activities are conducted in the form of evaluation studies that are planned and conducted as evaluation projects by *tactical management of information systems* [3].

For example, during and after the introduction of a *computerized physician order entry system (CPOE)*, its quality and its effects on clinical care could be analyzed using a selection of the following evaluation questions:

- How accurate and complete is the ordering data entered into the *CPOE system*?
- Is the offered functionality sufficient to support all steps of the ordering process?
- Is there any redundant functionality with other components?
- Is the *CPOE system* being used as intended and as trained?
- Does the efficiency and quality of the ordering process change?
- Are physicians satisfied with the new component?
- What did the purchase and introduction of the component cost?
- What do support and training of the component cost?
- Are there any unexpected negative effects on clinical care?
- What are areas of improvement of the *CPOE system*, for example, regarding functionality, integration, or training?

Typically, quantitative and qualitative methods can be combined to answer such evaluation questions. Monitoring, as part of *strategic management of information systems*, collects and reports the evaluation results to directly give feedback to strategic planning of the information system.

We will discuss planning and conducting evaluation projects in more detail in Sect. 5.4.

4.3.3 Strategic Directing

Strategic directing of information systems is a consequence of planning and monitoring the functions and the architecture of the information systems and the organization of *management of information systems*.

Directing, as part of *strategic management of information systems*, means transforming the strategic information management plan into action, i.e., systematically updating the information system to make it conform to the strategic plan. The system's manipulation is usually done by the initiation of projects. The projects deal with the construction or further development of components of the information system.

The projects to be initiated are taken from the strategic project portfolio as established in the strategic information management plan. The decision to initiate certain projects is part of strategic information planning. Strategic directing is then responsible for their prioritization, coordination, and initiation. Planning, directing, and monitoring these projects are the tasks of *tactical management of information systems*. Operational management will then be responsible for the proper operation of the components. An example of strategic directing is the initiation of a project for the introduction of the *CPOE system*.

In detail, the following main tasks of strategic directing can be identified:

- initiation of projects from the strategic project portfolio,
- assignment of a project manager,
- provision of the needed resources for the project.

4.4 Tactical Management of Information Systems

Tactical management of information systems deals with specific components at the information system's three layers. It aims to introduce, remove, change, or maintain those components. Activities of *tactical management of information systems* are usually performed within projects. *Projects* are unique undertakings that are characterized by objectives, by restrictions with regard to available time and resources, and by a specific project organization. Projects have to be initiated as part of an information strategy, which is formulated in the strategic project portfolio of the strategic information management plan. The result of all tactical information management projects is an updated information system [4].

Examples of projects of *tactical management of information systems* are:

- analysis of the structure and processes of order entry,
- selection and introduction of a new *CPOE system*,
- replacement of an application system for *discharge summary writing* in outpatient units,
- assessment of user satisfaction with a new application system for an intensive care unit (ICU).

Planning, as part of *tactical management of information systems*, means planning projects and all the resources needed for them. Even though tactical information management projects are based on the strategic information management plan, they each need an individual project plan. This project plan describes the project's scope and motivation, the problems to be solved, the goals to be achieved, the tasks to be performed, the activities to be undertaken to reach the goals, and the resources needed to complete the project.

Directing, as part of tactical management, means the execution of such tactical information management projects based on their project plan. Therefore, directing includes typical tasks of project management such as execution of the planned

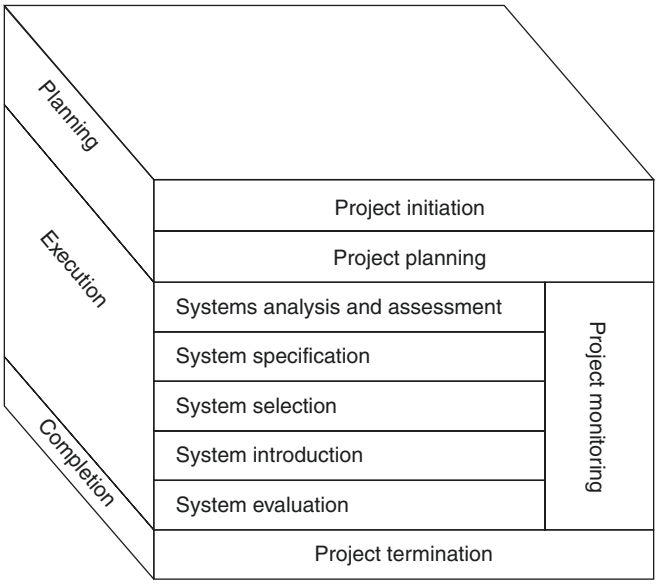


Fig. 4.7 Typical phases of tactical information management projects

working packages, resource allocation and coordination, and reporting of the project's results.

Monitoring, as part of tactical management, means continually checking whether the initiated project is running as planned and whether it will produce the expected results. Monitoring results may influence project planning, as a project's plan may be updated or changed according to the results of the project's monitoring in a given situation.

Typically, tactical information management projects comprise a planning phase (including project initiation and planning), an execution phase (which is about monitoring the project and one or more of the following activities: system analysis and assessment, system specification, system selection, system introduction, and system evaluation), and a completion phase (Fig. 4.7).

4.5 Operational Management of Information Systems

Operational management of information systems is responsible for operating the components of the information system. It ensures their smooth operation in accordance with the strategic information management plan of the health care setting.

Planning, as part of *operational management of information systems*, means planning organizational structures, procedures, and resources (e.g., finances, staff,

rooms, or buildings) that are necessary to ensure the faultless operation of all components of the information system. For example, *operational management of information systems* may require the installation of a user service desk and a service support system that enables the quick transmission of users' error notes to the responsible services. Such systems, but also respective staff resources, need to be planned and be made available for a longer period. Therefore, they should be allocated based on the strategic information management plan. Moreover, planning in this context concerns the allocation of personnel resources on a day-to-day basis (e.g., planning of shifts for staff responsible for user support or network management).

To guarantee the continuous operation of the most important *components of an information system*, it is helpful to draw up a long-term plan for *operational management of information systems*. Such a concept should clarify which components have to be supported, who is responsible for the operational support, and what the intensity of operational support should be. Table 4.1 presents components, responsibilities, tasks, and the intensity that should be defined as part of the operational management concept for the computer-based part of an information system.

As an example, a concept for operational management in a health care facility could clarify:

Table 4.1 Dimensions to be considered for *operational management of information systems* of the computer-based part of an information system

Dimension	Facets
Components	Decentralized application systems (e.g., in departments)
	Central application systems (e.g., *patient administration system*)
	Workstations
	Decentralized servers
	Central servers
	Networks
	Backbone
Responsibility	Local (in departments)
	Central (in departments for information processing)
	Vendors
Task	First-level support (incident taking, incident analysis, problem-solving if necessary, user training)
	Second-level support (training courses, regular operation, data protection)
	Third-level support (software development, problem-solving, contact with vendors)
Intensity	Availability (e.g., 24 h/day, 7 days/week)
	Presence (e.g., locally, by pager, by hotline)
	Timeliness (e.g., answering time < 2 h)

- Central servers and networks are supported by the central information management department, which offers first- and second-level support 24 h a day. A service desk guarantees response time in less than 1 h. Third-level support is provided for certain application systems by the vendors of the respective application software products.
- Clients (e.g., personal computers (PCs)) are supported by the local technical staff in each department. They offer first- and second-level support during the day. They are available by mobile phone.

Directing, as part of *operational management of information systems*, is the sum of all management activities that are necessary to implement the plan and to ensure proper responses to operating problems of components of the information system. This comprises, for example, providing backup facilities, operating a service desk, maintaining servers, and keeping task forces available to repair network components, servers, PCs, or printers. Directing in this context deals with engaging the resources planned in such a way that faultless operation of the information system is ensured.

Monitoring, as part of *operational management of information systems*, deals with monitoring the proper working and effectiveness of components of the information system. For example, a network monitoring system may continuously be used to monitor the availability and correct working of network components of the health care facility.

Typically, three levels of operational support can be distinguished. First-level support is the first address for all user groups with any kind of incidents disrupting the desired operating flow. It may consist, for example, of a central 24-hour hotline (service desk) responsible for first trouble shooting and the management of user accounts, or it may consist of decentralized information managing staff. When solutions cannot be found for the reported incidents during first-level support, second-level support must take over. This is performed by specially trained informatics staff, often located in the central information management department, who are usually responsible for the operation of the specific application components. The third-level support, finally, addresses the most severe problems that cannot be solved by the second-level support. It can be performed, for example, by specialists from the software vendor.

Operation and maintenance of components of the information system are part of its *operational management*. However, if problems occur (e.g., frequent user complaints about a *medical documentation and management system (MDMS)*), appropriate projects may be executed by *tactical management of information systems* (e.g., introducing a better version of the documentation system).

Built on top of *strategic and tactical management of information systems*, *operational management* thus offers users comprehensive services. These services go beyond simply delivering hardware and software. Rather, they are designed to help

users use these components in a way that is helpful for their professional work. Such services are also known as *IT services*. Thus, the information management department of a health care facility is an IT service provider that delivers IT services to its customers, the users of the facility's information system. The management activities that serve to provide quality IT services are grouped under the term *Information Technology Service Management* (ITSM). ITSM therefore has the task to design, provide, deliver, and improve such customer-centered services. The Information Technology Infrastructure Library (ITIL) [5] is the de facto standard framework for ITSM. ITIL was developed for the British government in order to define best practices for all governmental data centers.

For *operational management of information systems*, ITIL recommends setting up the following processes in particular:

The incident management process deals with the handling of incidents that disrupt users in the completion of their work (e.g., a non-functioning application system or printer). The aforementioned service desk is used to receive complaints about such incidents. If a solution for the customer cannot be found there immediately, the incident is declared a problem and passed on to the problem management process. If the problem management process reveals that changes need to be made to the components directly affected by the incident or to other components of the information system, the change management process will handle this. Since both small and large changes can always have side effects, ITIL also recommends a change management board as part of the process to coordinate and monitor the required changes. Incident, problem, and change management all require configuration management. With this term, ITIL means the processes that ensure that *management of information systems* always has a correct overview of all components of the information system and their connections, i.e., the information system's configuration. Corresponding configuration management systems can be based on 3LGM^2 and the three levels defined there (Sect. 2.14).

Especially in a health care facility, where human lives may depend on the proper operation of the information system, it is recommended to have a systematic ITSM and to follow ITIL.

4.6 Organizational Structures for the Management of Health Information Systems

Organizational structures for *management of information systems* differ greatly among health care facilities. In general, for each facility the adequate organization for strategic, tactical, and operational management of information systems and its proper integration into the decision structures of the facility must be established by *IT governance* as mentioned before. The resulting structures will depend on the facility's size, internal organization, needs, and goals.

Organizational structures can be described at the level of the health care facility as a whole (e.g., a chief information officer, a central information management department) and at the departmental level (e.g., specific information management staff for a certain department, a certain outpatient unit). We will now look at the role of the CIO and the information management department in more detail.

In this section, we first discuss IT governance and the decision-making processes before discussing important roles in this context: the CIO, the *Information Management Board*, and the Information Management Department.

4.6.1 IT Governance and Organizational Structures for Information Management

IT governance is the part of the overall management of a health care facility that deals with the organizational structures for decision-making in *management of information systems* [6]. The decision-making structures must be defined in such a way that the *management of information systems* is well integrated with the facility's management and is aligned to its strategic goals.

The organizational structures for decision-making must enable the *management of information systems* to create value for stakeholders (compare Sect. 1.3 for a list of stakeholders and their requirements) and minimize risks related to the information systems. Simply said, IT governance focuses on which organizational structures are needed to achieve value from the information system, and *management of information systems* describes how to use the structures for creating this value by properly planning, directing, and monitoring the information system.

In order to find the right organizational structures for decision-making for a health care facility, one should first be clear about the fields in information management where decisions need to be made. In strategic information management, these are, in particular, decisions on the planned state of the facility's information system as part of the creation of the strategic information management plan. This includes decisions on the application systems to be used (Sect. 3.4), the architectural style to be used (Sect. 3.6), the design of the IT infrastructure (Sect. 2.11), and the basic IT principles that should be followed. IT principles refer, for example, to the use of certain standards (Sect. 3.7.2). In addition, there are the decisions on the migration path and the associated strategic project portfolio (Sect. 4.3.1.2). Of particular importance are the financial decisions about the amount of investment in the information system and the allocation of the (limited) budget among the projects in the portfolio. In tactical information management, decisions must be made within the projects about the project plan and repeatedly about the appropriate execution of the individual project steps. In operational information management, decisions must be made repeatedly, especially about the prioritization of daily tasks.

Decisions in these decision-making fields can be made in different constellations depending on the circumstances of the health care facility and the management culture customary there. The types of such constellations described in the literature include business and IT monarchies as well as feudal and federal structures. In the monarchical constellations, the decision on the information system is made by the top management of the facility or by the information management leadership. Advisory bodies are often used to prepare the decisions. In feudal constellations, decisions are delegated to the management of sub-departments, such as the medical departments. In federal constellations, decisions on the information system tend to be made collegially by bodies such as an information management board (Sect. 4.6.3). Federal constellations are particularly common in large institutions or even corporate groups, as they are most likely to take into account both local characteristics and the interests of various stakeholders. Anarchic situations can also be observed, in particular in large institutions, though they may be desirable, for example in academia as a way of promoting creativity.

A framework for implementing IT governance principles in companies is COBIT (Control Objectives for Information and Related Technology) which is published by the Information Systems Audit and Control Association (ISACA). COBIT defines goals both for the governance and the *management of information systems*. Furthermore, it describes processes and best practices that must be implemented in a company in order to achieve value creation through the information system and information. COBIT is being continuously developed and is currently available in version COBIT 2019 [7].

Depending on the decision-making field (see above), the decision-making constellations in the same facility may well vary. Regardless of the decision-making constellations chosen, two structures are indispensable: the CIO and the information management department he or she is in charge of.

4.6.2 Chief Information Officer (CIO)

It is generally useful to centralize responsibilities for the *management of information systems* in one role. In larger health care facilities such as hospitals, this role is usually called *chief information officer* (*CIO*) . Other common designations include vice president (or director) of information systems, of information services, of *management of information systems*, of ICT, or of information resources.

The CIO bears overall responsibility for the strategic, tactical, and operational management of the information system and the budgetary responsibility and has authority over all employees concerned with management of the information system. The specific position of the CIO demands dedicated medical informatics competencies, executive and managerial competencies, and economic competencies.

Depending on the size of the health care facility, the role and the tasks of a CIO may be performed by one dedicated person (e.g., a full-time medical informatics specialist) or may be covered by another high-ranking role within the top management (e.g., by the chief executive officer (CEO)).

Sometimes, the role of CIO is supported or replaced by more specific roles such as the chief medical information officer (CMIO) and the chief nursing information officer (CNIO), each responsible for the related clinical aspects of information management.

If the institution has an information management board (Sect. 4.6.3), it is usually chaired by the CIO. Conversely, the leader of such a board is often considered the CIO if the position of CIO has not been explicitly established.

Ideally, the CIO should report directly to the top management of the health care facility and, therefore, should be ranked rather high in the organizational hierarchy. For example, the CIO may be chair of the information management department and in this role directly report to the CEO.

The CIO's role should be a strategic one that comprises the following tasks of strategic management of the information system:

- make or prepare all relevant strategic decisions on the information system, especially with respect to infrastructure, architecture, and information management organization,
- align the vision, mission, and strategy of the health care facility with the strategic information management plan,
- establish, promote, and implement the strategic information management plan,
- oversee tactical management of the information system and the project portfolio in order to prioritize and initiate its projects,
- initiate evaluation studies and adequate monitoring activities of the information system,
- oversee operational management of the information system and identify and solve serious information system problems, and
- report to the CEO or the board of directors.

The CIO's close relation to or, in some cases, even the membership within the top management team should provide the possibility to influence the vision and mission of the health care facility using IT as a strategic resource. Therefore, both business and medical knowledge and the ability to effectively communicate with other managers, for example, the chief financial officer (CFO) or the nursing director, is important for a CIO.

In some cases, the CIO may focus more on tactical and even operational management of the information system than on its strategic management. This may depend on the size and internal organization of the health care facility, such as top management membership, internal communication networks among top executives and the CIO, top management's strategic knowledge about the strategic role of the information system, and the personality of the CIO.

4.6.3 Information Management Board (IT Steering Committee)

As explained in Sect. 4.6.1, in federal decision-making structures, strategic decisions on the information system tend to be made collegially by bodies such as an *information management board*. Members of this board are typically high-level representatives from the top management and from the main departments of a health care facility (see Sect. 4.8.3 for an example). Such a board is often referred to as the IT Steering Committee.

If the institution has an information management board, it is usually chaired by the CIO. Conversely, the leader of such a board is often considered the CIO if the position of CIO has not been explicitly established.

An information management board is particularly common in large institutions or even corporate groups, as they are most likely to take into account both local characteristics and the interests of various stakeholders.

4.6.4 Information Management Department

In larger health care facilities, there is usually one central information management department (often called the department for medical informatics, data center, or ICT department). This department handles the facility's strategic management of the information system and at least of the tactical and operational information management of those parts of the information system with facility-wide relevance (e.g., the *enterprise resource planning system (ERPS)*, the *medical documentation and management system (MDMS)*, and the computer network).

In larger health care facilities, the information management department may consist of units that are responsible for certain tasks (e.g., different units for incident management, project management, clinical systems, administrative systems, IT networks, or medical devices). If the information management department also handles the strategic management of the information system, the head of this department can be considered the CIO.

With regard to the responsibilities for tactical and operational management of the information system, it is sometimes not useful and often not feasible to totally centralize these services. Especially in larger health care facilities, the services are performed in cooperation between central units and the decentralized staff. This staff may be comprised of dedicated medical informaticians or especially skilled users. These local information managers have responsibilities for tactical and operational management of the information system with regard to their own department but in accordance with the central information management department. For example, they may (with support from the central unit) introduce a facility-wide application component in their department and operate it. On the other hand, they will also have

to handle additional information needs of their departments, for example, by introducing a dedicated departmental system. However, this should be done only in accordance with the strategic information management plan.

In Sect. 4.8.3, we present as an example the organizational structure of information management of Ploetzberg Hospital.

4.7 Balance as a Challenge for the Management of Health Information Systems

After reading the previous sections, it may seem that *management of information systems* must merely define strategic goals for *management of information systems*, aligned with the business goals of the health care facility, and work towards them. However, reality is not that simple. *Management of information systems* is a lot about balancing priorities between various and often conflicting goals. We will now discuss five aspects of this task of "balancing" priorities.

4.7.1 Balance of Homogeneity and Heterogeneity

The collection of information processing tools (both on the logical and at the physical tool layer) should be as homogeneous (i.e., comparable in appearance and usability, for example, using tools from the same vendor) as possible and as heterogeneous as necessary. In general, a homogeneous set of information processing tools makes training and support of users easier and thus leads to reduced costs for the health information system. However, in reality, we usually find a very heterogeneous set of tools at both the logical and the physical tool layer. Why?

In any health care facility, we need application systems at the logical tool layer for the support of the functions. Maximum homogeneity, at least for the computer-based part of a health information system, can easily be reached by a (DB^1, AC^1, V^1) architecture, when just one application system exists that is implemented through a single application software product from a single manufacturer. Usually, however, diverse application software products from different manufacturers have to be purchased, which can lead to very heterogeneous (DB^n, AC^n, V^n) architectures. These products might please the various stakeholders of the health care facility (which will all have optimal support for their tasks), but they will make integration, operation, and user support much more difficult. These difficulties are often overlooked by the stakeholders concerned. In this situation, it is the task of the *management of information systems* to ensure and support an appropriate compromise between the need for economical homogeneous information processing and the needs of the various stakeholders.

At the physical tool layer, heterogeneity is often the consequence of the evolution of the health information system, comprising different generations of computer systems. This could be prevented only if all components are completely exchanged regularly, which is generally not sensible. In addition, heterogeneity is not always bad. For example, different mobile tools (laptops, tablets, and smartphones) may be needed to best support different user needs in different situations. But again, when this heterogeneity of information processing tools is not systematically managed, it can lead to the uncontrolled proliferation of tools and to unnecessary costs.

The better all stakeholders are involved in *strategic management of information systems* through an appropriate organization, the more this situation can be avoided.

4.7.2 Balance of Computer-Based and Paper-Based Tools

It is the task of managing health information systems to manage information processing in such a way that the strategic goals of the health care facility can best be reached. For a health care facility whose goal it is to provide very personal and humane treatment, it might therefore make sense to abstain from the use of technology and especially computers for all immediate physician–patient contact. This would include, for example, writing with paper and pen (or with the so-called digital pens) during a direct physician–patient encounter, rather than using a computer for data entry, as this may help support this strategic goal.

For a health care facility whose goal involves technological leadership and integrated processes, it might be more appropriate to proceed in the opposite direction, i.e., to strive for a good support of all working processes through computer-based tools.

That is, the optimum of computer support is not defined by the maximum; rather, it evolves through the strategic goals of the health care facility and its stakeholders as well as through the functions to be supported.

4.7.3 Balance of Data Security and Working Processes

The data stored in a health information system are worth protecting. Patients must be confident that their data will not be made available to an unauthorized third party. To ensure this, the appropriate laws of the particular country are to be adhered to. However, health information systems are not just purely technical, but rather are socio-technical systems. This means that people are also part of the information system and are therefore also responsible for data security and protection.

A health information system should implement strict access control methods to ensure that unauthorized access is impossible. However, this can lead to hindrances in the daily work of the health care professionals. For example, it may occur that a medication cannot be prescribed in an emergency when the attending physician belongs to another hospital department and therefore does not have the right to read the lab result or to order a medication. This can, in an extreme case, even lead to a life-threatening situation. Thus, an access control system that is strict and adapted to predefined tasks and roles in a department can hinder the cooperation between health care professionals and other departments. This would be unfortunate, as it is the job of the *management of information systems* to build the health information system in such a way that cooperation is supported. Consequently, following a thorough risk analysis, it should be weighed whether access control measures in certain situations should be less strict for medical staff, thereby strengthening their own level of responsibility.

Similar risks should be considered in determining how long data should be kept. Health care laws, research needs, and lawsuit requirements should be addressed. So, for example, following the expiration of the storage period, if documents are destroyed, it could be difficult to prove that the hospital carried out a correct medical process in the event of a lawsuit. The resulting consequences would be requests for damage compensation and possibly punishment. However, long-term storage of data may be costly and space-consuming (e.g., archive room, disk storage capacity). Risk management must be carried out with strong support from the health care facility's management.

4.7.4 Balance of Functional Leanness and Functional Redundancy

Functional leanness describes a situation where one function is supported by one and only one application component. The opposite is functional redundancy where a specific function is supported by more than one application components. For example, imagine a health care facility where two different *NMDS* are in use, one in the surgical units, and the other in the other units. In this case, central functions such as nursing care planning are supported by two application systems. This situation will result in additional costs both for investment, maintenance, training, and support. But as discussed with controlled data redundancy, functional redundancy is not always bad and may best support the specific needs of the users in the different areas.

Functional redundancy may also be found between different types of application systems. For example, *patient admission* may be supported by application systems other than the *patient administration system* to allow easy *patient admission* during

nighttime, for example, in a radiology department, by using the *radiology information system (RIS)*. This situation may be suitable, as it will provide a more convenient and well-known tool in the diagnostic area and a faster and more sophisticated tool in the patient administration unit. However, clear organizational rules and interfaces between both application systems are needed to achieve data integration and to avoid double documentation or transcription.

Thus, it is the management's task to check carefully where and why there is functional redundancy because unmanaged functional redundancy may lead to disruptions of work processes, confusion of users, and unnecessary costs. If needed, application systems or functions within application systems need to be removed to increase functional leanness.

4.7.5 Balance of Documentation Quality and Documentation Efforts

Documentation of clinical data is needed for many purposes, such as for information exchange within the health care team, for clinical decision-making, for clinical research, for reimbursement issues, for hospital controlling, and for legal statistics. Consequently, many groups inside and outside the hospital profit from a complete, accurate, and timely clinical documentation.

On the other hand, high-quality documentation takes time. Physicians and nurses may feel that the time needed for documentation reduces the time they have for *patient care*. The feeling is especially strong in facilities where documentation is not well supported by existing tools and documentation processes. Insufficient organization of documentation may lead to documentation that is more time-consuming than necessary, to double documentation of the same data, and to transcriptions and media breaks. This all reduces the motivation for documentation and may lead to the feeling that documentation is not helpful but a burden. This in turn may reduce the quality of the documented data. This fact is especially relevant if data items need to be documented by staff that will not use this data for their own purposes. Due to the integrated nature of the processes within a hospital, this is rather common.

Management of information systems must therefore carefully balance the amount of documentation that is really needed for the various purposes and the effort that health care professionals have to invest. Well-designed documentation forms, high level of standardization, integrated documentation tools, and a systematic planning of documentation help to reduce effort and to increase the awareness that documentation is an important and indeed useful part of clinical practice.

4.8 Examples

4.8.1 Strategic Information Management Plan of Ploetzberg Hospital

Table 4.2 presents the structure of the strategic information management plan of Ploetzberg Hospital.

Table 4.2 Structure of the strategic information management plan (2022–2026) of Ploetzberg Hospital

Management Summary
1. Intention of this strategic information management plan
2. Ploetzberg Hospital and Medical School 2.1 Hospital mission statement 2.2 Strategic hospital goals 2.3 Environment analysis 2.4 Organizational structure 2.5 Hospital indicators 2.6 Hospital layout
3. Current state of the information system 3.1 Goals of management of the information system 3.2 Organization of management of the information system 3.3 Guidelines and standards for the management of the information system 3.4 Functionality 3.5 Application components 3.6 Physical data processing systems
4. Assessment of the current state of the information system 4.1 Goals attained 4.2 Weak points and strengths of the information systems 4.3 Required activities
5. Future state of the information system 5.1 Visions and perspectives 5.2 Planned functionality 5.3 Planned application components 5.4 Planned physical data processing systems 5.5 Planned organization of the information management
6. Planned activities until 2028 6.1 Project portfolio 6.2 Time planning 6.3 Cost planning
7. Conclusion

4.8.2 Health Information System Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) of Ploetzberg Hospital

The CIO of Ploetzberg Hospital annually reports to the hospital's management about the amount, quality, and costs of information processing of the Ploetzberg Hospital information system. For this report, the CIO uses health information system KPIs that have been agreed on by a regional group of hospital CIOs (Table 4.3). Each year, the hospitals exchange and discuss their reports as part of a best practice benchmark with other hospitals—this comparison is not shown in the table.

Table 4.3 Extract from the Ploetzberg Hospital health information system's benchmarking report 2024. *KPI* key performance indicator

KPIs for the hospital	
Number of staff	5500
Number of beds	1100
Number of inpatient cases	40,000
Mean duration of stay	8.1 days
Hospital budget	€800 million
KPIs for health information system's costs	
Overall IT costs	€20 million
IT costs per inpatient case	€500
IT costs in relation to hospital budget	2.5%
KPIs for health information system's management	
Number of HIS staff	46
Number of HIS users	4800
Number of workstations	1350
Number of mobile IT tools	2500
HIS user per mobile IT tool	1.9
Number of IT problem tickets	15,500
Percentage of solved IT problem tickets	96%
Availability of the overall HIS systems	98.5%
Number of finalized strategic IT projects	13
Percentage of successful IT projects	76%
KPIs for health information system's functionality	
Percentage of all documents available electronically	45%
Percentage of all diagnosis coded electronically	77%
Functionality index of *patient administration system*	52%
Functionality index of *MDMS*	87%
KPIs for health information system's architecture	
Number of computer-based application components	84
Percentage of standard interfaces between applications	87%
Functional redundancy rate	0.44

4.8.3 Organization of the Management of the Ploetzberg Hospital Information System

Figure 4.8 presents the organization of management of the information system of Ploetzberg Hospital. The CIO here is Mrs. Garzia. She is head of the information management department and also chair of the information management board. In both positions, she is responsible for strategic, tactical, and operational management of the information system at the hospital. The operational management of the information system is partly supported by local information managers (e.g., technical specialists or medical informaticians) in dedicated department such as the radiology or the cardiology.

Mrs. Garzia directly reports to Mrs. Johns, the CEO of Ploetzberg Hospital. Recently, both discussed the strategic information management plan that is just being updated. The discussions focused on the question whether the strategic

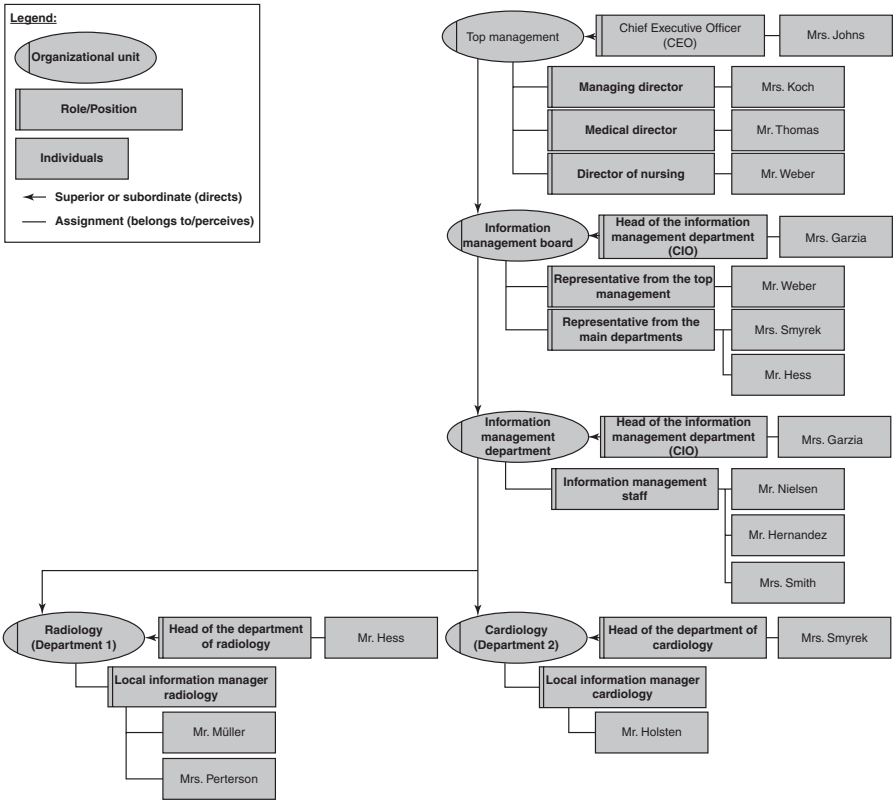


Fig. 4.8 Extract from the organizational structure of the management of the information system at Ploetzberg Hospital

information management plan is fully aligned with the general business goals of Ploetzberg Hospital. As CEO, Mrs. Johns will present and approve the strategic information management plan in the next meeting of the top management.

The draft of the strategic information management plan was developed by Mrs. Garzia. It already has been discussed and confirmed by the information management board. This board includes a representative from top management (e.g., the director or nursing) as well as the deputy head physicians of the radiology department, Mr. Hess, and of the cardiology department, Mrs. Smyrek. The board supported Mrs. Garzia in aligning the strategic information management plan with the needs and requirements of the clinical departments.

4.9 Exercises

4.9.1 Activities of Managing Information Systems

In Sect. 4.2, we introduced a three-dimensional classification of activities of management of information systems (Fig. 4.2). How would you describe the scope and tasks of the following activities of managing information systems?

- Developing a strategic information management plan (e.g., this is related to strategic planning),
- Initiating projects from the strategic project portfolio,
- Collection and analysis of data from user surveys on their general satisfaction with the health information system,
- Planning a project to select and introduce a new *CPOE system,*
- Executing work packages within an evaluation project of a *CPOE system,*
- Assessment of user satisfaction with a new intensive care system,
- Planning of a user service desk for a group of clinical application components,
- Operation of a service desk for a group of clinical application components,
- Daily monitoring of network availability and network failures.

4.9.2 Strategic Alignment of Hospital Goals and Information Management Goals

Imagine you are the CIO of a hospital in which almost no computer-based tools are used. One of the hospital's goals is to support health care professionals in their daily tasks by offering up-to-date patient information at their workplace.

Which main goals for *management of information systems* could you define based on this information? Which functions should be prioritized to be supported by new application systems? What could a strategic project portfolio and a migration plan for the next 5 years look like?

4.9.3 Structure of a Strategic Information Management Plan

In Sect. 4.8.1, we presented the structure of the strategic information management plan of Ploetzberg Hospital. Compare its structure to the general structure presented in Sect. 4.3.1.2, consisting of strategic goals, description of current state, assessment of current state, future state, and migration path. Where can you find this general structure in Ploetzberg Hospital's plan?

4.9.4 An Information-Processing Monitoring Report

Look at the health information system's KPIs of Ploetzberg Hospital in Example 4.8.2. Try to figure out some of these numbers for a real hospital and compare both hospitals' KPIs in the form of a benchmarking report. It may help to look at the strategic information management plan of this hospital or at its website.

4.9.5 Relevant Key Performance Indicators (KPIs)

Imagine you are the CIO and have to select the three most relevant indicators for the quality of your information system at your hospital: Which would you select? You can look at the examples in Sect. 4.8.2 to get ideas. Explain your choice.

4.9.6 Organizing User Feedback

You are asked to organize regular (e.g., every half year) quantitative user feedback on the general user satisfaction with major clinical application components of your hospital as part of health information system's monitoring. Which user groups would you consider? How could you gather user feedback regularly in an automatic way? Explain your choice.

4.9.7 Information Systems Managers as Architects

Information systems managers can be partly compared to architects. Read the following statement and discuss similarities and differences between information system architects and building architects [8]:

"We are architects. […] We have designed numerous buildings, used by many people. […] We know what users want. We know their complaints: buildings that

get in the way of the things they want to do. […] We also know the users' joy of relaxing, working, learning, buying, manufacturing, and worshipping in buildings which were designed with love and care as well as function in mind. […] We are committed to the belief that buildings can help people to do their jobs or may impede them and that good buildings bring joy as well as efficiency."

References

1. Mathur S. Project portfolio management techniques. Paper presented at PMI® Global Congress 2006—Asia Pacific, Bangkok, Thailand. Newtown Square, PA: Project Management Institute; 2006.
2. National Health System (NHS). Digital maturity assessment. 2017. https://www.england.nhs.uk/digitaltechnology/connecteddigitalsystems/maturity-index. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
3. Ammenwerth E, Rigby M. Evidence-based health informatics—promoting safety and efficiency through scientific methods and ethical policy. Amsterdam: IOS Press; 2016.
4. Ammenwerth E, Haux R, Knaup-Gregori P, Winter A. IT-Projektmanagement im Gesundheitswesen. 2nd ed. Stuttgart: Schattauer-Verlag; 2014.
5. Axelos. ITIL Foundation: ITIL 4th edn. TSO (The Stationery Office); 2019.
6. Weill P, Ross JW. IT Governance—how top performers manage IT decisions right for superior results. Boston, MA: Harvard Business school press; 2004.
7. ISACA Germany Chapter. COBIT. 2021. https://www.isaca.de/de/veroeffentlichungen/cobit. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
8. Caudill WW, Pena W, Kennon P. Architecture and You. New York: Whitney Library of Design; 1978. p. 6.

Chapter 5
Quality of Health Information Systems

5.1 Introduction

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) defines quality in general as the ability to meet all the expectations of the purchaser of goods or services or, in other words, as the degree to which a set of inherent characteristics fulfills requirements, where "requirements" means needs or expectations.

In Sect. 1.3, we already discussed the requirements of various stakeholder groups and their expectations on the information system. In this chapter, we will now discuss in more detail the various aspects of the quality of a health information system. Assessing the quality of health information systems using quality characteristics, and maintaining this quality, is one of the tasks of managing information systems (Fig. 5.1).

After reading this chapter, you should be able to

- describe different quality characteristics of the management of the information system in a health care facility,
- describe different quality characteristics of the information system of a health care facility, and
- describe the steps of systematically evaluating quality characteristics of the management of the information system or of the information system itself.

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8_5

Fig. 5.1 Health information systems constitute an essential part of providing good health care. Consultant physician reviews data on a ward

5.2 Quality of Management of Information Systems

In Chap. 4, we discussed the tasks of strategic, tactical, and operational management of information systems and the related organizational structures of information management. We also introduced IT governance and Information Technology Service Management (ITSM). We will now use a top-down structure when discussing the quality of *management of information systems*, starting with the quality of IT governance and finishing with the quality of ITSM.

5.2.1 Quality of IT Governance

IT governance is part of the overall management of a health care facility. It aims at providing appropriate organizational structures for managing the information system in such a way that it creates value for stakeholders.

To assess the quality of IT governance, we can assess the following aspects:

IT governance structures should be established that enable the *management of information systems* to create value for stakeholders and minimize risks related to the information systems (Sect. 4.6.1). For example, responsibilities for strategic,

tactical, and operational management need to be clearly assigned to organizational units (such as the Information Management Department, Sect. 4.6.3) or roles (such as the chief information officer (CIO), Sect. 4.6.2). IT governance should be based on established best practice frameworks and standards, such as COBIT (Control Objectives for Information and Related Technology). COBIT is an international framework for IT governance that defines a set of generic processes for the management of IT in an organization for each of these processes. COBIT defines objectives, key activities, inputs and outputs, and performance measures. Processes defined by COBIT [1] include managing the strategic information management plan, managing project portfolios, IT risk management, IT change management, ITSM, or IT operation.

In addition, enough resources should be provided for IT staff, IT infrastructures, and application components so that the information system can best meet the business demands. For example, the annual IT budget should be sufficiently high to hire qualified staff to manage the information system.

Finally, the health information system should be operated in such a way that all information management laws of the specific country are fulfilled. Different laws must be fulfilled in every country, such as laws regarding data protection, data interchange, IT security, or health statistics. These laws must be taken into account by *management of information systems*.

5.2.2 *Quality of Strategic Management of Information Systems*

Strategic management of the information system deals with the information processing of a health care facility as a whole. It depends on the facility's business goals and must translate these into an appropriate strategic information management plan.

To assess the quality of *strategic management of information systems*, we can look at the following aspects:

First, a strategic information management plan should exist and should be updated regularly. It should be closely and visibly aligned with the business strategy and business goals of a health care facility. This means that the outcome of managing information systems, i.e., the information system itself, should clearly support the business goals of the health care facility. For example, the resulting health information system should support business goals such as high-quality care of chronically ill patients, participation in cross-institutional clinical research, or attracting patients from neighboring regions.

In other words, information logistics should be possible in a way that it supports all intended business processes and functions and fulfills the need of the various stakeholder groups (physicians, nurses, management, patients and their relatives, researchers, etc.). We already discussed the requirements of the various stakeholders in Sect. 1.3. If *management of information systems* is to be considered successful, then the information system should fulfill the requirements of these stakeholder

groups. The strategic information management plan should thus be developed with input from major stakeholder groups within the health care facility. Details on how to develop a strategic information management plan were explained in Sect. 4.3.1.2.

This also means the IT project portfolio (Sect. 4.3.1) should be effectively managed in a way that maximizes the intended value to the health care facility and to the stakeholders. For example, projects that deliver the most business value (e.g., the introduction of a *picture archiving and communication system (PACS)* to support faster and better diagnosis and treatment) may be prioritized among other projects (e.g., a website for clinical staff informing on most recent business news) depending on the business goals.

Strategic monitoring should be done based on clearly defined key performance indicators (KPIs) and use data from several sources (e.g., user surveys, analysis of hotline calls). Evaluation projects should be conducted to assess the quality of certain parts of the information system. For example, after the introduction of a new *computerized provider order entry (CPOE) system*, changes in medication errors should be analyzed systematically. Details on how to plan and conduct evaluation projects are discussed in Sect. 5.4.

IT risk management should continuously assess risks and liabilities of information management. This includes the continuous identification, assessment, mitigation, monitoring, and management of risks related to IT. For example, an IT risk analysis may show that the whole hospital operation depends on the functioning of the communication server and of the IT network, and thus activities will be started to reduce the risk of network failures by increasing redundancy of technical components.

Finally, the architecture of the information system should be documented in an up-to-date way. It is surprising how many health care facilities do not have a consistent and clear description of their application components, the functions they support, and the interfaces between them. Establishing and using such an architectural description is an important activity within strategic information management planning. Using the three-layer graph-based metamodel ($3LGM^2$) been described in Sect. 2.14 is helpful.

5.2.3 Quality of Tactical Management of Information Systems

Tactical management of information systems deals with particular functions, application components, or physical data processing systems. It aims to introduce, remove, change, or maintain components of the information system.

There are some ways to assess the quality of *tactical management of information systems*:

Projects of *tactical management of information systems* should be derived from the annual project portfolio. They should be conducted using best practices and state-of-the-art methods in project management in all project phases: project initiation, project planning, project execution, and project completion (Sect. 4.4).

All projects should be finalized within the planned time frame and within the planned budget. Changes in time frame and budget must be justified and approved by *strategic management of information systems*. Finally, and most importantly, projects should be successful, i.e., they should reach the intended project goals.

As part of *tactical management of information systems*, certification may also play a role. *Certification* in general means confirming that an object or organization has certain characteristics. Certification of health information systems in general describes a process where an accredited body confirms that the information system of a health care facility fulfills certain quality characteristics that have been predefined by an external organization. Examples of certification are provided in Example 5.5.3. Vendors may try to obtain these certificates for their *application software products* to obtain an advantage in the market. Health care facilities may check for the availability of these certificates when buying software for a new application component. In general, certification increases transparency of different products and fosters buyers' knowledge about products, as certification organizations often compile information about the different products and technologies. Increased transparency and knowledge in turn have a positive impact on the buyers' willingness to invest in new technology. Even when a certification does not guarantee that a component is good regarding all and every criterion, certification may contribute to an increased transparency of quality of health information systems in general.

5.2.4 *Quality of Operational Management of Information Systems*

Operational management of information systems is responsible for operating the components of the information system. It ensures its smooth operation in accordance with the strategic information management plan of the health care facility.

To assess the quality of *operational management of information systems*, we can assess several aspects.

First, we can assess whether the operation of the components of the information system (such as server, clients, networks, interfaces) runs smoothly and without frequent or longer interruption.

To minimize risks, a business continuity plan should be available that describes how the information system can continue to support the functions even in a case of larger failures or disasters (e.g., when the central server room of a health care facility is destroyed).

As part of IT governance, there should be a clear responsibility with documented tasks and processes for operating the physical data processing systems and the application systems in a health care facility.

Operational management of information systems should be based on established best practice frameworks and standards such as COBIT [1] as a framework for IT governance (Sect. 5.2.1) or Information Technology Infrastructure Library (ITIL) [2] for ITSM (Sect. 4.5).

ITSM provides a perspective on *management of information systems* that focuses on how IT is provided to serve the needs of customers. We can consider the management of IT services as that part of *operational management of information systems* focusing on responding to the customer's needs. The term "IT service" in a health facility comprises the application systems (e.g., *LIS* or *PACS*) and the physical data processing tools (e.g., ward computers, mobile computers) discussed in Sects. 3.4 and 3.10. However, it also comprises more specific IT services such as remote VPN (virtual private network) access to the network of the health care facility, specific application interfaces, antivirus shielding, or videoconferencing facilities. All these are IT services that are needed by customers (e.g., by the clinical departments or the administration of a health care facility).

The desired content and quality of IT services should be clearly defined in *service-level agreements (SLAs)*. An SLA describes, among other things, the processes supported by the IT service (e.g., access to images via a *PACS*), the desired outcome for the customer (e.g., mobile access to all patient images is possible for a physician), planned service times (e.g., 24/7), availability target (e.g., 99% availability of image access), allowed downtimes (only during night), number of users (e.g., 350 physicians), required levels of support (e.g., on-site support during day, remote support during night), and responsibilities (including duties of the service provider, duties of the customer, duties of the service user). An SLA is a contract regarding the provision of an IT service, for example, between a department and the IT department.

An IT service desk, also called helpdesk, should be available where users can report any incidents related to IT services and get help. The quality of the IT services should be continuously monitored and improved. All incidents related to IT services should be systematically documented, their root causes should be analyzed, and ways to prevent future problems should be developed and implemented.

Finally, IT staff should be sufficiently trained and competent to operate physical data processing systems and the computer-based applications.

5.3 Quality of Architectures and Infrastructures

In the previous section, we discussed the quality of the *management of information systems*. The outcome of high-quality information management is, hopefully, a high-quality information system. We will now discuss how we can assess the quality of the information system.

5.3.1 Quality at the Domain Layer

The overarching objective of a health information system is to support the functions of a health care facility. In Sect. 3.3, we presented these functions in more detail, such as *patient identification*, *decision-making and patient information*, *execution of diagnostic, therapeutic, and nursing procedures*, or billing.

Health information systems should sufficiently support information and knowledge logistics (Sect. 2.7) within *patient care*, administration, and management. To achieve a high quality of the information and knowledge logistics at the domain layer, information logistics should be as good as possible given the resources used. Good information and knowledge logistics comprises the following aspects:

- The right information: Is the information that the users need available? For example, can the physician access the lab results of a patient?
- At the right time: Is the information available when it is needed (just-in-time)? For example, are the most recent lab results available before the physician's round starts?
- At the right place: Is the information available where it is needed? For example, are the recent lab results available at the patient's bedside? Is information also available across health care facilities to support continuity of care (e.g., can hospital, nursing home, and general practitioner (GP) access relevant information on a given patient treated by all three facilities?)
- To the right people: Is the information available only to those who need it and who have the right to see the information? For example, are the recent lab results only available to the treating health care professionals? Is data protection guaranteed? Is relevant information available not only for health professionals, but also for the patient and relatives?
- In the right form: Is the information available in a usable format? For example, can lab results also be displayed in a graphical way for a longer period of time? Can information be personally filtered (personal filtering), not overwhelming the health care professional with too much information (information overload)?
- In order to make the right decisions: Information should be used to inform decisions. For example, a graphical presentation of the lab results may show an increase in a lab value, which may in turn motivate the physician to change the administrated drug.

In addition, the domain layer describes the data to be processed and provided. To assess the quality of the data at the domain layer, we can assess the following data quality aspects:

- Data integrity should be maintained. Data integrity means that data are consistent, that object identity is maintained, and that relationships between entities are correct (referential integrity) (Sect. 3.5). For example, every patient and every patient case should have a unique PIN that is used in all application components.
- Data in general should also be correct and have an indisputable authorship. For example, the author of every patient report should be clear and verifiable. Clinical data should also be kept confidential. For example, the diagnoses of a patient should only be accessible to the treating health care professionals.
- Finally, data should be uniformly recorded. There should be clear rules on which data and how the data are recorded and stored. Standardized data can be better processed automatically, while non-standardized data can provide more specific information to a human reader (Sect. 3.2.2).

5.3.2 *Quality at the Logical Tool Layer*

The information system quality at the logical tool layer comprises the quality of application components and the quality of their integration.

The following criteria help to assess the quality of an application component:

- Application systems should offer the features required for a given process. For example, a *radiology information system (RIS)* should offer features required for report writing, it should provide correct output when searching for a patient, and it should guarantee security of stored data.
- As clinical workflows often change, an application component should be adaptable to workflow changes.
- An application system should be reliable and provide defined services for a defined time under the given conditions. For example, an *RIS* should have little or no downtimes. An application system should also be easy to maintain. For example, an upgrade of the *RIS* software must be done quickly and without endangering the overall application component's stability.
- An application system should be user-friendly. Good usability is very important for software used within health care facilities. Health care professionals spend only a small amount of their working time with computer-based tools, and they often have to use various application components for their work. In addition, staff turnover is very high. Therefore, application software products should be easy to learn and intuitive to use. This is addressed by ISO 9241-171, which defines specific quality characteristics for software ergonomics, such as self-descriptiveness or tolerance with regard to user errors.
- An application system may need to be certified depending on the legal regulations. For example, the *PACS* software is certified according to the national law for medical devices.
- Finally, an application system should offer standardized interoperability interfaces to facilitate integration with other application components (Sect. 3.7.2). For example, an *RIS* may offer a Health Level 7-based (HL7-based) interface for data exchange with the *patient administration system* or with other clinical systems. Otherwise, integration in AC^n architectures is hardly reachable in an economically reasonable way, as proprietary interfaces between two application components are expensive to develop and to maintain.

The general architecture of the health information system should be sufficiently flexible to adapt to the changing needs of the hospital. For example, it should be easy to add new application systems to the information system, and application components should be easily replaceable by other (more advanced) application components. A star-based architecture (CP^1 architecture) with a communication server (Sect. 3.9.2) and application components offering standardized interfaces support the exchange or addition of application systems.

An architecture can be called "saturated" if as many functions as possible are supported by computer-based tools and if there are no or only a small number of

non-computer-based tools still in use. Please note that computer-support is not a goal in itself. However, a mix of paper-based and computer-based tools within a function often leads to deficiencies in information logistics such as transcriptions. Transcription means the manual transfer of data from one application component to another, for example, manually entering patient diagnoses from the *patient administration system* in the *CPOE system* or scanning a discharge letter to add it to the electronic patient record (EPR). Transcriptions are time-consuming and may lead to data errors. Therefore, transcriptions have to be avoided by using standardized interfaces between application components.

To achieve integration in "best-of-breed" architectures (AC^n, V^n), application components need to share and store the same data. Data redundancy is thus unavoidable. For example, patient administrative data are stored in the *patient administration system*, the *RIS*, and the *LIS*. This data redundancy needs to be closely managed to provide consistent data. Approaches for handling data redundancy through integration technologies were presented in Sect. 3.9.

5.3.3 Quality at the Physical Tool Layer

The information system quality at the physical tool layer comprises the quality of physical data processing systems and their integration.

The quality of physical data processing systems can be described by several characteristics:

- Physical data processing systems should be available where needed (e.g., at the patient bedside). They should be stable and reliable, i.e., without unexpected downtimes. They should be performant to allow fast processing and the ability to present large amount of data (including images).
- Physical data processing systems should be secure, for example, following rules for data safety, data security, and electrical safety. They should be user-friendly (e.g., allowing data entry via touchscreen, mouse, and keyboard). In certain areas, they need be certified. For example, the tools used in the intensive care unit (ICU) need to be certified according to the national law for medical devices.
- Physical data processing systems should be usable for several tasks. For example, a mobile tool (such as a notebook) on a ward should allow access to the nursing documentation system, the *CPOE system*, and the patient chart. This limits the risk that users have to handle multiple physical tools at the same time and thus supports the "leanness" of information-processing tools.

At the physical tool layer, redundancy is often valuable to reduce risks of system failure. For example, data may be stored redundantly in different areas in order to avoid data loss in case of fire. Or data may be duplicated on different hard discs in a specific database server (e.g., using redundant array of independent discs (RAID) technology), allowing reconstruction of data when a hard disc fails. Thus, technical redundancy is also an important quality criterion for the physical tool layer.

5.3.4 *Quality of Integration*

In Chap. 2, we learned that health information systems are constructs built from a variety of components. In Sect. 3.7, we discussed that these components, especially application systems, need to be interoperable so they can be integrated to best support functions and business processes. Integrating application systems, as we saw in Sect. 3.8, can be done in a number of ways, each achieving specific qualities of the information system. We will therefore summarize these types of integration here again as quality criteria for health information systems.

Data integration is achieved in a health information system when data that have been recorded in different application components once are available wherever they are needed without having to be reentered (Sect. 3.8.1). Consequently, in a health information system where data integration is given, data can be brought together for analysis wherever it is needed. Moreover, if the data needs to be updated, this only has to be done in one place, even if the data are redundantly stored in several application systems. Overall, data integration is the first and quite basic quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it allows application systems to exchange and reuse data while preserving data integrity.

Semantic integration (Sect. 3.8.2) is guaranteed if different application systems use the same system of concepts, i.e., they interpret data the same way. Semantic integration is an important quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it supports the exchange of meaningful information between application systems.

User interface integration (Sect. 3.8.2) is guaranteed when different application components represent data and organize their user interfaces in a unified way. User interface integration supports the usability of application systems and reduces errors when searching for or entering data. It thus also contributes to data quality and patient safety, making it an important quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it supports ease-of-use and reduces usage errors of graphical user interfaces.

Context integration (Sect. 3.8.4) is an important quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it allows synchronizing and coordinating context among application systems. It thus allows application systems to automatically follow patient, user, and other contexts and thus supports the user when working with several application systems. Note that context integration stands on its own. It neither contributes to data, to semantic, or to user interface integration. Vice versa, these types of integration will not support achieving context integration.

Feature integration (Sect. 3.8.5) means that features are not implemented redundantly in multiple application systems. Feature integration thus reduces costs for both implementation and maintenance of application systems. Overall, feature integration is an important quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it allows sharing of functions among application systems.

An integrated health information system should support the business processes effectively. From this perspective, process integration (Sect. 3.8.6) is indeed the

overall vision of integration within heterogeneous information systems. Process integration is guaranteed when business processes are effectively supported by a set of interacting application systems. Systematic adoption of Integrating the Health care Enterprise (IHE) profiles is an indicator for structural quality on which smooth process integration can be achieved. Process integration is an important quality characteristic within heterogeneous health information systems, as it describes a situation where different application systems interoperate in an optimal way so that business processes are best supported.

5.4 Evaluating the Quality of Health Information Systems

Evaluation can be defined as the act of measuring or exploring components of a health information system. The result of an evaluation should provide information to support decisions concerning the health information systems, such as decisions regarding optimizing, replacing, or further deploying a component.

This definition of evaluation highlights the fact that evaluation can comprise both quantitative ("measuring") as well as qualitative ("exploring") aspects and that evaluation should answer a clear question and thus support management decisions of strategic or tactical management of information systems. Evaluation studies can, for example, help to justify IT investments, to verify that the information system is effective and safe, or to understand problems and to improve the information system.

We will now discuss the basic phases of an evaluation study. We will see how to identify an evaluation question together with stakeholders, how to collect quantitative and qualitative data, and finally how to answer the evaluation question and how to use the evaluation results to improve the health information system. We will provide only a short introduction to this topic. Please consult specific textbooks to learn more about health IT evaluation (such as [3]).

5.4.1 Identifying the Evaluation Question

Evaluation studies of components of health information systems should answer a clear question and thus inform a decision. Such a decision may focus on ways to improve a component or the need to replace a component by another one. Identifying an evaluation question that is useful in a given situation is thus the first crucial step for any evaluation.

Which evaluation question is useful depends on the context and especially on the adoption phase of the component. Adoption can be described as the successful integration of an innovation in a health care facility. Adoption is a time-dependent process.

The Clinical Adoption Metamodel [4] describes four dimensions of adoption of application systems that depend on each other: The first dimension of adoption is

"availability," which comprises the ability of users to access the system, the availability of the system, and the availability of content and features of the system. The second dimension of adoption is "system use," comprising the actual use of the system and the subjective user experience with the system. The third dimension of adoption focuses on "clinical behaviors" and comprises the meaningful adaptation of clinical processes to the system. The fourth dimension of adoption is reached when the new system has an impact on "clinical outcome" at the patient level, the provider level, or the population level. Combined, these four dimensions describe an adoption trajectory from first implementation of a new application system (or a specific feature of it) to changes in outcomes.

This adoption model is helpful to identify the evaluation questions that are most relevant for given situation. In other words: Depending on the state of adoption of an application system, only specific evaluation questions are of relevance and make sense. For example, imagine that a health care facility has introduced a *CPOE system* for medication ordering with the aim to increase efficiency and quality of prescriptions.

- In the adoption phase of "availability," evaluation may focus on the following question: Is the *CPOE system* sufficiently made available to the intended user groups, for example, do all relevant users have a user account and are sufficient mobile tools for prescriptions available on all wards? Is the system available as planned, for example, are there no unplanned downtimes and is performance and stability as planned? Is all needed information available within the *CPOE system*, including patient administration data, prescription information, drug information databases, and interaction checks? Are all interfaces working as planned? Are the users sufficiently trained on the *CPOE system*, for example, have all physicians and nurses received sufficient training and support?
- In the adoption phase of "system use," evaluation may cover the following questions: Is the *CPOE system* being used as intended by the various user groups, for example, are all prescriptions entered directly by the physicians into the *CPOE system* during ward rounds? Are all main features of the *CPOE system* being used as intended, for example, are interaction checks used at all? Do the users consider the system to be user-friendly?
- In the adoption phase of "clinical behavior," evaluation will focus on the processes: Are the prescription processes efficiently supported by the system? How many automatic alerts of interaction checks occur, and are they considered and reacted upon by the clinical users? Did the overall number of prescriptions change after introduction of the *CPOE system*?
- In the adoption phase of "clinical outcome," evaluation will assess improvement in patient outcomes (e.g., reduction of medication errors, increase in patient safety) or costs (e.g., reduction of medication costs).

Evaluation questions thus have to be properly chosen depending on the adoption phase of an application component and depending on the decision that is to be supported by the evaluation, such as decision on further rollout, on further upgrades or other technical improvements before rollout, or on cancellation of a pilot project.

Given the usual constraints of time and money, an evaluation should focus on a limited set of evaluation questions and not try to answer too many questions. To increase the chance that evaluation focuses on an evaluation question that is useful to decision-makers, the decision-maker needs to be consulted when defining the evaluation question.

Identification of the most relevant evaluation questions can be done, for example, in a workshop with the decision-maker, where the following questions could be discussed:

- What is the object that should be evaluated, i.e., which application system or which feature should be evaluated?
- What is the phase of adoption the application system is in at the moment?
- Which decision are to be made regarding the application system and how can evaluation results help in this decision?
- Which evaluation questions would provide the most crucial information?

Such a workshop between the CIO, the medical director, and the evaluator, for example, could show that the *CPOE system* is already well adopted in one pilot department. It is now important to better understand the effect of the *CPOE system* on medication errors and patient outcome to be able to decide on further rollout. The major evaluation question will therefore be: "Does the *CPOE system* improve medication safety?"

After defining the evaluation questions, clear indicators need to be defined. For example, medication safety may be measured by counting prescription errors or adverse drug events or by looking at length of stay or mortality. Which indicator is best to answer a given evaluation question needs to be carefully decided based on the context, the available data, and the available scientific literature.

5.4.2 Deciding on the Study Design

Depending on the study question and considering the context of the study (e.g., available resources), the study design needs to be carefully chosen. Several types of study designs exist:

First, we have to decide whether the study is planned as a quantitative study, a qualitative study, or a mixed-method study. Quantitative studies focus on collecting quantitative data (e.g., number of patient safety incidents or number of user logins) to answer the study question, while qualitative studies collect qualitative data (e.g., free text comments within surveys or user comments from interviews). Mixed-method studies combine quantitative and qualitative data.

Second, we have to decide whether to conduct an exploratory study, a descriptive study, or an explanatory study. Explorative studies try to explore and describe a given situation, which means generating information to improve understanding of the situation. For example, an explorative study may try to find out the reasons for higher medication errors after introduction of a *CPOE system*. Explorative studies

are typically qualitative or mixed-method studies (i.e., they often apply open-ended observations or interviews). Descriptive studies focus on measuring a predefined attribute in a group of objects. For example, a descriptive study may measure user acceptance of *CPOE systems* or IT knowledge of the hospital staff. Descriptive studies are typically quantitative studies (i.e., they often apply a standardized survey or standardized observations). Finally, explanatory studies try to assess predefined hypotheses. For example, an explanatory study may test the hypothesis that introducing a *CPOE system* significantly reduces medication errors in a given clinical setting. Explanatory studies are typically quantitative studies (i.e., they use quantitative measures to determine changes of the effect).

Third, in case an explanatory study is planned, we have to decide whether to conduct it as an experimental study, a quasi-experimental study, or a non-experimental study. For experimental trials, the randomized controlled trial (RCT) is considered the gold standard with highest internal validity. By conducting an RCT, we can determine with a certain probability whether a given intervention (e.g., a *CPOE system*) led to a certain effect (e.g., a reduction of medication errors). Quasi-experimental study designs also try to assess a relationship between an intervention and an effect but have less internal validity compared to RCTs. Quasi-experimental designs are, for example, before-after trials or trials with a non-randomized control group. Both experimental trials and quasi-experimental trials are also called intervention studies, as they comprise a predefined intervention. Non-experimental studies (also called observational studies) also try to assess the relationship between an intervention and effect, but they do not intervene in any way, instead observing and collecting available (quantitative) data. They can be performed as cross-sectional studies (i.e., collecting data only at one point in time) or as longitudinal studies (i.e., collecting data at several points in time, for example, every 3 months).

Fourth, we have to decide whether to conduct a laboratory study or a field study. In laboratory studies, we can better control the overall study setting, yet the external validity, i.e., the transferability of results to real settings, is limited. In field studies, it is more difficult to control the overall study settings, but external validity is higher.

5.4.3 Collecting Quantitative Data

Quantitative data comprise data that can be described by numbers. Numbers can easily be statistically analyzed, aggregated, and compared. The basic idea of quantitative evaluation methods is that objects have attributes (such as duration or amount) that can be exactly measured. To obtain data representative for a predefined population, a sampling is selected and then analyzed.

Typical quantitative evaluation methods comprise time measurements, quantitative observations, or quantitative surveys.

Time measurements comprise time-motion analyses or work-sampling studies. The time-motion analysis is based on trained observers that measure the duration of

observed events (e.g., tasks) while using a predefined list of event categories. Typically, for time-motion analysis, one observer is needed for each observed actor (e.g., user), which is quite resource-intensive. This disadvantage is resolved by the work sampling analysis. Here, trained observers document which task is being executed only at predefined (e.g., every 5 min) or randomly selected time intervals. This allows them to observe several actors in parallel. By counting the number of observed tasks in each category, the overall distribution and thus the duration of each task can be calculated. To obtain precise numbers, however, this requires a relatively large number of observations to be done. Please note that both approaches (time-motion and work sampling) are typically conducted by trained external observers, though they can in principle also be conducted by the actors (e.g., users) themselves—this, however, may limit the quality of the data.

Quantitative observations comprise observations of clinical situations or processes or the analysis of available data (e.g., log files) in which the number of events that occur in a given time period is counted by an observer. This can, for example, involve counting medication errors (based on an analysis of patient records), counting the number of clicks when using certain software, counting the number of physician–patient interactions, or counting the number of patients entering a department. As for any measurement, special attention should be given to training the observers and to using standardized observation protocols to achieve inter-observer reliability.

Quantitative surveys use standardized, closed questions that lead to quantitative results. For questionnaires addressing subjective opinions and feelings, the 5-point Likert scale is often used (“strongly agree”—“agree”—“neither agree nor disagree”—“disagree”—“strongly disagree”). The quality of data achieved by questionnaires depends on a thorough formulation of questions and predefined answer categories. Each questionnaire should be pretested. The available literature should thus be consulted before planning a questionnaire in order to ensure objectivity, reliability, and validity of results. If possible, available and validated questionnaires should be reused.

5.4.4 Collecting Qualitative Data

Qualitative data comprises text and any other non-numerical data. Qualitative data can describe individual situations and contexts in quite some detail. Typical qualitative evaluation methods comprise qualitative interviews, qualitative observations, or qualitative content analysis.

Qualitative interviews comprise all forms of semi- or unstructured interviews that use open questions, thus generating free text as a result. This allows the respondent to answer freely and allows interaction between interviewer and respondent. The interview can be conducted with one or more respondent at the same time. Group interviews support interaction between respondents but should only be done in groups without hierarchical dependencies. In any case, a pretested interview instruction is needed that describes how the interviewer should conduct the

interview and document the results. Answers are typically recorded by tape and later transcribed in verbatim or aggregated protocols. The data can be analyzed using qualitative content analysis, for example.

Qualitative observations comprise open, less-standardized, non-quantitative observations of processes or events. Contrary to quantitative observations, the aim is not to count and measure, but to obtain deeper insight into a situation. The observations are typically documented in a field diary or on predefined observation protocols. Qualitative observations generate text (such as observer notes) that can be analyzed using qualitative content analysis. Please note that for qualitative observation, there should be a certain familiarity of the observer with the observed field (e.g., with the situation in the clinical department).

Qualitative content analysis is used to analyze text that obtained from qualitative interviews or qualitative observations. Qualitative content analysis is a methodological, planned approach for grouping qualitative data into categories. Here, the material is analyzed stepwise and coded into several available categories. The categories can either be defined beforehand (deductive approach), developed while reading and analyzing the text (inductive approach), or defined beforehand and refined while analyzing the text (mixed approach). The coding of text into categories should be reproducible; it must therefore be clearly documented and explained with the so-called anchor examples. Typically, the text material is read and coded more than once to make sure that nothing is overlooked and that the categories are homogeneous and all filled with text examples. Based on the categories and the text passages that are related to them, the text can then be further analyzed to identify larger patterns and to answer the study questions.

5.4.5 Answering the Evaluation Questions

If an evaluation was carefully planned, the collected quantitative and qualitative data should now allow the previously defined evaluation question to be answered. For example, a pre-post study of prescription errors showed that prescription errors were largely reduced by the *CPOE system.* This result motivates further rollouts.

Evaluation results may help to improve the quality of the information system, for example, the quality of integration (Sect. 5.3). Evaluation studies that aim mostly at collecting data to improve an information system are also called formative evaluation studies. Formative evaluation studies often take place in early phases of adoption. For example, a typical formative evaluation assesses whether users are using a *CPOE system* as intended by conducting qualitative observations to identify if there is need for further user training. Results of formative evaluation will thus help to decide on needs for improvement in technology, processes, or training.

Evaluation results may also answer the question whether the application system has achieved its intended goals. These evaluations typically focus on a certain outcome of a component and take place in later adoption phases. These types of evaluation studies are also called summative evaluation studies. For example, a typical

summative evaluation assesses whether the *CPOE system* has improved medication safety after 1 year of using the *CPOE system* by applying quantitative chart analysis. The results of summative evaluation will help to justify the expenses of the *CPOE system* and motivate further rollout.

5.5 Examples

5.5.1 *Unintended Effects of a Computerized Physician Order Entry Nearly Hard-Stop Alert*

The introduction of application systems may have unintended effects. The careful evaluation of impact and unintended effects of application systems is thus an important task of management of information systems. We will now have a look at an example of an evaluation study that showed some unintended effects of CPOE systems.

Table 5.1 presents the abstract of an RCT on automatic alerts in a *CPOE system*. The authors analyzed whether the so-called hard-stop alert can reduce unwanted drug–drug interactions. Such a "hard-stop alerts" appears on the screen to alert the physician about potential problems associated with a particular prescription and blocks the clinician's order from further execution to avert potentially serious reactions.

Table 5.1 Abstract from "Unintended Effects of a Computerized Physician Order Entry Nearly Hard-Stop Alert" [5]

Background: The effectiveness of *CPOE systems* has been modest, largely because clinicians frequently override electronic alerts
Methods: To evaluate the effectiveness of a nearly "hard-stop" *CPOE system* prescribing alert intended to reduce concomitant orders for warfarin and trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, a randomized clinical trial was conducted at two academic medical centers in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. A total of 1981 clinicians were assigned to either an intervention group receiving a nearly hard-stop alert or a control group receiving the standard practice. The study duration was August 9, 2006, through February 13, 2007
Results: The proportion of desired responses (i.e., not reordering the alert-triggering drug within 10 min of firing) was 57.2% (111 of 194 hard-stop alerts) in the intervention group and 13.5% (20 of 148) in the control group (adjusted odds ratio, 0.12; 95% confidence interval, 0.045–0.33). However, the study was terminated early because of four unintended consequences identified among patients in the intervention group: a delay of treatment with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole in two patients and a delay of treatment with warfarin in another two patients
Conclusions: An electronic hard-stop alert as part of an inpatient *CPOE system* seemed to be extremely effective in changing prescribing habits. However, this intervention precipitated clinically important treatment delays in four patients who needed immediate drug therapy. These results illustrate the importance of formal evaluation and monitoring for unintended consequences of programmatic interventions intended to improve prescribing habits

The study was designed as a quantitative, explanatory field study that was conducted as an RCT. The study found that these alerts can help to reduce the number of alert-triggering orders. But it also found that the hard-stop alert led to clinically important treatment delays in four patients.

5.5.2 *Clinical Decision Support for Worker Health: A Five-Site Qualitative Needs Assessment in Primary Care Setting*

Besides evaluating the effect of an intervention, evaluation may also try to understand reasons for successful or unsuccessful implementation of an application system. For these kinds of questions, qualitative studies are often chosen.

Table 5.2 presents the abstract of such a qualitative study. The authors analyzed need, barriers, and facilitators for clinical decision support (CDS) in primary care. The study was performed as a qualitative, exploratory field study.

The authors found several factors that may hinder or foster the use of CDS in primary care. The results of this multi-center study can now be used to implement CDS in commercial application software products for primary care.

Table 5.2 Abstract from "Clinical Decision Support for Worker Health: A Five-Site Qualitative Needs Assessment in Primary Care Settings." [6]

Background: Although patients who work and have related health issues are usually first seen in primary care, providers in these settings do not routinely ask questions about work. Guidelines to help manage such patients are rarely used in primary care. *Electronic health record systems (EHRS)* with worker health CDS tools have potential for assisting these practices
Objective: This study aimed to identify the need for and barriers and facilitators related to implementation of CDS tools for the clinical management of working patients in a variety of primary care settings
Methods: We used a qualitative design that included analysis of interview transcripts and observational field notes from 10 clinics in five organizations
Results: We interviewed 83 providers, staff members, managers, informatics and IT experts, and leaders and spent 35 h observing. We identified eight themes in four categories related to CDS for worker health (operational issues, usefulness of proposed CDS, effort and time-related issues, and topic-specific issues). These categories were classified as facilitators or barriers to the use of the CDS tools. Facilitators related to operational issues include current technical feasibility and new work patterns associated with the coordinated care model. Facilitators concerning usefulness include users' need for awareness and evidence-based tools, appropriateness of the proposed CDS for their patients, and the benefits of population health data. Barriers that are effort-related include the additional time the proposed CDS might take as well as other pressing organizational priorities. Barriers that are topic-specific include sensitive issues related to health and work and the complexities of information about work
Conclusion: We discovered several themes not previously described that can guide future CDS development: technical feasibility of the proposed CDS within a commercial electronic health record (EHR), the sensitive nature of some CDS content, and the need to assist the entire health care team in managing worker health

5.5.3 *Certification of Health Information Systems*

There exist several national and international approaches for certification of application software products to be used in health care, such as the European CE certification, the German digital health application (DiGA) repository, the ONC Health IT Certification Program in the U.S. and IHE Connectathons.

CE certification is mandatory in the European Union for all application software products developed to be used for medical purposes such as diagnosis, *prevention*, monitoring, or prognosis. For example, a software calculating the correct amount of insulin needed is considered a medical device and thus needs CE certification. CE certification assures that the software complies with all European legal requirements regarding safety, health, and environment. Depending on the risk class that the application software product belongs to, certification can be done by the manufacturer of the software or it must be done through external auditing. Details on CE certification are available in the EU's Medical Device Regulation 2017/745 [7].

The German DiGA repository for "health applications" [8] is maintained by the Federal Institute for Drugs and Medical Devices and lists health apps that fulfill a set of quality requirements. Besides being CE-certified as a medical device of a low-risk class, the application must be actively used both by the patient and by a health care provider and must fulfill certain data protection and information safety requirements. In addition, the vendor must provide supporting evidence (e.g., from evaluation studies) about the positive effect of the health application on the quality of *patient care*. When listed in the DiGa repository, health applications can be prescribed by a physician and are reimbursed by the patient's health insurance company.

In the United States, the Health IT Certification Program is operated by the Office of the National Coordinator for Health Information Technology (ONC) [9]. To be certified, a vendor of a component must fulfill a number of requirements that assess whether an application software product supports clinical processes, care coordination, privacy and security, patient engagement, and exchange and interoperability of patient data. Part of certification is the annual testing of the component in real-world settings.

The IHE initiative [10] (Sects. 3.7.2.5 and 3.7.2.6) strives to increase interoperability between components based on existing standards such as HL7 and DICOM (Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine). IHE offers testing for the standards-based interoperability between components in the so-called Connectathons. During a Connectathon, components of different vendors exchange information with other components in a supervised environment. The Connectathon provides detailed validation of the components' interoperability and compliance with IHE profiles. The results of testing are published by IHE.

Besides certification of quality and interoperability of software, health care facilities or vendors can strive for certification of the quality of their internal processes by applying for ISO certifications or for the Joint Commission certification.

The ISO 9001 standard [11] defines criteria for the *quality management system* of an organization. An ISO 9001 certificate states that an organization follows certain formalized quality processes, that it monitors the outcome of its processes, and that it facilitates their continuous improvement.

The ISO 27001 standard [12] focuses on information security management. An ISO 27001 certificate states that an organization has an established information security management system and is able to manage the security of information, such as employee information, patient information, or financial information.

The Joint Commission [13] is a US-based organization assessing health care organizations and programs based on preestablished quality standards. A subset of its standards focuses on *management of information systems* and addresses issues such as data privacy, information security, standardization of data collection, and interoperability of data.

5.6 Exercises

5.6.1 Quality of Integration

Read the following case descriptions and discuss the integration problems using the types of integration presented in Sect. 5.3.4. Which negative effects for information logistics result from the identified integration problems?

1. A physician enters a medical diagnosis for a patient first in the *medical documentation and management system (MDMS)* and later, when ordering an X-ray, again in the *CPOE system*.
2. The position of the patient's name and the formatting of the patient's birthdate vary between the *MDMS* and the *CPOE system*.
3. When physicians shift from the *MDMS* to the *CPOE system*, they have to log in again and again search for the correct patient.
4. The *CPOE system* and the *RIS* use slightly different catalogs of available radiology examinations.
5. When physicians write the discharge letter for a patient in the *MDMS*, they also have to code the discharge diagnosis of a patient. For this coding, they have to use a feature that is only available in the *patient administration system*, so they have to shift to this application system.
6. While at the patient's bedside during their ward rounds, physicians have to use several application components at the same time, such as *MDMS* for retrieving recent findings, the *CPOE system* for ordering, and the *PACS* for retrieving images.

5.6.2 Data Collection in Evaluation Studies

Read Examples 5.5.1 and 5.5.2 and determine which methods for collecting data (as described in Sects. 5.4.3 and 5.4.4) have been used.

5.6.3 Study Design in Evaluation Studies

Read Examples 5.5.1 and 5.5.2 and describe the chosen study design in more detail, using the description presented in Sect. 5.4.2.

Try to explain for which types of study questions the RCT is the best study design.

References

1. ISACA. COBIT—Effective IT Governance at Your Fingertips. 2021. https://www.isaca.org/resources/cobit. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
2. Axelos. ITIL Foundation: ITIL. 4th edn. TSO (The Stationery Office); 2019.
3. Ammenwerth E, Rigby M. Evidence-based health informatics—promoting safety and efficiency through scientific methods and ethical policy. Amsterdam: IOS Press; 2016.
4. Price M, Lau F. The clinical adoption meta-model: a temporal meta-model describing the clinical adoption of health information systems. BMC Med Inform Decis Mak. 2014;14:43.
5. Strom BL, Schinnar R, Aberra F, Bilker W, Hennessy S, Leonard CE, Pifer E. Unintended effects of a computerized physician order entry nearly hard-stop alert to prevent a drug interaction: a randomized controlled trial. Arch Intern Med. 2010;170(17):1578–83.
6. Ash JS, Chase D, Baron S, Filios MS, Shiffman RN, Marovich S, Wiesen J, Luensman GB. Clinical decision support for worker health: a five-site qualitative needs assessment in primary care settings. Appl Clin Inform. 2020;11(4):635–43.
7. European Commission. Regulation 2017/745 on Medical Devices of 5 April 2017. 2017. http://eur-lex.europa.eu/legal-content/EN/TXT/PDF/?uri=CELEX:32017R0745&from=DE. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
8. Federal Institute for Drugs and Medical Devices. DiGA—Digital Health Applications. 2021. https://www.bfarm.de/EN/MedicalDevices/DiGA/_node.html. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
9. The Office of the National Coordinator for Health Information Technology (ONC). About the ONC Health IT Certification Program. 2021. https://www.healthit.gov/topic/certification-ehrs/about-onc-health-it-certification-program. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
10. IHE International. Integrating the Healthcare Enterprise (IHE). 2021. https://www.ihe.net. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
11. International Organization for Standardization. ISO 9000 Family on Quality Management. https://www.iso.org/iso-9001-quality-management.html. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
12. International Organization for Standardization. ISO/IEC 27001 Information Security Management. 2021. https://www.iso.org/isoiec-27001-information-security.html. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
13. Joint Commission. https://www.jointcommissioninternational.org. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.

Chapter 6
Information Systems for Specific Health Care and Research Settings

6.1 Introduction

In Chaps. 3 and 4, we introduced health information systems and two perspectives when dealing with them: the technological perspective and the management perspective. Using the technological perspective, we describe the architecture and integration of an information system. Using the management perspective, we describe the strategic, tactical, and operational management of an information system.

In this chapter, we will now refer to these perspectives with respect to specific health care settings. Please recall Chap. 1 where life situations and their relative share of health care were introduced. The following institutional health care settings were mentioned in particular:

- In hospitals, patients with acute and chronic diseases or in an emergency situation receive inpatient and, partially, outpatient treatment.
- In nursing homes, persons receive care.
- In medical offices, patients with acute and chronic diseases receive outpatient treatment.
- Ambulatory nursing organizations take care of persons in their homes.

Each health care setting thus has a specific role in providing health care and is related to specific life situations. This specific role corresponds to specific structures, processes, and stakeholder groups in these different health care settings. Not surprisingly, the information systems of these health care settings also show typical differences both from a technological and from a management perspective that we want to explore further in this chapter.

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8_6

Besides discussing information systems in these institutional health care settings, we will also address information systems for medical research facilities as well as transinstitutional information systems in regions or in states. We will also discuss how personal environments such as homes can be considered for health care (Fig. 6.1).

For most of these health care settings, you will first be introduced to their characteristics, such as their activities, areas, and persons. Then we will describe their specific technological and management perspectives, building on Chaps. 3 and 4.

As mentioned in Chap. 1, health care organizations can vary from country to country. Therefore, the characteristics described here, as well as their technological and management perspectives, may also differ to some extent from country to country.

Please also recall the definitions of "information system" and "health information system" in Chap. 2 with respect to specific health care settings. Let us take hospitals as an example of such health care settings: Hospital information systems are the socio-technical subsystem of hospitals, which comprise all data, information, and knowledge processing as well as the associated human or technical actors in their respective data, information, and knowledge processing roles. The same holds accordingly for other health care settings mentioned in this chapter.

After reading this chapter, you should be able to

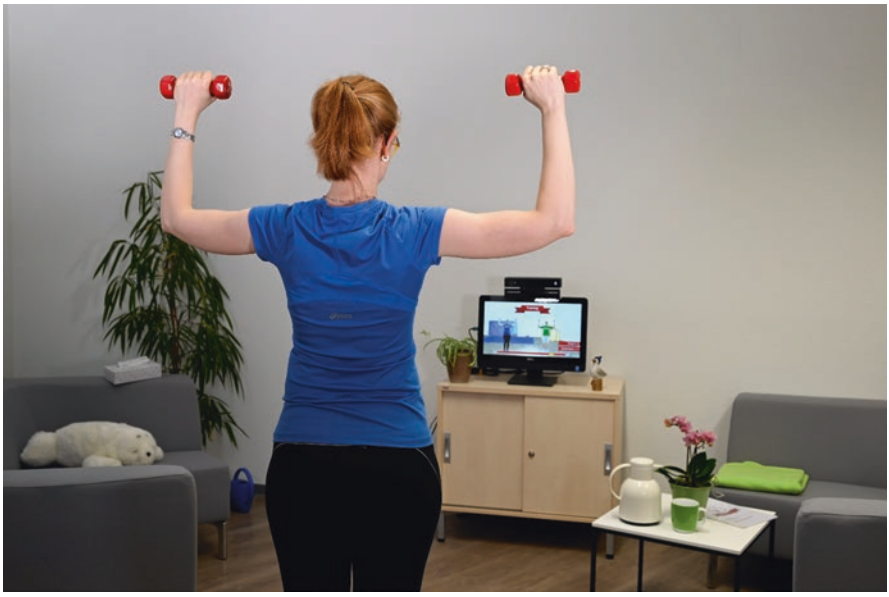


Fig. 6.1 Health information systems constitute an essential part of providing good health care. Patient with shoulder pain trains at home with an autonomous rehabilitation system

- describe characteristics of different health care settings,
- explain the resulting implications for the technologies used and the management of information systems in these health care settings, and
- explain the differences of specific health information systems and their management.

Please note that the terms highlighted in italics are terms from the glossary or represent functions or application system types.

6.2 Information Systems in Hospitals

6.2.1 Characteristics of Hospitals

Hospitals are settings where patients with acute and chronic diseases or in an emergency situation receive inpatient and, partially, outpatient treatment.

Areas of hospitals to be considered by hospital information systems are wards, outpatient units, service units (e.g., diagnostic units such as laboratory and radiology departments, therapeutic units such as the operation room, and other units such as pharmacy, patient records archive, library, blood bank), hospital administration areas (e.g., patient administration department, department of quality management, financial and controlling department, department of facility management, information management department, general administration department, human resources department), offices, and writing services for (clinical) report writing. In addition, there are the management areas, such as hospital management, management of clinical and non-clinical departments, administration management, and nursing management. These areas are related to *patient care*. They could be broken down further. For university medical centers, additional areas for *research and education* must be added to the above list.

The most important persons in a hospital are, obviously, patients. Important groups of persons working in a hospital are physicians, nurses, administrative staff, technical staff, medical informaticians, and health information management staff. Within each group of persons, different needs and demands on the hospital information system may exist depending on the role, tasks, and responsibilities. Ward physicians, for example, require different information than physicians working in service units or senior physicians. Patients sometimes need similar information as physicians but in a different form.

6.2.2 Technological Perspective

Hospitals can be considered as quite complex institutional health care settings. Therefore, nearly all functions mentioned in Chap. 3, together with their data to be processed, have to be considered, as well as many of the application components,

nearly all of which can be part of a hospital information system. The examples in Chap. 3 were often taken from hospitals because of this fact. Consequently, integrity and integration are especially crucial when managing hospital information systems.

6.2.3 Management Perspective

As hospitals are such complex entities, there are many different stakeholder groups with sometimes conflicting requirements regarding the hospital's information system. These stakeholder groups include the various professional groups (physicians, nurses, administrators, researchers, teachers, etc.). In this situation, systematic information management and a carefully planned step-by-step approach of shaping the information system are essential. Thus, all tasks and methods presented in Chap. 4 have to be considered by the management of the information system. Due to the same reason, most examples in Chap. 4 were taken from hospitals.

6.3 Information Systems in Nursing Homes

6.3.1 Characteristics of Nursing Homes

Nursing homes are organizations primarily related to the care of persons with physical and mental functional deficits. These are often, but not exclusively, senior citizens at an advanced age. They are usually called residents.

The most important working areas in nursing homes are the wards and the residents' rooms, the administration areas, and the management areas (especially nursing management). Depending on their specialty, nursing homes may have dedicated areas for therapeutic services. Nursing homes can be of very different size, ranging from a few to hundreds of beds.

The most important persons in a nursing home are, obviously, the nursing home residents. In addition, the visitors are also of great importance and special amenities and services are provided for them as well. Important groups of persons working in a nursing home are nurses as well as administrative and management staff.

6.3.2 Technological Perspective

In nursing homes, the functions to be performed are mainly those of nurses and administrative staff. The typical application component is the *nursing management and documentation system (NMDS)* that supports major functions such as *patient administration*, *decision-making*, planning, *organization of patient treatment*, and

coding. In the event that external physicians or other specialists are involved in *patient care*, they may also document their findings in the *NMDS*. Otherwise, they may use their own application system for documentation (such as the application system of the general practitioner (GP)). In the latter case in particular, but also in order to be able to receive prescriptions and findings from specialists and laboratories, for example, communication links from the *NMDS* to application systems outside the nursing home are required. The interoperability standards and integration technologies from Chap. 3 can be used for this purpose. A prerequisite, however, is the physical integration discussed in Sect. 3.10.2 based on a secure data transmission connection at the physical tool layer.

6.3.3 Management Perspective

Management of information systems in nursing homes is typically reduced. Often, senior nursing managers will be responsible for organizing *management of information systems*. Sometimes, they may be supported by the vendor of the *NMDS* which delivers and maintains the software and sometimes the hardware.

The aforementioned requirements of the technology, particularly with regard to the necessary external communication, also lead to special challenges in the area of data security. In particular, if the nursing home, unlike a hospital, does not have its own professional information managers, the management of the home must take strict care to ensure that the tasks of professional and systematic information management are nevertheless covered. It is a good idea to outsource the corresponding services to specialized external companies. But even such a solution does not relieve the home management of its responsibility for the information system.

6.4 Information Systems in Medical Offices

6.4.1 Characteristics of Medical Offices

Medical offices are settings where patients with acute and chronic diseases receive outpatient treatment.

The most important working areas in medical offices are the examination and treatment rooms. Further areas for patients that we must consider are waiting areas with, for example, waiting rooms. All this is similar to outpatient units in hospitals. In addition, areas for administrative purposes, for example, patient management, billing, and telephone services, can often be found in medical offices. Depending on their specialty, medical offices (in particular specialist offices) may have additional areas for diagnostic or therapeutic services.

As in hospitals, the most important persons in medical offices are patients. The three groups of persons usually working in medical offices are physicians, other health care professionals (e.g., nurses, laboratory staff, psychologists, physiotherapists), and administrative staff. Whereas hundreds or thousands of health care professionals work in hospitals, the number of persons working in medical offices is much lower, often less than 10. Information systems for medical offices have to support these persons' needs. Obviously, the complexity of information systems of medical offices is less than the one of the hospitals.

6.4.2 Technological Perspective

In medical offices, the functions to be performed are mainly those of health care professionals and of administrative staff with regard to *patient care* and administration. As in other settings, application systems are needed which support functions such as *patient administration*, *decision-making*, planning, *organization of patient treatment*, and *coding*. Typically, a *patient administration system* and a *medical documentation and management systems (MDMS)*, both based on software from a single vendor, are combined into a single application system. The result is similar to the *clinical information system (CIS)* and *electronic health record system (EHRS)* discussed in Sect. 3.4.15. In the case of specialist medical offices with additional areas for diagnostic or therapeutic services, additional application systems for these functions can be found, for example, a *radiology information system (RIS)* together with a *picture archiving and communication system (PACS)* or *laboratory information system (LIS)*. If so, integration of these application systems in the office is needed as discussed in Chap. 3.

Medical offices exchange a wide range of information with nursing homes, laboratories, hospitals, specialists, and other care facilities. Therefore, secure interfaces for external communication must also be provided for its application systems (Chap. 3).

6.4.3 Management Perspective

Medical offices are sometimes independent "small enterprises". Other times, they are part of a larger health care facility. Medical offices are even smaller than nursing homes and can hardly have their own information management staff. If the medical offices are independent enterprises, however, they still need to take responsibility for the information management. Ensuring data security in particular must not be neglected under any circumstances. The owner or the management of the medical office will then be responsible for the management of the information system,

sometimes supported by consulting companies, which also deliver and maintain hardware and application software products for application systems in these offices. If the medical offices are part of a larger health care facility, information management is usually handled by the IT departments of these facilities.

6.5 Information Systems in Ambulatory Nursing Organizations

6.5.1 Characteristics of Ambulatory Nursing Organization

Ambulatory nursing organizations are primarily related to the care of persons with physical and mental functional deficits living at home. These are often, but not exclusively, senior citizens at an advanced age that are visited regularly by ambulatory nurses.

The most important working areas therefore are the patients' homes as well as an administrative office area where the visits are coordinated. The most important persons working for ambulatory nursing organizations are nurses, supported by administrative and management staff. Ambulatory nursing organizations can be of very different size, from a few to hundreds of nurses.

6.5.2 Technological Perspective

Ambulatory nursing organizations need support for the overall coordination and organization of the visits at the patients' homes as well as for nursing management and documentation, done mostly at the patients' bedside, and for administration and billing. The respective functions are compiled in Table 3.3.

Ambulatory nursing organization may use an *NMDS* that also offers special features for organization and coordination of visits at patients' home. At the physical tool layer, mobile tools are often used to facilitate information processing at the patients' homes when using the *NMDS*.

6.5.3 Management Perspective

As for medical offices, ambulatory nursing organizations may be small enterprises or part of larger organizations. *Management of information systems* in ambulatory nursing organizations depends on the size of the organization here as well. The

owner or the management of the organization will then be responsible for the management of the information system. Sometimes, they may be supported by the vendor of the *NMDS* which delivers and maintains the software and sometimes the hardware as well.

6.6 Information Systems in Medical Research Facilities

6.6.1 Characteristics of Medical Research Facilities

Medical research facilities exist in a variety of shapes and with different characteristics. Medical research is conducted at university medical centers, for example, in specialized working groups, institutes, or sub-units, but may also be conducted in universities, associated institutes, or industrial facilities, for example, in the pharmaceutical industry. Medical research usually is interdisciplinary and involves heterogeneous data on various entity types, for example, "clinical trial," "finding," or "classified diagnoses" (Sect. 3.2.3.4). Especially in academic centers, efficient *research and education* must be supported. The objective of clinical research is the generalization of findings and experiences to gain new knowledge. Data documented during the patient treatment process may be reused for retrospective analysis to find evidence for generalization and to generate hypotheses for new studies.

6.6.2 Technological Perspective

Research facilities are very different from patient care facilities in terms of the functions to be performed and also in terms of the application systems to be used. For this reason, we will discuss both the specific functions and the application systems in more detail below. The following specific information processing functions need to be supported (Fig. 6.2).

Experiments and clinical trials are important for the progress in medicine because they update biomedical and health knowledge. Scientific staff must be supported in *planning, executing, and analyzing studies and experiments*. Planning and execution must conform to legal requirements. For example, patients have to be informed of opportunities and risks before they can consent to taking part in a clinical trial. Data documentation needs to fulfill the de facto standard of minimal requirements for managing research data, the FAIR criteria for research data management: findable, accessible, interoperable, and reusable. Significant progress in research, for example, in generating new hypotheses for later prospective studies or by uncovering new pathomechanisms or pathways associated with diseases, is also achieved through retrospective analysis of large amounts of heterogeneous data. These data-driven scientific approaches must also be supported by research facilities.

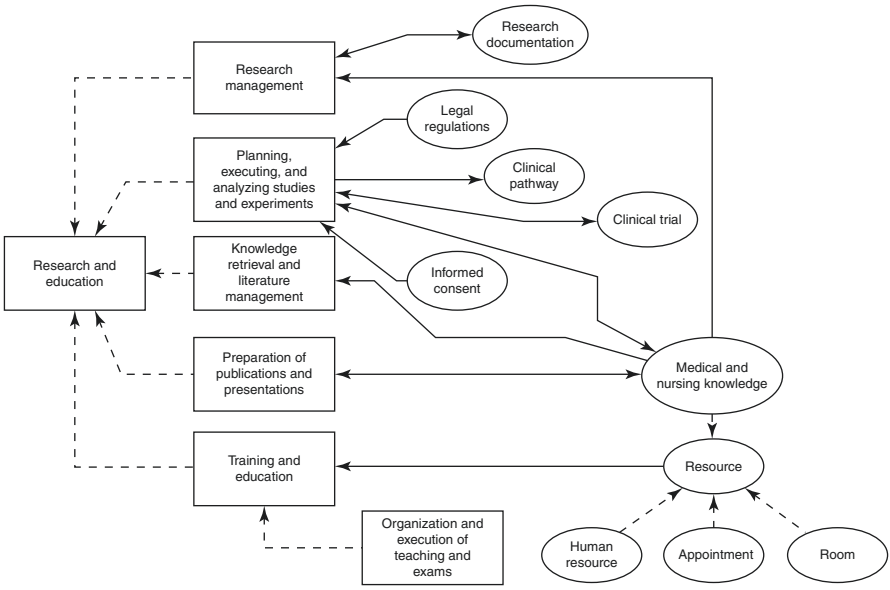


Fig. 6.2 Extract of the domain layer of the 3LGM²-based reference model describing the function *research and education*, its subfunctions and interpreted and updated entity types

Finally, for research data, processes of pseudonymization and/or anonymization must be supported wherever necessary in order to conform to legal requirements.

Scientific staff needs to *prepare publications and presentations*. Therefore, central collections of both the facility's relevant publications and other literature need to be made available to them using a standardized interface. Scientific staff needs access to research-relevant information and general medical knowledge.

Medical casuistic and treatment data must be made available for *training and education* in medical professions. Furthermore, the *organization and execution of teaching and exams*, for example, through e-learning tools and tools for taking electronic exams, must also be supported.

Research management is executed in all of the hospital's organizational units which decide on planning, monitoring, and directing research activities. This includes the documentation of research activities as well as the management of third-party funds and the management of scientific sub- or service units within facilities.

To implement the above-mentioned functions, numerous different application components usually exist. Frequently, medical research facilities run multiple decentralized database systems or repositories for specific research purposes, projects, or trials. Clinician scientists often call these "cohort" databases, reflecting the longitudinal or cross-sectional nature of data capture. Dedicated research data management offices support researchers in creating such data repositories or registries in accordance with FAIR criteria by consulting them in terms of how to plan,

conduct, and document research projects and by supporting them in selecting standards for structuring, representing, and saving their data along with appropriate metadata, thus aiming for a certain degree of interoperability and reusability.

For clinical trials which have to fulfill very high standards with regard to data quality, data monitoring, versioning, etc., dedicated electronic data capture (EDC) systems are used. These offer customizable data entry forms and various export formats, most notably using CDISC standards (Sect. 3.7.2.11).

Data from clinical application systems which are provisioned for reuse in research are frequently stored in data warehouse systems (DWS), data lakes (repositories for raw, often unstructured data), or *open platforms* (Fig. 6.3). If the facility does not run an *open platform*, all of the above require some sort of export (e.g., as Health Level 7 (HL7) messages, HL7 FHIR) or extraction process from clinical application systems. While data lakes incorporate raw data such as files, blobs, or genomic sequences, DWS, as invariant systems for research, require an extract, transform, load (ETL) process, during which quality checks, and mapping to terminologies may be performed. *Open platforms*, in contrast, provide care-level, longitudinal patient-related data of the highest quality and semantic definition, so that clinical or research applications as well as registries can be built upon them. For research purposes, a research copy of the EHR with pseudonyms may be used.

With rising needs of cross-institutional or international research collaboration, data sharing, and integration, many medical research facilities establish central units called data integration centers (DIC). They integrate data and run all systems that enable cross-institutional querying and data exchange, while at the same time

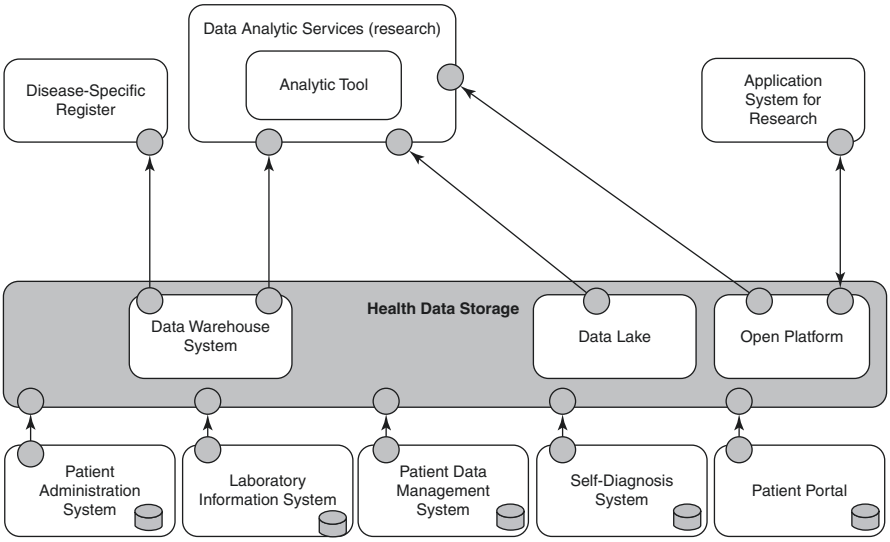


Fig. 6.3 Logical tool layer: application components supporting the reuse of clinical data during "planning, execution and analyzing studies and experiments"

taking care of use-and-access processes and their documentation, data protection and safety, consent management, and all activities related to data integration and semantic enhancement (e.g., terminology binding).

Medical research requires a great deal of creativity, and the application and database systems used must be flexibly adaptable to new research questions being investigated. Therefore, it is necessary to enforce the use of open standards for data representation, so that the data are reusable in future projects and in different contexts. Likewise, open interfaces and standardized query languages are necessary for data access. This facilitates rapid and flexible software development for research.

Systems for research often demand huge storage capacity as well as adequate network bandwidth, particularly in the disciplines concerned with omics (e.g., in metabolomics) or imaging data. Research organizations must anticipate future storage needs and provide adequate physical storage systems as well as highly performant computing infrastructures for extensive analyses of large and heterogeneous datasets. For this purpose, facilities frequently run their own high-performance computing clusters, including special GPU (graphics processing unit) systems. Employing cloud solutions may also be useful to share computing capacities with other research facilities.

Medical research is also dependent on international cooperation, which requires even more flexible options for digital communication beyond the boundaries of the facility than is necessary for health care facilities. When research facilities are part of a health care facility, the physical data processing systems of the research facility are therefore connected in a separate part of the communication network that is strictly separated from the communication network of the health care facility.

6.6.3 Management Perspective

Information systems in medical research facilities demand dedicated and specialized management for optimal support of research endeavors. To fulfill FAIR criteria and in particular to enable data reuse and sharing within and across facilities, it is crucial to avoid home-made research infrastructures (e.g., using spreadsheets or proprietary databases) which are not or only partly interoperable with other systems. From a management perspective, it is crucial to define and enforce rules, processes, and standards for representing, storing, and sharing research data. To achieve this, dedicated research data management units can provide consultation and support for researchers, at the same time supervising a coherent management strategy. If they exist, these units may work closely together with DICs.

Strategic planning and establishing a strategic information management plan is particularly challenging in research institutions for two reasons. Firstly, it is difficult to foresee which research questions will have to be addressed in 5 years' time. As a

result, the application systems required for this purpose can also be predicted less well than in health care facilities. It is therefore necessary to plan primarily for generic tools and also software development groups in order to be able to adapt quickly to new research questions. Secondly, research is often funded on a project basis. Thus, it is often only known at fairly short notice what funding is available for the procurement of software and hardware; for the long-term maintenance and servicing of components, the necessary funds can often only be made available on an ad hoc basis. Consequently, a strategic information management plan will tend to provide a broad framework for the development of the research institution's information system and focus on infrastructure (Sect. 2.11).

6.7 Information Systems in Other Health care Settings

In addition to the institutional health care settings already mentioned, there are a number of other institutions involved in health care services for people. These include:

- pharmacies,
- medical supply stores,
- therapeutic offices,
- inpatient and outpatient rehabilitation facilities,
- hospices,
- wellness facilities, and
- sports centers and leisure parks.

6.7.1 Characteristics of Other Health care Settings

6.7.1.1 Pharmacies

Pharmacies are settings where persons with acute or chronic diseases or for preventive purposes can obtain prescription-only or non-prescription medications as well as medical aids.

A pharmacy usually consists of three areas. The free-dial area refers to the sales area in front of the counter where non-pharmacy products are offered, such as band-aids, toothpaste, and teas. The area behind the counter, which is clearly visible to all customers, is called the sight-selection area. Here, a person will find pharmacy-only products that can be purchased without a prescription, such as light pain analgesics, cough syrups, or nasal spray. In the last area, the pharmacy warehouse, which is usually structurally separated from the sales area, prescription-only medications are stocked in special shelving systems and pharmacy lockers.

Many different professional groups are employed in pharmacies. The most important people working in pharmacies are pharmacists. They are the experts on medicines and are responsible for, among other things, the production and dispensing of medicines and advising patients. Every pharmacy must have at least one pharmacist on site at all times. In addition, there are a number of pharmaceutical personnel, such as pharmaceutical technical assistants, pharmacist assistants, and pharmaceutical assistants. However, non-pharmaceutical personnel also operate in pharmacies. These include pharmaceutical commercial assistants, pharmacy assistants, and skilled pharmacy workers.

6.7.1.2 Therapeutic Offices

There is a variety of different therapeutic offices that provide (therapeutic) treatment for people in the outpatient sector. These include offices for physical therapy, physiotherapy, occupational therapy, speech therapy, and massage therapy. In addition to the relief of physical complaints, however, there are also therapeutic offices for relieving mental complaints, such as psychotherapists or learning therapists.

Therapeutic offices, similar to medical practices, consist of a waiting area, a registration area with a reception desk, and one or more treatment rooms. The equipment of the individual treatment rooms depends on the therapeutic measures to be performed. Depending on the range of services provided by a facility, there may also be additional areas for specific therapeutic services. In physiotherapy practices, for example, it is not uncommon to find individual equipment areas for performing physiotherapy exercises.

Alongside patients, therapists are the most important professional group in therapeutic practices. Depending on the specialization of a therapeutic office, these include masseurs, physiotherapists, occupational therapists, or respiratory, speech, and voice teachers. The tasks to be performed vary considerably depending on the professions, but usually include both advanced diagnostics and therapy.

Quite often, medical assistants also work in therapeutic practices. They take on administrative and supporting activities.

6.7.1.3 Inpatient and Outpatient Rehabilitation Facilities

There are both outpatient and inpatient rehabilitation facilities of all sizes. Rehabilitation facilities are settings in which patients with a health condition are enabled “to remain in or return to their home or community, live independently, and participate in education, the labor market and civic life” [1]. For this purpose, rehabilitation facilities often focus on a specific discipline. For example, there are rehabilitation centers specialized in cardiological, neurological, or orthopedic rehabilitation.

Inpatient rehabilitation facilities, also called rehabilitation centers, are comparable to hospitals. Thus, there are also different wards and service areas which must be supported by an information system: patient rooms, community areas, treatment areas for individual and group therapy, administrative areas (e.g., patient administration department, financial and controlling department), and also a kitchen/canteen.

Outpatient rehabilitation centers are comparable to therapeutic offices, only that they are larger and usually offer a wider range of functions.

The most important people in rehabilitation facilities are the patients. Among the most important employees are the medical staff as well as various therapists (e.g., occupational therapists, speech therapists, and physiotherapists), nurses, and social workers. Alongside the medical-therapeutic staff, there are also a large number of employees in administrative areas, for example, typists, therapy planners, and receptionists. On top of this, there are various service employees, such as housekeepers and kitchen staff. The number of employees per facility strongly depends on the size and scope of the services provided.

6.7.1.4 Hospices

Hospices focus on the palliative care of critically ill patients and of persons passing away. Apart from relieving pain and enhancing the individual's quality of life in their final phase of life, the tasks also include providing bereavement services for relatives. In addition to inpatient hospices, there also are outpatient hospice services that provide support for patients and relatives in their own homes or in an inpatient care facility.

Inpatient hospices are relatively small (8–16 beds) and consist of areas similar to inpatient care facilities. Alongside the patients' rooms, hospices also have a reception area, administration, community rooms, guest rooms for relatives, staff rooms, and a kitchen.

Hospice care is provided by an interdisciplinary team. Alongside nursing staff with an additional palliative qualification (palliative care nurse), chaplains, psychologists, and social workers, hospice volunteers with training as assistant dying companions are also among the most important employees of hospices. There are also administrative staff and housekeepers. The number of nursing staff in a hospice depends on the number of beds available. In Germany, there is a care contract for inpatient hospice care that contains corresponding indications. Hospices, like inpatient nursing homes, do not have their own medical staff. Medical care is provided by physicians from general practices (primary care physicians) or from attached hospitals.

6.7.1.5 Wellness Facilities

Especially in the context of tertiary *prevention*, certain facilities play a role that one would not necessarily think of first in the context of a health care setting. For example, various wellness activities to increase well-being and relaxation, such as massages, can be performed in specific wellness centers, wellness, and cosmetic studios, but also in hotels specialized in this field. The main working areas in wellness facilities are the treatment rooms and, depending on the range of services, other additional areas for specific therapeutic services. In addition, there are reception or registration areas for administrative purposes and, in some facilities, also waiting rooms.

Besides the customer, or patient, the therapeutic staff, such as masseurs, physiotherapists, or sports therapists, are among the most important people of wellness facilities. The list of employees is completed by administrative staff. The number of employees depends on the size of the facility. In small wellness and cosmetic studios, there are often less than 10 people working there.

6.7.1.6 Sports Centers and Leisure Parks

Tertiary *prevention* may also coincide with rehabilitation. Sometimes, fitness activities can be performed not only in certified rehabilitation facilities but also in regular sports studios and sports parks. Furthermore, activities for primary *prevention* may be carried out in sports facilities.

Conventional fitness studios consist of various functional areas. The cardiovascular area is particularly suitable for improving general fitness and thus preventing diseases promoted by a lack of physical activity, such as high blood pressure and diabetes. Functional fitness areas with, for example, medicine balls and kettle bells as well as free weight areas are used for strengthening. Targeted strengthening of the shoulder, back, and neck muscles, for example, can reduce the risk of musculoskeletal disorders of the shoulder and back.

Customers, or members of a sports center, are one of the most important groups of people at sports centers and leisure parks. In addition, there are various service employees who are responsible for advising customers on site, assisting members at the reception desk, and offering sales services. Various specialized (fitness) trainers are responsible for training support and advice. The number of employees depends to a great extent on the size of a facility.

6.7.2 Technological Perspective

It is already clear from the basic characteristics described above that there are considerable differences in the functions to be performed depending on the facility or setting. In therapeutic practices and rehabilitation facilities, as in doctors' practices and hospitals, the focus is on the medical or therapeutic treatment of people. The function of pharmacies, on the other hand, is to supply people with medicines and medical aids. For this purpose, it is necessary to produce, store, and test drugs, as well as to dispense these drugs to the patients and inform them about the intake, storage, and risks of a drug (advice).

Consequently, these diverse information processing functions also result in different requirements with regard to the application components that are usually used. While application components for prescription and medication management as well as specific pharmacy resource planning systems are used in a pharmacy, therapeutic practices such as medical practices have *patient administration systems* for admitting and registering patients, *MDMS* for documenting the therapeutic measures performed, and *patient administration systems* for billing purposes. Even if wellness facilities and sports facilities do not focus on a person as a patient, they nevertheless also have application components for scheduling, documenting the services performed, and billing.

6.7.3 Management Perspective

Due to the considerable differences in the functions to be performed in the various facilities or settings, the way in which *management of information systems* is organized also differs. The more complex the functions are, and the more persons are involved, the more *management of information systems* will be organized in a dedicated way as in hospitals. In the case of smaller settings and/or limited information processing functions, *management of information systems* might be assigned as an additional task to the management in these settings. As in medical offices, these persons might be supported by consulting companies, which may also deliver and maintain hardware and application software products for application components.

6.8 Information Systems in Personal Environments

6.8.1 Characteristics of Personal Environments as Health care Settings

Probably, the most important personal environment for persons are their homes. As personal environments, we may also regard workplaces and transport vehicles such as cars. As mentioned in Chap. 1, we primarily associate personal environments with our regular daily lives. Personal environments, however, may also be related to health care. Thus, besides supporting primary *prevention* and wellness for healthy

people, personal environments may also support diagnostic and therapeutic activities, rehabilitation, or secondary and tertiary *prevention* (i.e., to reduce or soften the impact of a disease that has already occurred). Health care activities in our personal environments are often denoted with terms starting with "tele" or "home," for example, telecare, telemedicine, telerehabilitation, or home care.

6.8.2 Technological Perspective

In the case of tele-activities supporting diagnostics or rehabilitation, these activities are often assigned to health care facilities such as hospitals, medical offices, or ambulatory nursing organizations. In this case, the functions and application systems can be regarded as part of the information systems of these settings. However, the information processing activities of these settings do not end within the walls of these settings but take place in a personal environment. Therefore, technical complexity is higher and efforts with regard to data privacy and security are more demanding, as informational self-determination is a very sensitive matter.

In the case of wellness and of primary *prevention*, the situation is different. Here, persons install application systems as introduced in Chap. 3 on their own and use these in their personal environments.

6.8.3 Management Perspective

In the case of activities which can be assigned to health care settings such as hospitals, medical offices, or ambulatory nursing organizations, *management of information systems* is primarily done by these settings. In other activities, for example those related to wellness or primary *prevention*, the persons themselves are responsible. We would hardly call this *management of information systems* although it would technically be correct.

6.9 Information Systems in States and Regions

6.9.1 Characteristics of States and Regions as Health care Settings

In the Universal Declaration of Human Rights of 1948, the right to health is found as part of the right of all people to an adequate standard of living. In the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights (ICESCR) of the United Nations, as well as in other UN human rights treaties, the states commit themselves to ensuring adequate, non-discriminatory health care.

Usually, the government health ministries of the states are responsible for health care. Depending on the constitution and size of the states, there are both centralized and federal structures. But in most cases, parts of the overall responsibility are delegated to subordinate structures such as federal states, provinces, regions, and municipal units.

Even if the responsibility always remains with the (central) government in the end, health care institutions are organized very differently in the individual countries. In the United Kingdom, for example, the vast majority of health care facilities are part of the state-run National Health Service. In Germany, facilities can be privately owned or publicly owned, such as by cities and countries, but they are always subject to state supervision. The financing of the health care systems also differs. There are state-financed health care systems, systems of almost nationwide compulsory insurance for all citizens that bear the costs of care, or systems where citizens must bear the costs themselves. However, the differences can be quite fluid.

The network of health care in a state or region consists, as already mentioned in Sect. 2.6, not only of hospitals and medical offices but also of responsible government agencies and insurance companies, among other things. The global pandemic that broke out at the end of 2019 in particular highlights the importance of municipal health departments, national disease control authorities (e.g., the Robert Koch Institute in Germany), and international institutions (e.g., the European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDS) and the World Health Organization (WHO)). However, it also highlights the importance of networking among these agencies.

6.9.2 Technological Perspective

We already know from Sect. 2.6 that every state and region in which there is a network of health care facilities already has, by definition, a transinstitutional health information system (tHIS). However, such tHIS are supported by computers to quite different degrees depending on the country. Networking between actors requires communication and interoperability of the systems involved, just as it does within institutions. Very often—even in rich industrialized countries—this communication takes place by telephone or postal communication or even by fax.

The tHIS of states or regions are composed of the institutional information systems of the institutions participating in the network. These information systems thus incorporate the entire range of application systems described in Sect. 3.4 into the tHIS. In order for the institutional information systems to be interoperable with each other, they must each have interoperable application systems through which they can communicate with the other institutional information systems and thus work together. All aspects of interoperability and integration discussed in Sects. 3.7 through 3.10 play a role in this process, and use of the interoperability standards discussed in Sect. 3.7.2 is essential. For example, in Austria, and increasingly in

Germany, Integrating the Health care Enterprise (IHE) profiles and especially XDS are used for this purpose (Sects. 3.7.2.5 and 3.7.2.6). However, FHIR is becoming increasingly important.

Especially for government agencies and ministries of health, other application systems are required in addition to those explained in Sect. 3.4. The WHO describes 25 types of such application systems in its WHO Classification of Digital Health Interventions [2]. However, at this point, the WHO's terminology does not match the terminology in our textbook, so the application systems at WHO are usually referred to as information systems. Examples of such types of application systems are "community-based information systems" (WHO category F) and "public health and disease surveillance system" (WHO category V). The "district health information systems" frequently mentioned in the literature must also be understood as application systems that must work together with the other application systems of the tHIS via interfaces.

It makes sense if, in a national health care system and also at the international level such as the European Union, a computer-supported infrastructure is available at the physical (Sect. 3.10.2) and logical level of the tHIS through which the institutional information systems can communicate with each other in a standardized manner. In Germany, for example, this infrastructure is known as the telematics infrastructure.

Worldwide, tHIS are developed very differently at the country level. The level of development—sometimes called digital maturity—cannot be determined solely by the availability of modern IT. What matters most is whether this technology actually brings benefits to health care. A study conducted in 2020 therefore analyzed in various countries whether patients, their caregivers, and medical staff in hospitals or other facilities can read and enter the data required for health care. Even rich industrialized countries performed very poorly [3].

6.9.3 Management Perspective

Responsibility for tHIS at the state or regional level falls to the relevant government agencies. These are usually the ministries of health. The framework for tHIS development and responsibilities are defined by law.

Sometimes, as in Estonia, for example, there is a state chief information officer (CIO) who is also responsible for the nationwide tHIS of the health care system. In Estonia, this CIO is responsible for the national infrastructure and the use of communication standards. In other countries, like Finland, for example, responsibility for the national tHIS is decentralized and regional structures, for example, provinces or federal states have responsibility. In Germany, there is a company controlled by the Federal Ministry of Health, GEMATIK, which is responsible for setting up and operating the telematics infrastructure in the country.

6.10 Life Situations and Their Consequences for Orchestrating Services in Transinstitutional Health Information Systems

In Sect. 1.2, we already saw that people in different life situations are concerned about and have to deal with their health. These life situations are closely linked to the settings we discussed in the previous sections of Chap. 6. For example, *prevention* and wellness are closely linked to the different settings we discussed in Sect. 6.7 but also to personal environments (Sect. 6.8). Medical emergencies and acute illness are taken care of by both hospitals (Sect. 6.2) and medical offices in ambulatory care settings (Sect. 6.4). These settings are also there for the treatment of chronic illnesses, but it is precisely in this life situation that the personal environment and one's own home also become therapeutic spaces where, for example, the attending physician comes for a home visit and patients acquire knowledge about their illness, seek advice via the internet, or plan necessary visits to the doctor and specialists (Sect. 3.3.1). Care of the elderly or people with chronic diseases takes place both in the nursing home (Sect. 6.3) and in the personal environment, if necessary with the support of an ambulatory nursing organization (Sect. 6.5). Rehabilitation facilities prepare patients for a more "normal" life after emergencies and acute illnesses but also when chronic illnesses improve.

This summary shows us clearly that people need very different health care services from different health care settings in different places during their lives. We introduced the notion of tHIS in Sect. 2.6, which summarizes the information processing in and between all these health care settings.

Ultimately, the challenge remains for each person to arrange for themselves to find the services they need in the tHIS and to ensure that the services fit together and are appropriate for treating their condition. Many are grateful when relatives and friends help with the search. GPs can also help to a limited extent.

In the context of service-oriented architectures (SOAs, Sect. 3.9.4), we are familiar with the need to compile required services when taking a technical view of health information systems. We refer to this as the orchestration of services. We can also apply this term to the challenge of citizens to find suitable medical services and combine them appropriately.

Given the complexity of medical services and the medical expertise required to orchestrate them, family doctors and hospitals, as already mentioned, take on part of the orchestration and organize, for example, the necessary visit to a specialist. We refer to this as provider-induced orchestration. But even with such support, patients will still need to independently seek appropriate transportation, i.e., other, non-medical services. And often, referrals to specialists will only specify the type of specialist; patients will have to find the exact person or facility themselves. So the patient is left with plenty of complex tasks, which we call patient-induced orchestration.

In this situation, it is very helpful if the information about offered medical as well as non-medical services is available for the citizens. But in the enormous complexity of transinstitutional health information systems and the abundance of

corresponding information, not only elderly people are quickly overwhelmed with this patient-induced orchestration. The question arises to what extent information technology can also help to find the services needed in a particular health situation and ensure that they fit together. For example, it must be ensured that that specialists are selected only in such a way that they can be reached from patients' homes by public transport during their consultation hours. Although there is promising research on this customer-induced orchestration, much remains to be done.

6.11 Example

To support medical research and care, the German Medical Informatics Initiative (MI-I) was launched. Four consortia of university medical centers are establishing the so-called data integration centers (DICs) for the individual hospitals. These DICs are facilities that extract data from the electronic patient records of the respective hospitals to make them available for research projects. Note that in each hospital, the data from the electronic patient records is scattered around the various application systems of this hospital. The consortium SMITH (Smart Medical Information Technology for Health care) decided to apply IHE to share data between the hospitals and the DICs as well as between the DICs of the different hospitals. For details, see [4].

Figure 6.4 shows the high-level functions to be performed and the entity types involved in a 3LGM^2 model. The dotted lines indicate that there are still refinements to the corresponding tasks and entity types. Patient data ("EMR Data in UH Sources") is taken from the electronic patient records of hospitals ("University Hospital (UH)") and inserted into a separate storage area. There, the data are prepared and, in particular, semantically "nourished," i.e., enriched. Also, certain rules and methods for processing the data are managed in this "Health Data Storage." When the patients to whom these data belong have given their consent, the data are pseudonymized by a trustee unit and made available to research projects by the "Transfer Management."

At each DIC's site, application systems are needed to support the local DIC, i.e., supporting the execution of functions as well as storing and communicating the entity types. Data and knowledge sharing between sites and between patient care and research projects (Research & Development Factory) have to be enabled. Communication is standards-based, especially using IHE profiles, CDA, FHIR, and SNOMED to ensure syntactic, semantic, and process interoperability.

The architecture of the local information system and their communication links at each site follows the DIC reference architecture as outlined in the 3LGM^2 model in Fig. 6.5. Using IHE profiles, the local sub-information systems of the entire tHIS of the SMITH network (SMItHIS) are integrated. While applying the DIC reference architecture locally, the reference architecture allows for local peculiarities.

As mentioned before, the DICs have to ingest data from various data sources, i.e., different application systems of the local hospital information

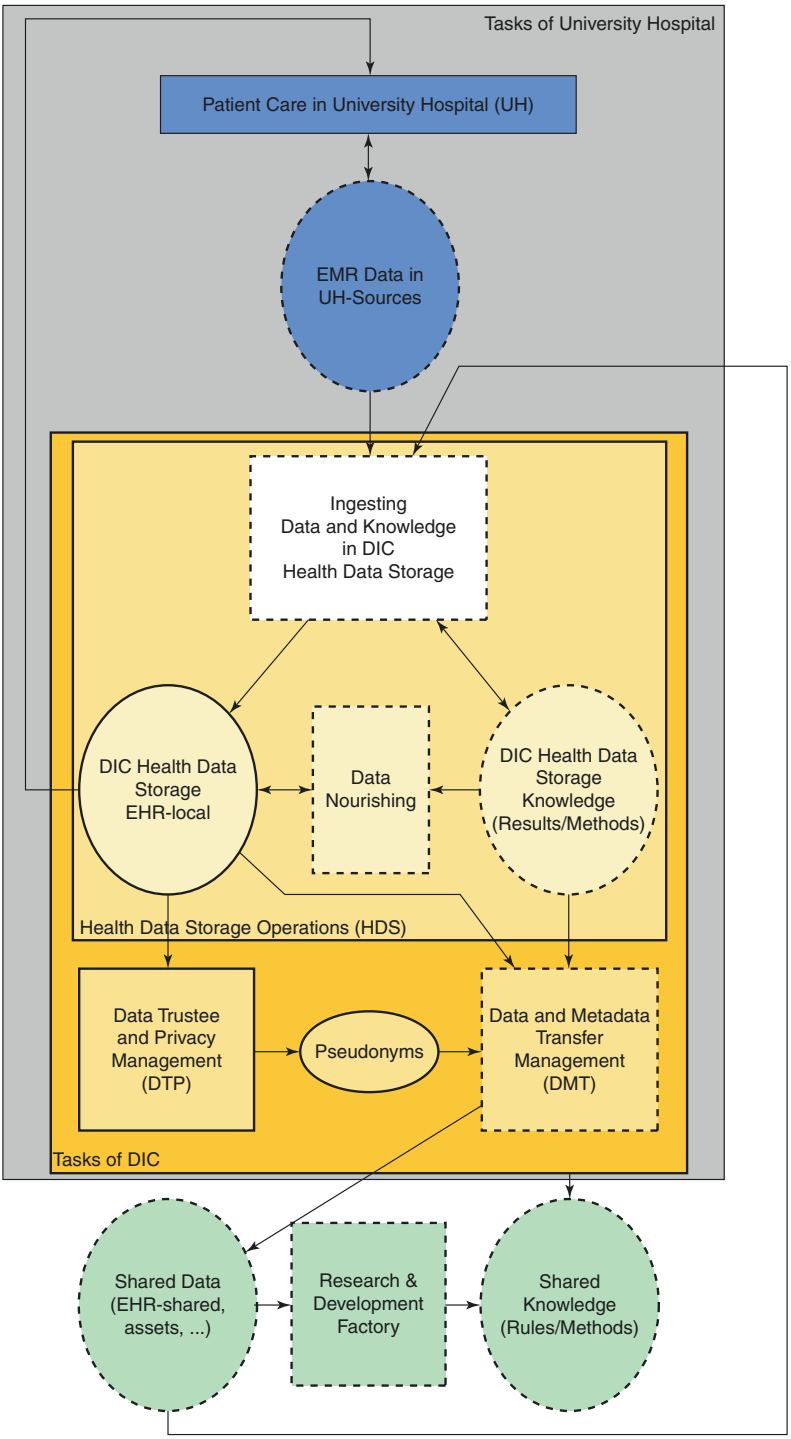


Fig. 6.4 High-level functions and entity types of data integration centers in SMITH

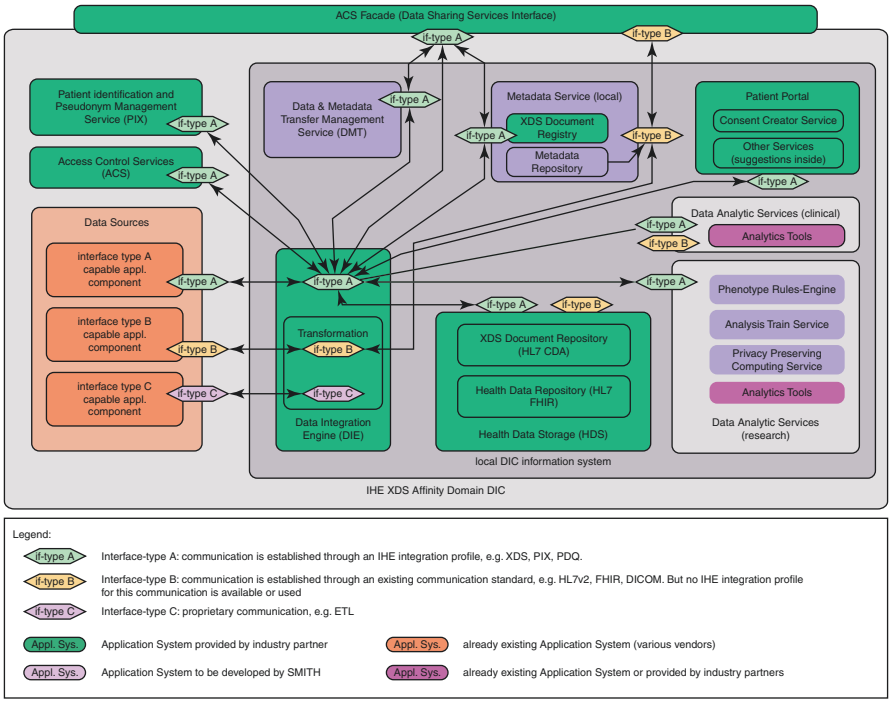


Fig. 6.5 SMITH-DIC Reference Architecture at the logical tool layer

systems. Communication between application systems is classified into three categories, A, B, and C, according to their interface type ("if-type") (see legend in Fig. 6.5). Sources of Type A are designed using IHE profiles. There are application systems that can serve HL7 and DICOM standards but do not fully implement IHE profile. They are referred to here as Type B sources. Type C sources are proprietary, such as data provided by comma-separated value (CSV) files.

The "Data Integration Engine" executes data transformation and load processes from sources into the health data storage (HDS). The HDS contains both a component for storing HL7 FHIR resources (Health Data Repository) and an IHE XDS document repository comprising clinical data in HL7 CDA documents. Using the interface-type scheme (A, B, and C), data are shared beyond department borders. Precise explanations of other details can be found in [4].

6.12 Exercises

6.12.1 Research Architecture

A clinical researcher at Ploetzberg Hospital has won a grant to set up a register for patients who have received a knee endoprosthesis. Disease registers are research databases for collecting data about a specific disease, aiming for full coverage of the

respective patient collective. The aim of a knee endoprosthesis registry is to collect longitudinal data to find out which type of endoprosthesis works best over time. The researcher wants to integrate data from patient-reported outcome questionnaires, findings from inpatient or outpatient visits at the hospital, and results from laboratory examinations. Which entity types need to be integrated and from which application components do they come? Devise a plan how you would set up a sustainable research architecture, i.e., an architecture that also could be used in other research settings and for different disease or research entities, considering Sect. 6.6.

6.12.2 Medical Admission

In which of the health care settings above will the function *medical admission* need to be supported?

References

1. Grabovac I, Dorner TE. Work ability management in rehabilitation and return to work: a perspective from austria. In: Johansen T, Dittrisch WH, editors. Occupational health and rehabilitation: new approaches for maintaining work ability in the workplace. Wiesbaden: Springer Gabler; 2021. p. 25–34.
2. World Health Organization. Classification of digital health interventions v1.0: A shared language to describe the uses of digital technology for health. World Health Organization (WHO); 2018. https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/WHO-RHR-18.06. Accessed 15 Jan 2023.
3. Ammenwerth E, Duftschmid G, Al-Hamdan Z, Bawadi H, Cheung NT, Cho K-H, et al. International comparison of six basic eHealth indicators across 14 countries: an eHealth Benchmarking study. Methods Inf Med. 2020;59(S 02):e46–63.
4. Winter A, Stäubert S, Ammon D, Aiche S, Beyan O, Bischoff V, et al. Smart Medical Information Technology for Healthcare (SMITH): data integration based on interoperability standards. Methods Inf Med. 2018;57(Open 1):e92–e105.

Solutions to Exercises

Chapter 1: Introduction

Exercise 1.5.1 Life Situations
My father was admitted to the hospital after suddenly showing symptoms of numbness in the left arm, confusion, and trouble seeing while at home. We called the ambulance, and after a short examination, the ambulance team took him to the nearest hospital for further diagnosis and treatment. This situation corresponds to an emergency life situation. I participated in this situation as a close relative. My urgent requirements were to know which hospital my father was taken to and to obtain more information on the suspected diagnosis (here: stroke) and the next steps of diagnosis and therapy.

Exercise 1.5.2 Requirements of Various Stakeholders
While a patient is being treated for an acute disease, the requirements of the treating physicians and nurses as well as of the patient and relatives may differ. For example, patient and relatives want to be kept informed of ongoing diagnostic outcomes (e.g., lab values) as soon as possible. However, physicians and nurses may want to discuss the findings with the patient in person to avoid causing unnecessary confusion and stress in the patient. Therefore, the health information system must be able to provide detailed information to physicians and nurses, but it must be able to only present confirmed information to the patient (e.g., via a patient portal).

Chapter 2: Basic Concepts and Terms

Exercise 2.16.1 Data, Information, and Knowledge
"160," "100," "hypertension," and "blood pressure" represent data that cannot be interpreted without knowledge about the context. The information is that Mr. Russo has been diagnosed with hypertension and that his last blood pressure is

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8

160/100 mmHg. The medical knowledge embedded in this example is that a blood pressure of 160/100 mmHg indicates hypertension that should be treated.

Exercise 2.16.2 Systems and Subsystems
The nervous system comprises two main categories of cells: neurons and glial cells. Neurons communicate with each other via synapses and thus form their own subsystem. Glial cells form another subsystem that provides support and nutrition to the neurons.

The hospital can be understood as a system comprising at least two subsystems: the subsystem where clinical care takes place and the subsystem where management takes place. The clinical subsystem can again be split into several subsystems, such as inpatient area, outpatient area, and specialized diagnostic or therapeutic areas. The inpatient area itself can be divided into various subsystems, each represented by one ward. The way I define the subsystems of a hospital depends on the questions or intentions I have.

Exercise 2.16.3 Information Logistics
The physician wants to have access to the right information (the most recent blood pressure) at the right time (when talking to Mr. Russo) at the right place (at the patient's bedside) in the right form (hopefully the blood pressure is provided in an easy-to-grasp, visual way) so that he can make the right decision (here: to decide on the level of a certain medication). If the information system does not support this, the physician may obtain an incorrect or outdated blood pressure measurement, or he may misinterpret it, thereby coming to a decision that is suboptimal for the patient.

Exercise 2.16.4 3LGM² Metamodel
Administrative admission is an enterprise function that is supported by the patient administration system. One entity type that is used and updated by this function is "patient." The paper-based patient data privacy form system is an example of a non-computer-based application component. The virtualized server farm is an example of a physical tool. The inter-layer relationships of this example show which functions are supported by which application system and which physical data processing system the application systems are installed on.

Exercise 2.16.5 Interpreting 3LGM² Models
(a) The function "patient admission" is decomposed into five subfunctions—patient admission is only complete if all the subfunctions are completed. The entity type "patient" is decomposed into four entity types—data regarding that entity type are only complete if data about all sub-entity types is complete. There are no examples of specialization at the domain layer of Fig. 2.11.
(b) The function "patient identification" updates the entity type "patient." The function "medical admission" uses the entity type "patient." This indicates that identifying patient data are updated or created during patient admission and then used for medical admission.

(c) The entity type "privacy statement" could be added at the domain layer. It would be updated by the function "obtaining consent for processing of patient data."
(d) Patient admission is decomposed into five subfunctions with each being linked to an application component by which it is supported. Therefore, it could lead to an ambiguous model if the superordinated function was linked with another application component. The corresponding modeling rule says that only the leaf functions in a function hierarchy should be linked to application components.
(e) The function "obtaining patient consent for the processing of data" is supported by the paper-based patient data privacy form system. For this, a paper record cabinet, a scanner, and a clerk handling these tools are the physical data processing systems needed for the function.

Chapter 3: Technological Perspective

Exercise 3.12.1 Domain Layer: Differences in Hospital Functions
A typical hospital needs all functions to function as expected. The functions to be performed by health care professionals are mostly similar in all health care facilities, independent of their size. Only some functions may differ. For example, not all health care facilities are involved in clinical research, thus their information will not need to support the function research and education.

Exercise 3.12.2 Domain Layer: Different Health care Professional Groups and Health care Facilities
Physicians: Important functions are medical admission, decision-making and patient information, planning and organization of patient treatment, order entry, execution of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures, coding of diagnoses and procedures, and medical discharge and medical discharge summary writing.

Nurses: Important functions are nursing admission, decision-making and patient information, planning and organization of patient treatment, order entry, execution of nursing procedures, and nursing discharge and nursing discharge summary writing.

Administrative staff: Important functions are patient identification, administrative admission, and administrative discharge and billing.

Exercise 3.12.3 Domain Layer: the Patient Entity Type
The entity type "patient" is updated by the function "patient admission." All other functions that are related to patient care interpret it.

Exercise 3.12.4 Logical Tool Layer: Communication Server
Short-term advantages: The communication server can handle the communication between all four application systems, including receiving, buffering, transforming, and multicasting of messages. It can also be used for monitoring the communication

traffic. The communication server thus supports data integration in heterogeneous information system architectures.

Long-term advantages: In the resulting (AC^n, CP^1) architecture, new application components can easily be integrated, as only one communication interface to the communication server needs to be implemented.

Standards: For the exchange of administrative data, HL7 V2 or V3 could be used as syntactic or semantic standard. For the exchange of clinical data, various communication standards can be chosen such as HL7 FHIR, DICOM for medical images, or HL7 CDA for clinical documents.

Exercise 3.12.5 Logical Tool Layer: Integration from the User's Point of View
Data integration would be considered high when the nurse documents patient administrative data only once in the patient administration system and then can use this data in the NMDS.

Semantic integration would be considered high when the nurse documents a nursing diagnosis using a standardized terminology (such as NANDA) and when this standardized diagnosis is then understood by the NMDS that may, for example, suggest a standard nursing care plan for this patient based on this diagnosis.

User interface integration would be considered high when the user interfaces of both application systems look sufficiently similar, which reduces the risk of data entry or data interpretation errors. For example, in both application systems, the names of the patients are always displayed at the same place, the birthdates are presented in standardized form, and colors that are used to highlight important information are used in the same way.

Context integration would be considered high when the user context and the patient context is preserved when the nurse shifts from one application system to the other. The nurse thus would not have to repeat user login or the selection of the patient in the second application system.

Feature integration would be considered high when only the patient administration system offers the needed administrative features (such as documentation of patient address). The nurse would be able to call up these features from within the NMDS.

Process integration would be considered high if both application systems work together in a highly integrated way so that the process of patient admission and nursing care planning from the point of view of the nurse is supported in an efficient way.

Exercise 3.12.6 CityCare

(a) EHR systems as comprehensive application systems combine the functionalities of MDMS, NDMS, and CPOE systems. The EHRS of CityCare could therefore be used for medical admission, preparation of an order, or execution of diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. However, each of the three health care facilities in CityCare has its own MDMS. Therefore, the EHRS is probably mainly used for accessing findings from the other health care facilities, for example, during medical admission. For the VNA, no suitable function is modeled at the domain layer. At the domain layer, archiving of patient information

could be added which is supported by the VNA and, to some extent, also by the EHRS.

(b) The entity type "patient" represents the persons who are the subject of health care. Information about a patient includes the PIN and other administrative data about the person. Each of the application systems supporting subfunctions of patient care and having an own database system stores the entity type "patient," for example, the patient administration system including the MPI, the MDMS, the EHRS, and the VNA.

(c) In Ernst Jokl Hospital, there is a star architecture at the logical tool layer, i.e., a communication server is used for the exchange of messages between application systems. The patient administration system of Ernst Jokl Hospital, where the PINs of Ernst Jokl Hospital are generated, sends this information in a message to the communication server. The communication server forwards the message to the MPI of the health care network. In the central MPI of the tHIS, the local patient identification numbers of the different health care facilities are linked to the unique transinstitutional patient identification number of CityCare.

(d) Administrative admission, appointment scheduling, medical admission, order entry, patient identification, and preparation of an order are each supported by at least three application systems in the scenario.

Pros (examples):

- Each of the health care facilities has a functioning information system that is independent from changes or system failures in the other health care facilities.
- The different patient administration systems and medical documentation and management systems may be better adapted to the local needs and grown structures in the single health care facilities than an application system that is used by all of them together.

Cons (examples):

- Three or more different application systems that support the same function cause higher costs and higher administrative effort.
- The effort for establishing integration and interoperability are higher in functional redundant architectures which have a high number of single application systems.

Resolving these redundancies (examples):

- One patient administration system that supports patient identification and administrative admission could be used in all health care facilities instead of three patient administration system and an MPI.
- The central EHRS could be used as MDMS, NDMS as well as CPOE system in each of the facilities and would replace the existing local application systems.

(e) According to the matrix view in Fig. 3.37, the MDMS of Ploetzberg Hospital is installed on application server 1 Ernst Jokl Hospital. Thus, if this application server 1 Ernst Jokl Hospital fails, the following functions cannot no longer be

performed: appointment scheduling, medical admission, order entry, and preparation of an order (see matrix view in Fig. 3.35).

The application systems used in CityCare should be made available by server clusters with redundant servers. If one server in a server cluster fails, another server can take over its task. Thus, there is no interruption in function support.

(f) Yes, it makes sense to use further integration profiles from IHE. For example, IHE XDS could be used. The CityCare network could be established as an affinity domain with several actors that interact in a standardized way (process interoperability) to share document-level or even large binary patient data, such as findings, images, or radiology reports. These documents would be registered centrally in a document registry and could be retrieved by other systems. Depending on how the central EHRS is implemented, it could either take the role of a document registry that forwards the requests to a decentral source, or it could—as in our case of a central database—act as a central document provider itself.

Chapter 4: Management Perspective

Exercise 4.9.1 Activities of Managing Information Systems

- Developing a strategic information management plan: strategic planning.
- Initiating projects from the strategic project portfolio: strategic directing.
- Collecting and analyzing data from user surveys on their general health information system's satisfaction: strategic monitoring.
- Planning a project to select and introduce a new CPOE system: tactical planning.
- Executing work packages within an evaluation project of a CPOE system: tactical directing.
- Assessment of user satisfaction with a new intensive care system: tactical monitoring.
- Planning of a user service desk for a group of clinical application components: operational planning.
- Operation of a service desk for a group of clinical application components: operational directing.
- Daily monitoring of network availability and network failures: operational monitoring.

Exercise 4.9.2 Strategic Alignment of Hospital Goals and Information Management Goals

Goals: efficient and high-quality information logistics to support patient care.

Functions: patient administration and all functions related to patient care (Sect. 3.3.2.1).

Project portfolio and migration plan:

- Year 1: Introduction of a patient administration system.
- Year 2: Introduction of a CIS, an LIS and an RIS.

- Year 3: Introduction of a DAS and a PACS.
- Year 4: Introduction of an OMS and of a PDMS.
- Year 5: Introduction of a DWS and of a patient portal.

Please note: This is a simplified solution. Other solutions may be valid, too. In case the different application systems are meant to come from different vendors, an integration technology such as a communication server needs to be implemented.

Exercise 4.9.3 Structure of a Strategic Information Management Plan

- Strategic goals of the health care facility (business goals) and of management of information systems: are visible in Chaps. 1 and 2 of Ploetzberg Hospital's plan.
- Description of the current state of the information system: are visible in Chap. 3 of Ploetzberg Hospital's plan.
- Assessment of the current state of the information system: are visible in Chap. 4 of Ploetzberg Hospital's plan.
- Future state of the information system: are visible in Chap. 5 of Ploetzberg Hospital's plan.
- Migration path from the current to the planned state: are visible in Chap. 6 of Ploetzberg Hospital's plan.

Exercise 4.9.4 An Information-Processing Monitoring Report

KPI	Ploetzberg Hospital	My hospital
Number of HIS staff	46	89
Number of HIS users	4800	9000
Number of workstations	1350	6200
Number of mobile IT tools	2500	2000
HIS user per mobile IT tool	1.9	4.5
Number of IT problem tickets	15,500	36,250
Percentage of solved IT problem tickets	96%	92%
Availability of the overall HIS systems	98.5%	96%
Number of finalized strategic IT projects	13	10
Percentage of successful IT projects	76%	86%

Exercise 4.9.5 Relevant Key Performance Indicators

Several solutions are possible here. One possible solution:

1. HIS user per mobile IT tool: Efficient information logistics everywhere (e.g., at the patient's bedside) requires enough mobile IT tools.
2. Number of application systems: I would strive for an integrated information system and reduce the number of application systems in the long run in order to reduce integration problems.
3. HIS budget in relation to the overall hospital budget: Sufficient funding is the precondition for high-quality and well-integrated information system and the necessary competent IT staff.

Exercise 4.9.6 Organizing User Feedback
User groups: physicians, nurses, technical staff (e.g., lab, radiology), and management staff—these groups are typically large health information systems user groups. I would also organize regular survey of CIS key users, as they are experts in judging the quality of the information systems.

Organization of user feedback: (1) Health information system users are randomly invited to an automatic short and standardized survey that is displayed during CIS login. (2) Every half year, I would organize sounding boards (a structured approach to obtain active feedback from stakeholders) with key users and with representatives from the larger user groups to discuss recent challenges with the CIS and opportunities for improvements.

Exercise 4.9.7 Information Systems Managers as Architects
Health information managers can indeed be compared with architects. Health information managers design information systems that are used by many different user groups. Health information managers regularly monitor the quality of information systems to obtain feedback and to improve the information system. Health information managers understand that information systems support many different functions for many different user groups within health care facilities. Health information managers make sure that the application systems are user-friendly and support working processes in an efficient way. Health information managers understand that an information system serves the overall goal of a health care facility and ultimately serves the need of the patients.

Chapter 5: Quality of Health Information Systems

Exercise 5.6.1 Quality of Integration
1. *A physician enters a medical diagnosis for a patient first in the MDMS and later, when ordering an X-ray, again in the CPOE system.* → No data integration, resulting in reentering of data, which is time-consuming and may lead to errors and inconsistencies in the data, which has the potential for patient harm.
2. *The position of the patient's name and the formatting of the patient's birthdate vary between the MDMS and the CPOE system.* → No user interface integration, resulting in increased time effort when using various application components, increased time needed for user training, and increased risk in overlooking or misinterpreting important patient information, which has the potential for patient harm.
3. *When physicians shift from the MDMS to the CPOE system, they have to log in again and again search for the correct patient.* → No context integration, leading to an increase in time needed to shift between application systems and an increased risk for selecting the wrong patient in the second application systems, which has the potential for patient harm.

4. *The CPOE system and the RIS use slightly different catalogs of available radiology examinations.* → No semantic integration, making the exchange and reuse of patient information in both application systems challenging.
5. *When physicians write the discharge letter for a patient in the MDMS, they also have to code the discharge diagnosis of a patient. For this coding, they have to use a feature that is only available in the patient administration system, so they have to shift to this application system.* → No feature integration, leading to increased time needed to shift to the patient administration system.
6. *While being at the patient's bedside during their ward rounds, physicians have to use several application components at the same time, such as MDMS for retrieving recent findings, the CPOE system for ordering, and the PACS for retrieving images.* → No process integration; a process should be organized in a way that frequent change of application systems is avoided if possible.

Exercise 5.6.2 Data Collection in Evaluation Studies
Study "Unintended Effects of a Computerized Physician Order Entry Nearly Hard-stop Alert": The effectiveness of a nearly "hard-stop" alert was evaluated in a field study. The data was collected via analysis of the prescriptions in the CPOE systems. The overall data collection method is thus a quantitative observation of available data.

Study "Clinical Decision Support for Worker Health: A Five-Site Qualitative Needs Assessment in Primary Care Setting": data were collected via interviews and qualitative observations.

Exercise 5.6.3 Study Design in Evaluation Studies
Study "Unintended Effects of a Computerized Physician Order Entry Nearly Hard-Stop Alert": This quantitative and explanatory field study was organized as an RCT: 1981 clinicians were randomly assigned to either the intervention group or the control group. RCTs are considered the gold standard, as they provide a rigorous tool to assess cause–effect relationships between intervention and outcome.

Study "Clinical Decision Support for Worker Health: A Five-Site Qualitative Needs Assessment in Primary Care Setting": This is a qualitative, explorative field study.

Chapter 6: Information Systems for Specific Health Care and Research Settings

Exercise 6.12.1 Research Architecture
The following entity types have to be integrated: patient, person, diagnosis, finding, health record, medical procedure, patient record, self-gathered symptoms, material, medical device, classification, nomenclature.

Application components to be integrated depend on local settings and implementation but will likely include: patient administration system, MDMS, LIS, OMS,

PDMS, and self-diagnosis systems (e.g., an app for collecting patient-reported outcome data) or patient portals.

A research architecture for setting up multiple registries might include a DWS for research that is fed via ETL processes from the above-mentioned application components and can be tapped for data in different use cases or research scenarios. Finally, an open platform architecture would enable reuse of patient data in various research contexts.

Exercise 6.12.2 Medical Admission

The function "medical admission" is relevant in several health care and research settings. It comprises the provision of forms for documenting medical history, documenting diagnoses, and scanning documents from referring physician and other sources of information about the medical history. It is obvious that this function needs to be supported in hospitals, nursing homes, ambulatory nursing organizations, and medical offices. Yet it is often also necessary in research settings, for example, when a person is recruited for a clinical trial and their data are entered into an EDC system. Furthermore, therapeutic offices need this function for documentation purposes, as do rehabilitation facilities and—to a limited extent—wellness or sports facilities. For personal environments, medical admission also plays a role, especially in telecare situations or when prevention measures are conducted, respectively.

Glossary[1]

3LGM² Metamodel for modeling → information systems on three layers: → domain layer, → logical tool layer, and → physical tool layer (Sect. 2.14).

AC¹ architecture See → monolithic architecture (Sect. 3.6.2).

ACⁿ architecture See → modular architecture (Sect. 3.6.2).

Activity Instantiation of a → function. In contrast to functions, activities have a definite beginning and end (Sect. 2.8).

ADT HL7 message type for → messages related to admission, discharge, and transfer of a patient (Sect. 3.7.2.1).

All-in-one architecture A → monolithic (AC^1, V^1) architecture or an (AC^n, V^1) architecture in which the → health care facility selected only → application software products from exactly one vendor to support as many → information processing functions as necessary (Sect. 3.6.3).

Annual project portfolio Describes the → projects to be initiated in the next year. It is derived from the → strategic project portfolio (Sect. 4.3.1.3).

Application component Set of implemented rules which control data processing of certain → physical data processing systems. An application component supports certain → information processing functions of a → health care setting or communication between application components. Application components can either be computer-based application components (→ application system) or → non-computer-based application components (paper-based application component) (Sect. 2.9).

Application software product Acquired or self-developed piece of software that can be installed on a → computer system (Sect. 2.9).

Application system Installation of a certain → application software product on a certain computer system; specialization of → application component (Sect. 2.9).

[1] This glossary lists all relevant terms introduced and used in this book. In the main text, these terms are written in italics when first introduced and when defined. Application systems and functions are always written in italics in the main text. Functions are not included in the glossary.

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8

Archetype Basic building blocks representing clinical concepts. Can be reused as semantic building blocks for the standardized representation of clinical → information in → electronic health records (Sect. 3.7.2.8).

Architectural style Characterizes the → architecture of the computer-based part of → health information systems. On the → logical tool layer, we can describe architectural styles by the number of databases (→ DB^1, → DB^n), number of → application systems (→ AC^1, → AC^n), number of → application software products and vendors (→ V^1, → V^n), and the patterns of → communication links (→ CP^1, → CP^n) between the application systems (Sect. 3.6).

Architecture of an information system Fundamental organization of the → information system, represented by its → components, their relationships to each other and to the environment, and by the principles guiding its design and evolution. Architectures can be summarized into → architectural styles (Sect. 2.11).

Asynchronous communication Communication between → application systems that is not simultaneous. Thus, the → application system sending a → message will continue its tasks without interruption even when awaiting a response → message from the communication partner (Sect. 3.9.2).

Benchmarking Method of strategic → monitoring of → information systems in which organizations evaluate various aspects of their performance and compare it to a given standard or to the best organizations ("best practice"). Typically, benchmarking uses quantitative criteria (→ key performance indicators) for comparing situations (Sect. 4.3.2.2).

Best-of-breed architecture An (AC^n, V^n) architecture where the different → application systems are based on → software from different vendors, pointing to the fact that the → health care facility combines the "best" application software products from different vendors (Sect. 3.6.3).

Business goals The strategic, long-term goals of a → health care facility (Sect. 4.3.1.1).

Business process Sequence of → activities together with the conditions under which they are performed (Sect. 2.8).

Case identification number (CIN) Unique identification of a patient case (Sect. 3.3.2.1.1.2).

Central architecture → Architecture of an information system where all → application systems store their patient-related → data in only one database system. Synonym: DB^1 architecture (Sect. 3.6.1.1).

Certification Confirming that an object or organization has certain characteristics. Certification of → health information systems in general describes a process where an accredited body confirms that the information system of a → health care facility fulfills certain → quality characteristics that have been predefined by an external organization (Sects. 5.2.3 and 5.5.3).

Chief information officer (CIO) Role that is responsible for the → strategic, → tactical, and → operational management and the related budget of the → information system. The CIO usually has authority over all employees concerned with → management of the information system (Sect. 4.6.2).

Clinical information system (CIS) → Application system that integrates a → medical documentation and management system, a → nursing management and documentation system or a → CPOE system as modules. A CIS is also often called → electronic health record system (EHRS) (Sect. 3.4.15).

Communication interface Used by → application systems for sending or receiving → messages over → communication links (Sect. 2.14.2.2).

Communication link Communicates → messages. Connects a → communication interface of one → application system with a → communication interface of another → application system (Sect. 2.14.2.2).

Communication server → Application system used for the asynchronous receiving, buffering, transforming, and sending of → messages (Sect. 3.9.2).

Components of an information system → Enterprise functions, → business processes, → application components, and → physical data processing systems. If a system consists of both human and technical components, it can be called a → socio-technical system (Chap. 2).

Computer-based application component See → application system (Sect. 2.9).

Computer-based sub-information system → Sub-information system that uses computer-based data processing and communication tools (Sect. 2.5).

Computer-based health information system → Health information system that uses computer-based data processing and communication tools (Sect. 2.6).

Computer system A computer-based → physical data processing tool, for example, a terminal, server, or personal computer (PC). Computer systems can be physically connected, leading to physical networks (Sect. 2.9).

Computerized provider order entry system (CPOE) → Application system supporting the → functions related to order entry, such as formulation of an order, appointment scheduling, printing of labels, and the communication of the order to the service unit (Sect. 3.4.4).

Context integration Condition of an → information system in which the context (e.g., user identification and patient selection) is preserved when the user changes the → application system (Sect. 3.8.4).

CP^1 architecture See → star architecture (Sect. 3.6.4).

CP^n architecture See → spaghetti architecture (Sect. 3.6.4).

Data Characters, discrete numbers, or continuous signals to be processed in → information systems (Sect. 2.2).

Data consistency Situation where copies of → data representing the same → entity are identical. Consistency of data is one element of → data integrity within → health information systems (Sect. 3.5).

Data integration Condition of an → information system where → data that have been recorded and stored once in one → application component is made available in a coherent and uniform way wherever they are needed, i.e., in other application components, without having to be reentered. Data integration helps to increase → data consistency (Sect. 3.8.1).

Data integrity Situation where → data in → information systems are correct. Comprises → object identity, → referential integrity, and → data consistency (Sect. 3.5).

Data warehouse system (DWS) → Application system supporting → functions related to the collection, analysis, and presentation of up-to-date → information extracted from other → application systems to support hospital management or clinical research (Sect. 3.4.11).

DB¹ architecture See → central architecture (Sect. 3.6.1.1).

DBⁿ architecture See → distributed architecture (Sect. 3.6.1.2).

Directing Task of → strategic management of information system that comprises the transformation of a → strategic information management plan into action, typically by initiation of → projects (Sect. 4.3.3).

Distributed architecture → Architecture of an information system where the → information system comprises several → application components that each store → data on certain → entity types persistently in their own database. Synonym: DBⁿ style (Sect. 3.6.1.2).

Document archiving system (DAS) → Application system supporting long-term archiving of paper-based and digital documents. Can be realized by → vendor-neutral archives (VNAs) (Sect. 3.4.12).

Domain layer Part of a → 3LGM² model. Describes what kinds of activities in a health care setting are enabled by its → information system and what kind of → data are stored and processed. Consequently, the domain layer describes → information processing functions and → entity types (Sect. 2.14.1).

Electronic health record (EHR) Collection of a person's health → data from different → health care settings. The EHR is stored by one or more → application systems in a → transinstitutional health information system (Sect. 2.10).

Electronic patient record (EPR) Collection of a person's health → data from one certain → health care facility where the person is or has been a patient. The EPR is stored by → application systems designated for this purpose by the facility (Sect. 2.10).

Enterprise function In business informatics, enterprise functions mainly emphasize the contribution of → activities to → business goals. In contrast, the term → information processing function emphasizes the → information processing aspects of activities (Sect. 2.8).

Enterprise resource planning system (ERPS) → Application system supporting → functions related to the management of financial, human, and material resources of a → health care facility (Sect. 3.4.10).

Entity Excerpt of the real or conceivable world (Sect. 2.8).

Entity type Set of virtual or physical → entities that have certain properties in common (e.g., "discharge letter" or "patient") (Sect. 2.8).

Evaluation Act of measuring or exploring → components of a → health information system. The result of an evaluation should provide information to support decisions concerning the health information system, such as decisions regarding optimizing, replacing, or further deploying an → application component (Sect. 5.4).

Feature Functionality offered by the → application software product of an → application system which directly contributes to the fulfillment of one or more → functions (Sect. 2.9).

Feature integration Condition of an → information system in which → features needed in more than one → application systems are implemented only once, for example, as → services, and can be invoked by other application systems (Sect. 3.8.5).

Function Short for → information processing function (Sect. 2.8).

Functional leanness Situation where one → function is supported by one and only one → application component (Sect. 4.7.4).

Health care facility Health care institutions such as hospitals, nursing homes, or general practitioners (GP); type of → health care setting (Sect. 2.3).

Health care network → Health care setting consisting of different actors enabling a patient-oriented process, encompassing prevention, diagnosis, and therapy spreading over → health care facilities' boundaries and integrating the citizens' home environment (Sect. 2.6). The → information system of a health care network is called a → transinstitutional health information system.

Health care professional A person working in → health care settings, such as a physician, nurse, midwife, pharmacist, or physiotherapist (Sect. 1.3.2).

Health care setting Places, social contexts, or facilities related to health care where people actively use and shape the environment and thus create or solve problems, such as cities, villages, private homes, medical offices, hospitals, health care regions, → health care facilities, and → health care networks (Sect. 2.3).

Health information system → Information system of a → health-related setting. Socio-technical subsystem of a → health-related setting which comprises all → data, → information, and → knowledge processing as well as the associated human or technical actors in their respective data, information, and knowledge processing roles (Sect. 2.6).

Heterogeneous architecture → Architecture of an information system where → application software products come from several vendors. Synonym: V^n architecture (Sect. 3.6.3).

Homogeneous architecture → Architecture of an information system where → application software products come from only one vendor. Synonym: V^1 architecture (Sect. 3.6.3).

Hospital information system → Information system of a hospital (Sect. 2.6).

Information Context-specific fact about → entities such as events, things, persons, processes, ideas, or concepts. Information is represented by → data (Sect. 2.2).

Information and knowledge logistics Making the right → information and → knowledge available at the right time, at the right place, to the right people, and in the right form, so that these people can make the right decisions. → Information systems support information and knowledge logistics (Sect. 2.7).

Information management Short for → management of information systems (Sect. 2.12).

Information management board Board to make strategic decisions on the → information system. Members of this board are typically representatives from the top management and from the main departments of a → health care facility. Synonym: IT steering committee (Sect. 4.6.3).

Information model Description of entity types and their relationships at a conceptual level, independent of any specific implementation or → protocols. In contrast, a data model is defined at a lower level of abstraction and is intended for implementers of databases (see Sect. 3.7.1.3).

Information processing function (short: function) Directive in a → health care setting on how to use → data on → entity types and how to update data on entity types. An information processing function has no definitive beginning or end (Sect. 2.8).

Information system → Socio-technical subsystem of a setting which comprises all → data, → information, and → knowledge processing as well as the associated human or technical actors in their respective data, information, and knowledge processing roles. Information systems support → information and knowledge logistics (Sect. 2.5).

Infrastructure of an information system Set of → components of the → information system and services which are centrally coordinated and provided for use throughout the → health care setting, such as → physical data processing systems and → application systems (Sect. 2.11).

Integration Union of parts making a whole, which—as opposed to its parts—displays a new quality. Different types of integration on the → logical tool layer are → data integration, → semantic integration, → user interface integration, → context integration, → feature integration, and → process integration. On the → physical tool layer, → physical integration is important (Sect. 3.8).

Integrity See → data integrity (Sect. 3.5).

Inter-layer relationship Dependencies among → components of different layers in the → 3LGM^2. Relationships exist between concepts at the → domain layer and the → logical tool layer and between concepts at the logical tool layer and the → physical tool layer (Sect. 2.14.4).

Interoperability Ability of two → application systems to exchange → information with each other and to use the information that has been exchanged. Aspects of interoperability comprise → technical interoperability, → syntactic interoperability, → semantic interoperability, and → process interoperability (Sect. 3.7).

Interoperability standard Comprises standards for → technical interoperability (also called → protocols), → syntactic interoperability (also called communication standard or message standards), → semantic interoperability (common information models, → terminology standards), and → process interoperability (Sect. 3.7.2).

IT governance Part of the overall management of a → health care facility. It deals with defining the organizational structures for decision-making for → information management in such a way that the management of information systems is well integrated with the health care facility's management and is aligned to its strategic goals (→ strategic alignment) (Sect. 4.6.1).

IT risk management Continuously assesses risks and liabilities of the → management of information systems (Sect. 5.2.2).

IT service Services provided by → operational information management that are designed to help users use → application systems and → physical data processing tools in a way that is helpful for their professional work (Sect. 4.5).

IT service management (ITSM) Activities of → information management that serve to provide high-quality → IT services (Sect. 4.5).

IT strategy See → strategic information management plan (Sect. 4.3.1.2).

Key performance indicators (KPI) Set of quantitative and well-defined performance measurements that demonstrate how effectively an organization is achieving key objectives. Can be used for → benchmarking of → health information systems (Sect. 4.3.2.1).

Knowledge General → information about concepts in a certain (scientific or professional) domain (e.g., knowledge about diseases or therapeutic methods) at a certain time (Sect. 2.2).

Laboratory information system (LIS) → Application system supporting → functions related to the → information processing of a laboratory unit of a → health care facility (Sect. 3.4.7).

Life situation Situation in life where → health information systems may play an important role. Life situations comprise normal living, emergencies, acute diseases, chronic diseases, care, and rehabilitation (Sect. 1.2).

Logical tool See → application component (Sect. 2.14.2).

Logical tool layer Part of a → 3LGM². Describes → application systems or, in a broader sense, → application components that support information processing functions and their → communication links among each other (Sect. 2.14.2).

Management of information systems (short: information management) Planning the → information system and its → architecture, → directing its construction and the further development of its architecture and its operation on the basis of these plans, and monitoring compliance of its development and operation with the plan specifications. Comprises → strategic, → tactical, and → operational information management (Sect. 2.12).

Primary application system → Application system that contains the original → data about a given → entity type. These data can only be inserted, deleted, or changed in this primary application system (Sect. 3.9.1).

Master patient index (MPI) → Application component providing a correct → patient identification number (PIN) in an institutional → health information system and even in → transinstitutional information systems with several → patient administration systems (Sect. 3.4.1).

Medical documentation and management system (MDMS) → Application system supporting → functions related to organizing and documenting patients' diagnostics and treatment from a medical point of view (Sect. 3.4.2).

Message Set of data on → entity types (e.g., administrative data of a given patient) that are arranged as a unit in order to be communicated between → application systems (Sect. 2.14.2.2).

Metadata Data about → data. Metadata provides information about one or more aspects of data such as purpose of the data, author and time of creation, used standards, or file size (Sect. 2.2).

Metamodel Modeling framework consisting of syntax, semantics, representations of context, and modeling rules. For example: → 3LGM² (Sect. 2.13).

Model Description of what the modeler believes to be relevant about a → system. Models may be developed based on → metamodels (Sect. 2.13).

Modular architecture → Architecture of an information system where the → information system consists of more than one → application component. Synonym: AC^n architecture (Sect. 3.6.2).

Monitoring Task of → strategic management of information systems that continuously audits quality and cost of the information system and assesses whether the strategic information management plan is implemented as intended (Sect. 4.3.2).

Monolithic architecture → Architecture of an information system where the → information system consists of only one → application component which supports most of the → functions. Synonym: AC^1 architecture (Sect. 3.6.2).

Non-computer-based application component Sets of organizational rules for data processing which are implemented by non-computer-based → physical tools. Specialization of → application component. Synonym: Paper-based application component (Sect. 2.9).

Nursing management and documentation system (NMDS) → Application system supporting → functions related to organizing and documenting patients' diagnostics and treatment from a nursing point of view (Sect. 3.4.2).

Object identity Situation where all objects (→ entities) can be uniquely and correctly identified. In → health information systems, this is especially important for → entity types such as patient (→ Patient Identification Number) and case (Case Identification Number) (Sect. 3.5).

Open platform → Application system that stores patient → data based on open specifications and open → information models and provides open Application Programming Interfaces (API) for storing and querying this data (Sect. 3.9.3)

Operation management system (OMS) → Application system supporting → functions related to → information processing of an operating room unit of a → health care facility (Sect. 3.4.8).

Operational management of information systems Responsible for smooth operation of the → components of the → information system in accordance with the → strategic information management plan. Additionally, it plans, directs, and monitors permanent → IT services for the users of the information system (Sect. 4.5).

Organizational unit Part of a → health care facility which can be defined by responsibilities (Sect. 2.14.1).

Paper-based application component See → non-computer-based application component (Sect. 2.9).

Patient administration system (PAS) → Application system supporting → functions related to patient administration in → health care facilities. Synonym: Patient management system (Sect. 3.4.1).

Patient data management system (PDMS) → Application system supporting → functions related to → information processing in intensive care units of a → health care facility (Sect. 3.4.9).

Patient identification number (PIN) Unique identification of a patient. Should be used for patient identification in all parts of a → health information system. One precondition for → object identify (Sect. 3.2.3.1).

Patient portal → Application system offered by → health care facilities that supports patients of this facility to obtain an overview of their health data, organize documents, and actively manage these themselves (Sect. 3.4.13.1).

Physical data processing system Physical entity that is able to receive, store, forward, or purposefully manipulate → data (Sect. 2.9).

Physical integration Condition of an → information system in which the necessary physical communication between a set of → physical data processing systems for each required data exchange is possible (Sect. 3.10.2).

Physical interoperability Ability of → physical data processing systems to exchange → data via hardware interfaces. Prerequisite for → technical interoperability of → application systems (Sect. 3.10.2).

Physical tool See → physical data processing system (Sect. 2.9).

Physical tool layer Part of a → 3LGM² model. Describes → physical data processing systems and their data transmission links among each other (Sect. 2.14.3).

Picture archiving and communication system (PACS) → Application system supporting the → functions related to storage, retrieval, management, manipulation, presentation, and communication of large amounts of digital images (Sect. 3.4.6).

Planning Task of → strategic information management that comprises → strategic alignment of business goals and strategic information management goals, and the development of both a long-term → strategic project portfolio and → annual project portfolios (Sect. 4.3.1).

Process integration Condition of an → information system in which business processes are effectively supported by a set of interoperating → application systems (Sect. 3.8.6).

Process interoperability Ability of → application systems to interoperate in certain organizational contexts, especially in certain processes (Sect. 3.7.1.4).

Project Unique undertaking that is characterized by objectives, by restrictions with regard to available time and resources, and by a specific project organization (Sect. 4.4).

Protocol Standard for → technical interoperability at the → physical tool layer for supporting communication between → computer systems (Sect. 3.7.1.1).

Quality Degree to which a set of inherent characteristics fulfills certain requirements, where "requirements" means needs or expectations (Sect. 5.1).

Radiology information system (RIS) → Application system supporting → functions related to → information processing at the radiological unit of a → health care facility (Sect. 3.4.5).

Reference model A model is called a reference model for a certain class of systems and a certain class of questions or tasks dealing with these systems if it provides

model patterns supporting the derivation of more specific models through modifications, limitations, or completions (generic reference models) or direct comparison of different models with the reference model concerning certain quality aspects of the modeled systems (e.g., completeness, styles of system's architecture) (non-generic reference models) (Sect. 2.13).

Referential integrity Situation where relationships between → entities are correctly represented. A precondition for referential integrity is → object identity (Sect. 3.5).

Role Sum of expectations addressed to persons or groups of persons (Sect. 2.8).

Semantic integration Condition of an → information system in which → application systems actually use the same system of concepts, for example, based on a common → terminology, i.e., they interpret → data the same way (Sect. 3.8.2).

Semantic interoperability Ability of → application systems to exchange → information (in the form of → messages) that can be meaningfully interpreted by both and processed further (Sect. 3.7.1.3).

Service Encapsulated → feature provided by → application systems in order to be invoked by other application systems (Sect. 2.9).

Service-level agreements (SLA) Contract regarding the provision of an → IT service, for example, between a department and the IT department (Sect. 5.2.4).

Service-oriented architectures (SOA) → Architectural style of → health information systems where → application systems are able to provide or to invoke → services from other → application systems (Sect. 3.9.4).

Socio-technical system A (human-made) → system consisting of both human and technical components (Sect. 2.5).

Spaghetti architecture → Architecture of an information system where the → application systems are connected via bidirectional → communication links. Synonym: CP^n architecture (Sect. 3.6.4).

Stakeholder Anyone who has an influence on or specific requirement regarding a → component of an → information system, for example, by formulating requirements (Sect. 1.3).

Standardized documentation Documentation where the → entity types for which → data are to be recorded, the properties (attributes) of the → objects of these → entity types that are to be documented, and the exact value set of these attributes are defined (Sect. 3.2.2).

Star architecture → Architecture of an information system where the → application systems communicate via a central application system (e.g., a → communication server). Synonym: CP^1 architecture (Sect. 3.6.4).

Strategic alignment The process that balances and harmonizes the → business goals and the → information management strategies to obtain the best result for the → health care facility. Important task of → strategic information management (Sect. 4.3.1.1).

Strategic information management plan Long-term planning of the → information system of a → health care facility. This plan describes the → business goals, the → information management goals, the current state of the information system, the future state of the information system, and the steps to transform the current into the planned information system (Sect. 4.3.1.2).

Strategic management of information systems Deals with the → information processing as a whole and establishes strategies and principles for the evolution of the → information system. It depends on and must be aligned to the vision, mission, and strategic → business goals of the → health care facility (→ strategic alignment). An important result of strategic management activities is a → strategic information management plan (Sect. 4.3).

Strategic project portfolio Describes → projects or groups of projects and their priority, and a rough timeline for their initiation for the coming years. It is typically described in a → strategic information management plan. Is the basis for the → annual project portfolio (Sect. 4.3.1.2).

Sub-information system → Subsystem of an → information system (Sect. 2.5).

Subsystem Part of a → system that comprises a subset of → components and the relationships between them (Sect. 2.4).

Synchronous communication Form of communication in which the sending → application system will pause from the time that it sends a → message to the time that it receives the respective answer (Sect. 3.9.2).

Syntactic interoperability Ability of → application systems to use a predefined structure for the exchanged → messages (Sect. 3.7.1.2).

System Set of persons, things, events, and their relationships forming an integrated whole. We distinguish between natural systems and artificial (human-made) → socio-technical systems. A system can be divided into → subsystems (Sect. 2.4).

Tactical management of information systems Deals with specific → functions, → application components, or → physical data processing systems that are introduced, removed, changed, or maintained. Usually, these activities are done in the form of → projects (Sect. 4.4).

Technical interoperability Ability of an → application system to send or receive "bits and bytes" in a reliable and standardized way via respective interfaces and → protocols (Sect. 3.7.1.1).

Terminology A system of concepts and related terms (Sect. 2.1).

Three-layer graph-based metamodel (3LGM²) → Metamodel for modeling (health) → information systems (Sect. 2.14).

Telemonitoring system → Application system supporting → functions related to the remote monitoring of the patients' state of health (Sect. 3.4.13.2).

Transaction management Ensures that every update of correct → data in one or more databases will lead to another state in which the data in these database(s) are still correct (Sect. 3.9.1).

Transinstitutional health information system (tHIS) → Information system of a → health care network (Sect. 2.6).

User interface integration Condition of an → information system in which different → application systems represent → data and organize their user interfaces in a unified way (Sect. 3.8.3).

V^1 architecture See → homogeneous architecture (Sect. 3.6.3).

V^n architecture See → heterogeneous architecture (Sect. 3.6.3).

Vendor-neutral archive (VNA) → Open platforms supporting storing of image data and other patient-related documents (Sect. 3.9.3).

Index

A. Winter et al., *Health Information Systems*, Health Informatics,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-12310-8